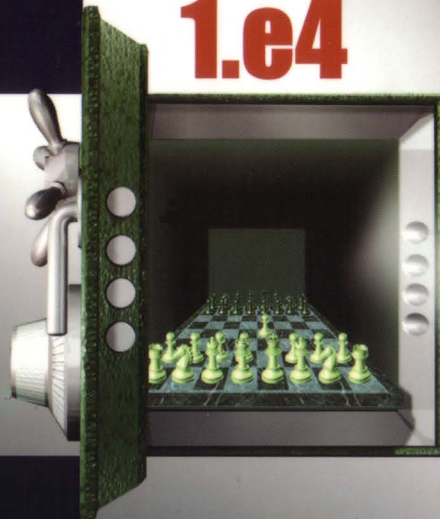


**Opening
for White
according to**

Anand

1.e4



1

Alexander Khalifman



**Chess Stars
Openings**

Alexander Khalifman
14th World Chess Champion



The "Chess Stars Openings" series by the 14th World Champion Alexander Khalifman presents an entirely new approach to the study of chess openings:

"Opening for Black according to Karpov"

Caro-Kann, Queen's Indian, Nimzo-Indian, Catalan, English, Reti

"Opening for White according to Kramnik"

Book I King's Indian, Old Indian, Anti-Grinfeld

Book II Anti-Nimzo-Indian, Anti-Queen's Indian, English, Knight Tango

Book III Maroczy, English (1...c5), Modern, Dutch

Book IV Queen's Gambit Accepted, Slav, Semi-Slav

Book V Queen's Gambit Declined

"Opening for White according to Anand"

Book I Latvian, Philidor's, Petroff, Ruy Lopez without 3...a6

Book II Ruy Lopez with 3...a6 (scheduled for the end of 2003)

Book III French, Caro-Kann, Scandinavian, Pirc, Modern, Alekhine (2004)

Book IV Sicilian (2004)





Editorial Panel: GM A.Bezgodov, IM V.Ivanov, S.Klimov,
M.Notkin, S.Soloviov
Technical Editor: IM Semko Semkov

Translation by: GM Evgeny Ermenkov (Chapters 6-13, 23-29)
Eugene Landa

Author Khalifman's photograph by Elisabeth Karnazes

Cover design by Kalojan Nachev

Copyright © 2003 by Alexander Khalifman and Sergei Soloviov

Printed in Bulgaria by "Chess Stars" Ltd. - Sofia
ISBN 954-8782-32-4

Opening for White According to Anand 1.e4

Book I 1.e4 e5

Rare System
Latvian Gambit
Philidor's Defence
Petroff Defence
Ruy Lopez without 3...a6

Alexander Khalifman
14th World Chess Champion

Contents

Preface.7

Part 1. Rare System; Latvian Gambit; Philidor's Defence

1.e4 e5 2.♟f3 without 2...♟f6 and 2...♟c6

1	various without 2...f5, 2...d6, 2...♟f6, 2...♟c6	10
2	2... f5 3.♟xe5.	20
3	2... d6 3.d4 ♟g4; 3... f5; 3... ♟d7	24
4	2... d6 3.d4 ed	30
5	2... d6 3.d4 ♟f6	41

Part 2. Petroff Defence

1.e4 e5 2.♟f3 ♟f6 3.♟e5 d6 4.♟f3 ♟e4 5.d4

6	5... ♟e7	48
7	5... d5 6.♟d3 ♟c6.	51
8	5... d5 6.♟d3 ♟d6 7.0-0 0-0 8.c4 c6 (8... ♟g4; 8...♟f6; 8...♟e6) 9.♟c2 ♟f6; 9... f5; 9... ♟e8	56
9	5... d5 6.♟d3 ♟d6 7.0-0 0-0 8.c4 c6 9.♟c2 ♟a6	59
10	5... d5 6.♟d3 ♟e7 7.0-0 various	64
11	5... d5 6.♟d3 ♟e7 7.0-0 ♟c6 8.c4 ♟b4 (8...♟f6) 9.♟e2 0-0 (9...dc) 10.♟c3 various	67
12	5... d5 6.♟d3 ♟e7 7.0-0 ♟c6 8.c4 ♟b4 9.♟e2 0-0 10.♟c3 ♟f5	76
13	5... d5 6.♟d3 ♟e7 7.0-0 ♟c6 8.c4 ♟b4 9.♟e2 0-0 10.♟c3 ♟e6	82

Part 3. Ruy Lopez without 3... a6

1.e4 e5 2.♟f3 ♟c6 3.♟b5

14	3... ♟b4; 3... ♟ge7; 3... f6	91
15	3... g6	98

16	3... ♘d4	103
17	3... d6	108
18	3... ♙c5	112
19	3... f5 4. ♘c3 various without 4... fe	119
20	3... f5 4. ♘c3 fe 5. ♘e4 various without 5... d5	128
21	3... f5 4. ♘c3 fe 5. ♘e4 d5 6. ♘e5 de 7. ♘c6 various. ...	138
22	3... f5 4. ♘c3 fe 5. ♘e4 d5 6. ♘e5 de 7. ♘c6 ♘g5	144
23	3... ♘f6 4.0-0 various; 4... ♙c5	153
24	3... ♘f6 4.0-0 ♘e4 5.d4 various; 5... ♙e7	166
25	3... ♘f6 4.0-0 ♘e4 5.d4 ♘d6 6. ♙c6 dc (6...bc) 7.de ♘e4	178
26	3... ♘f6 4.0-0 ♘e4 5.d4 ♘d6 6. ♙c6 dc 7.de ♘f5 8. ♘d8 ♘d8 9. ♘c3 ♙e7; 9...a5; 9... ♘e7	184
27	3... ♘f6 4.0-0 ♘e4 5.d4 ♘d6 6. ♙c6 dc 7.de ♘f5 8. ♘d8 ♘d8 9. ♘c3 ♙e6	192
28	3... ♘f6 4.0-0 ♘e4 5.d4 ♘d6 6. ♙c6 dc 7.de ♘f5 8. ♘d8 ♘d8 9. ♘c3 ♘e8	200
29	3... ♘f6 4.0-0 ♘e4 5.d4 ♘d6 6. ♙c6 dc 7.de ♘f5 8. ♘d8 ♘d8 9. ♘c3 ♙d7	221
	Index of Variations	229

Preface

Dear Reader,

The first book of the series “Opening for White according to Anand – 1.e4” is finally in your hands. This publication is a logical sequel of the 5 volume study “Opening for White according to Kramnik – 1. ♘f3”. However I am fully aware that my current undertaking requires even more effort and responsibility than the previous one.

Let me explain my standpoint – when the first player opens the game with 1. ♘f3 (or 1.c4 and even 1.d4), he certainly can, and must, aim at obtaining an opening edge. However a direct clash in closed systems occurs generally in somewhat later stage of the game, thus leaving of prime importance the better understanding of the arising middlegame positions. Conversely, open systems usually feature an early head-on collision when encyclopedical knowledge and precise calculations could often decide the battle. In fact every move of both sides involves taking far-going decisions. That is one more reason to account for the popularity of the king’s pawn move on all levels, ranging from an amateur blitz to super-tournaments and world title competitions.

I tried to explain in depth the general concept of the series “Opening for ... according to ...” in the introduction of the first book “Opening for White according to Kramnik – 1. ♘f3”:

“Here is one way to deal with this problem – take as your ideal model someone of today’s leading grandmasters, whose style is akin to yourself and whose successes you admire. Then try to build your opening repertoire according to his one. But there still remain a few problems though: whom to select as the prototype, on one hand, and, on the other, how to begin playing oneself the opening of one’s hero? Of course, one can extract the latter’s games from the database and take particular care to study them thoroughly. But this is also not quite simple in itself: your future opponent may not know the latest theoretical developments employed «at the highest level» at all, and, furthermore, he can at any time make a rather mediocre move or side-step the theory, and you will have to decide on your own: what to do next, what plan to select, how to obtain an advantage.”

Perhaps there is a relevant question – why namely Anand? Indeed nowadays a great number of top players use 1.e4 as an exclusive weapon in their repertoire. I think that Anand’s treatment of the opening is best suited for the vast chess audience, including players of very different calibre. If you tried to imitate hyper-aggressive blade runners as Kasparov or Shirov, for instance, without their talent and erudition you would most likely encounter soon insurmountable difficulties. I would be the least to understate the natural gift and good home preparation of the Indian prodigy. I just consider his active positional Capablanca-like style to be the best model for studying without excessive risk of crashes.

The first book comprises the “open” systems, i.e. openings that feature the moves 1.e4 e5, without the main lines of the Ruy Lopez (1.e4 e5 2.♘f3 ♘c6 3.♙b5 a6). The most frequently played variations of the Ruy Lopez are so deep and complicated that certainly deserve a separate volume, but I am sure that the present book will be very useful to you too. In the first place you will find in such topical systems as the Petroff Defence (1.e4 e5 2.♘f3 ♘f6) as well as the Berlin Defence (1.e4 e5 2.♘f3 ♘c6 3.♙b5 ♘f6) which are hot news in tournaments of all categories lately.

I would like to believe that the composite of my own innovative analyses and the cream of modern theory would help the Reader in his quest for an opening advantage (and not only in the two above-mentioned systems!).

So play like Anand – 1.e2-e4!. White begins and ... !?

A. Khalifman, 14th World Chess Champion

Part 1

Rare System

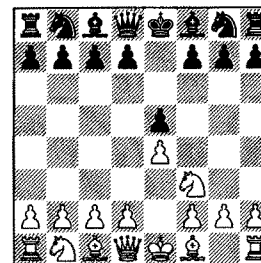
1.e4 e5 2.♘f3 various without 2...f5; 2...d6;
2...♘f6; 2...♘c6

Latvian Gambit

1.e4 e5 2.♘f3 f5

Philidor’s Defence

1.e4 e5 2.♘f3 d6



After the moves: 1.e4 e5 2.♘f3, Black’s principal responses are: 2...♘f6, and 2...♘c6, which are analysed in the next Parts. We’ll begin our study with the so-called irregular defences, though in some occasions it is not so easy for White to prove their “irregularity” without a special preparation. These continuations occur in the tournament practice only once in a while, but nevertheless every chess player must be ready to face them. Chapter 2 deals with the variations of the sharp Latvian Gambit.

The other chapters of this Part deal with Philidor’s De-

fence.

Chapter 3 deals with two quite dubious possibilities for Black - 3...♙g4 and 3...f5, as well as the move 3...♘d7, which enables White to achieve the bishop pair advantage in a symmetrical position.

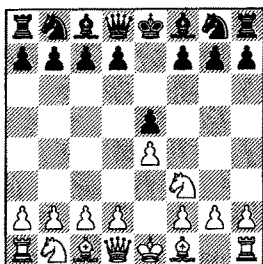
The exchange on d4, which is becoming more and more popular nowadays, is treated in Chapter 4. White usually castles long and his actions in the centre and on the kingside are more effective than Black’s counterplay on the queenside. White is better prepared for the eventual opening of the centre with the move d6-d5.

Finally, we analyse the move 3...♘f6 in Chapter 5. It habitually leads to the complete opening of the centre after the exchange of the d and e-pawns of both opponents. White has better chances, because of his active pieces and better development.

Chapter 1

1.♘f3 d5 2.d4 c6

1.e4 e5 2.♘f3



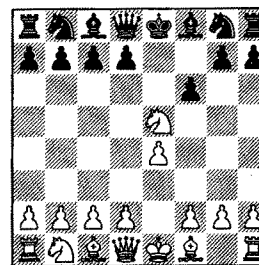
We start our study with the variations that are not too much attended by the opening manuals with this familiar to every chess player position. Of course, the principal continuations here are 2...♘c6 and 2...♘f6, but there also exist other ways of defending the black e5-pawn; besides, Black may abstain from defending it (in that case, Petrov Defence is the most appropriate opening). Thus, in this chapter we examine: a) 2...f6?, b) 2...♘c5?!, c) 2...♘d6, d) 2...d5, e) 2...♗e7. The continuation 2...♗f6?! does not need any special consideration. Everybody knows that it is not justified to move the queen too far in the very beginning of the game, moreover, by

this move Black deprives his king's knight of his 'natural' place. In a quite common way 3.♘c3 c6 4.d4 exd4 5.♗g5 ♖d6 (5...♗g6 6.♗xd4±) 6.♘xd4±, White obtains a huge advantage in development and in space, etc. Somewhat weird seems the continuation 2...c6?!. It is most advisable for White not to engage in complications, since the simple 3.d4 exd4 4.♗xd4, gives White substantial advantage. After 4...d6 5.♘c3 ♗b6 (worse is 5...♘f6 6.♗f4 ♘h5 7.♗e3±, and White's big advantage is obvious) 6.♗e2 ♗xd4 7.♘xd4 ♘f6 8.♗f4 ♘bd7 9.0-0-0 ♘e5, despite its apparent firmness, Black's position is too passive. After the necessary preparation with 10.h3 ♗e7 11.♗e3 0-0, White launches the offensive by 12.f4 ♘g6 13.g4±, obtaining a terrible attack in the centre and on the kingside.

a) 2...f6?

This continuation is well known since the legendary G. Greco. The ancient manuscripts contain the following game, where White begins and wins by:

3.♘xe5!



a1) 3...fxe5?

This loses in a forced way.

4.♗h5+ ♖e7

In the case of 4...g6 5.♗xe5+ ♗e7 6.♗xh8 ♘f6, the white queen is not trapped 7.d3 d5 8.♗g5 ♘bd7 9.♘c3 c6 10.0-0-0 ♗f7 11.exd5 ♗g7 12.♗xh7 ♘xh7 13.♗xe7 ♖xe7 14.dxc6 bxc6 15.♗e2+, and White wins

5.♗xe5+ ♖f7 6.♗c4+ ♖g6?!

More stubborn is 6...d5, though White wins easily there too 7.♗xd5+ ♖g6 8.h4! h5 (or 8...h6 9.♗xb7!+-, and 9...♗xb7 runs into 10.♗f5#) 9.♗xb7! ♗d6 10.♗a5+-, with decisive material advantage for White.

7.♗f5+ ♖h6 8.d4+ g5 9.h4 ♖g7 10.♗f7+ ♖h6 11.hxg5# Greco – NN, Europe 1620.

a2) 3...♗e7

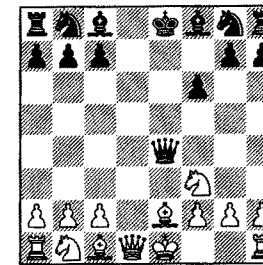
This does not lose immediately.

4.♘f3 d5

In the case of 4...♗xe4+ 5.♗e2±, White obtains an obvious advantage since he is ahead in development.

5.d3 dxe4 6.dxe4 ♗xe4+

7.♗e2

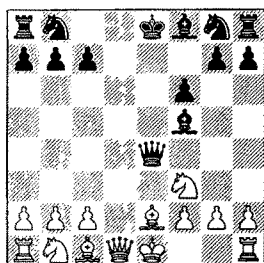


7...♗f5

Attacking the white c2-pawn.

Failing is the attempt to complete the development by 7...♘c6 8.0-0 ♗d7. After 9.♘c3 ♗e6 (for some unknown reason, the great M. Chigorin once decided to test this incorrect variation, but after 9...♗g6?, his opponent delivered a dreadful blow 10.♘e5! ♘xe5 11.♗h5+-, and Black lost his queen, Schiffers – Chigorin, St.Petersburg 1897. Strange, but the game eventually ended with a draw and during it Black had an opportunity of an effective mating combination after 11...0-0-0 12.♗xg6 hxg6 13.♗e2 ♗d6 14.♘e4 ♘f3+ 15.gxf3 ♗xh2+ 16.♖g2 ♗h3+ 17.♖h1 ♗e5 18.♖g1 ♗h2+ 19.♖h1 ♗e5 20.♗e1 ♗g4+ 21.♖g1 ♗xf3 22.♘g3 ♘e7 23.♗e3 ♗c6 24.♗xa7? There M. Chigorin could have checkmated in 5: 24...♗h1+!! 25.♘xh1 ♗h2+! 26.♖xh2 ♗h8+ 27.♖g3 ♘f5+ 28.♖f4 ♗h4#) 10.♗f4 0-0-0, White plays 11.♘b5!, and the material losses are inevitable for Black, for example: 11...♗e8 12.♗d3 ♗d6 13.♗e1 ♗g4 (also losing is 13...♗f7 14.♗xd6

cx d6 15. ♖f5+ ♜b8 16. ♜xd6+–, with overwhelming advantage for White. Black's best surviving chance is the variation 13... ♗e5 14. ♗xe5 fx e5 15. ♜xe5 ♜xe5 16. ♗f5 ♖xf5 17. ♜xa7+ ♜b8 18. ♖xd8+ ♜xa7 19. ♖xe8±, though White's advantage is also sufficiently big there) 14. ♗xd6 cxd6, and now White again has a winning combination 15. ♗xe8! ♗xe8 16. ♗f5+! ♖xf5 17. ♜xd6+, winning the black queen, as it happened in the game Westman – Havansi, Krakow 1964.



8. ♗c3!

This energetic continuation allows White to develop his offensive successfully.

8... ♗b4

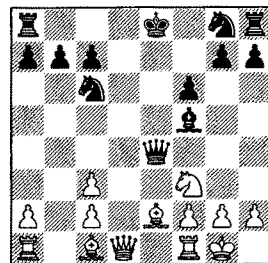
If Black captures the c2-pawn immediately by 8... ♖xc2, then after 9. ♖d5!, it turns out that the black queen is endangered, for example: 9... c6 (an interesting fight takes place in the variation 9... ♗b4 10. ♖b5+ ♜c6 11. 0–0 0–0–0 12. ♜e1 ♜d4!?. Despite Black's desperate resistance White wins all the same 13. ♖xb4 ♜xe2+ 14. ♜h1! ♖xc1 15. ♗xc1 ♜xc1 16. ♖f4! ♗d3 17.

♗g1+–; Black also cannot survive with 9... ♜c6 10. 0–0 ♜ge7 11. ♖c4!, and the black queen is in trouble, for example: 11... 0–0–0 12. ♜e1 ♜e5 13. ♖h4 g5 14. ♖g3+– and the black queen is entrapped) 10. ♖c4 ♜d7 (or 10... b5 11. ♖d4 ♗e7 12. ♖e3+–, with a plenty of threats) 11. g4!, and Black loses a piece at least, for example: 11... ♜b6 (in the case of 11... ♗g6, White has a common win by 12. ♜d4 ♜e5 13. ♖e6+) 12. ♖d4 ♗g6 13. ♖e3+ ♜e7 14. ♜d4+–, with a huge material conquest for White.

9. 0–0 ♗xc3

In the case of 9... ♖xc2 10. ♖xc2 ♗xc2, despite the queens' exchange, White's huge lead in development and the activity of his pieces result in a difficult position for the opponent. After 11. ♜d4 ♗g6 12. ♜d5 ♗d6 13. ♗e1, Black faces an arduous choice. For example, Black cannot survive with 13... ♜e7 14. ♗f3 c6, due to 15. ♗f4!+–.

10. bxc3 ♜c6

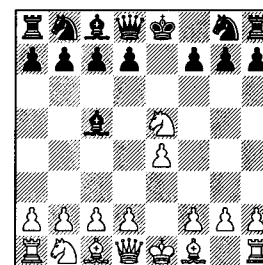


11. ♗b5!

It turns out that Black is completely defenceless due to the

threats along the e-file, for example: 11... ♜ge7 (Black loses in a forced way also after 11... ♜f7 12. ♗e1 ♗d8 13. ♜d4 ♖d5 14. ♖e2 ♜xd4 15. cxd4 ♖xd4 16. ♗e8+ ♜f8 17. ♗a3+ c5 18. ♗h5 g6 19. ♗ad1+–) 12. ♗e1 ♖xc2 13. ♗xc6+ bxc6 14. ♗a3+–, winning a piece.

b) 2... ♗c5?! 3. ♜xe5



3... ♜c6!?

Black is trying to play for a lead in development. White must be precise, however ridiculous Black's play may seem. Of course, some primitive continuation like 3... ♖e7 (or 3... ♖h4 4. d4 ♖xe4+ 5. ♗e3 ♗b6 6. ♜c3 ♖h4 7. ♗c4+–, with overwhelming position for White) 4. d4 ♗d6, results in insurmountable difficulties for Black (White's task is even simpler in the case of 4... ♗b6 5. ♜c3 ♗a5 6. ♗c4+–). After 5. ♜c3, an attempt of starting complications by 5... ♜f6 (outright bad is 5... ♗xe5 6. ♜d5 ♖h4 7. dxe5 ♖xe4+ 8. ♗e3 ♖xe5. Black is a pawn up at the moment, but after 9. ♖d4!+–, huge material losses are inevitable for him)

6. ♗g5 ♗xe5 7. ♜d5 ♖e6 8. dxe5 ♖xe5 9. ♗xf6 gxf6, leads to a loss of queen in a forced manner after 10. ♖g4 ♖xb2 11. ♖g7 ♖xa1+ 12. ♜e2 ♗f8 13. ♜xf6+ ♖xf6 14. ♖xf6+–, and, though White's material advantage is not too big, Black's position is lost all the same, since the important black h7-pawn is doomed and Black has no counterplay.

4. ♜f3 ♖e7

In the case of 4... d5 5. exd5 ♖xd5 6. ♜c3 ♖d6, some tension remains, though Black obtains no compensation for the pawn. The most accurate way for White seems 7. ♗b5±.

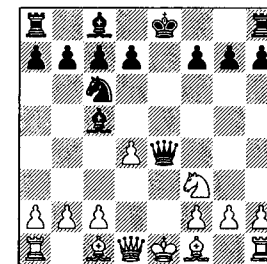
5. ♜c3 ♜f6 6. d4 ♜xe4!?

An interesting attempt to confuse the opponent. Nevertheless, White simply plays:

7. ♜xe4

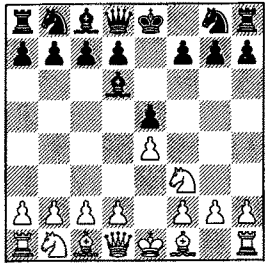
A small illustration is appropriate here – worse is 7. ♜d5?! ♗b4+, and in the ancient game Baird – Busch, Nurnberg 1906, White stumbled with 8. ♗d2?, which was followed by 8... ♜xd2+! 9. ♜xe7 ♜xf3+ 10. ♜e2 ♜fxd4+ 11. ♜d3 ♗xe7+–, and Black obtained the decisive edge.

7... ♖xe4+



8.♗e3

Black's attacking ardour is wearig out. In the case of the best for Black continuation 8...♘b4, White obtains advantage by 9. dxc5 ♘xc2+ 10.♙d2 ♘xa1 11. ♙xa1±.

c) 2...♗d6

By this move Black defends his pawn and also does not lose immediately. Nevertheless, taking into account that the black bishop will have to be transferred to some more natural position later, this is essentially a loss of tempo.

3.d4 exd4

Black has a wide choice of continuations, but none of them provides him with chances for equalisation, though White must not overestimate his position. Of course, in the case of 3...f6?, Black weakens the kingside irreparably. After 4.♗c4, Black's position is utterly sad, for example: 4... ♘c6 5.dxe5 ♘xe5 (or 5...fxe5 6.♘g5+-, with an immediate win for White) 6.♘xe5 ♗xe5 7.♗xg8 ♗xg8 8.f4 ♗d6 9.♙h5+ ♙f8 10. ♙xh7+-, and White is a pawn up

in a better position. Somewhat better for Black is 3...♙e7 4.dxe5 ♗xe5 5.♘xe5 ♙xe5 6.♘c3 ♘f6 7.f4 ♙e7 8.♗d3±, though in this case White obtains the pair of bishops advantage in a forced way, as well as apace advantage. The continuation 3...♘c6 4.♘c3 exd4 5.♘xd4±, transposes into a variation which is dealt with later.

4.♘xd4 ♘c6 5.♘c3

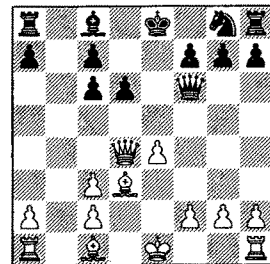
The arising position resembles the Scotch Game in a way, with the essential difference that Black cannot timely start a counterplay in the centre due to the necessity of losing a tempo for the mentioned bishop's move.

5...♗b4

Black is even worse in the case of 5...♘f6. After 6.♘f5 ♗f8 7.♗g5, Black is forced to weaken the kingside drastically, and after 7...h6 8.♗h4 g5 9.♗g3 ♗b4 10.♙f3±, White obtains a perceptible advantage.

6.♘xc6 ♗xc3+

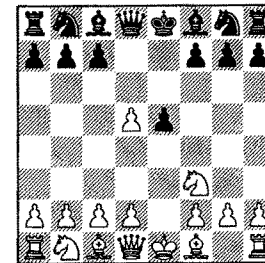
Worse is 6...bxc6, due to 7.♙d4±.

7.bxc3 bxc6 8.♙d4 ♙f6 9. ♗d3 d6

10.0-0±, and White's position is apparently preferable.

d) 2...d5

This not-quite-correct but sharp continuation demands from White accuracy in particular variations.

3.exd5**3...e4**

The most principled continuation. Black exacerbates the situation to the limit. However, other continuations are also seen.

3...♙xd5 4.♘c3 ♙e6 (after 4... ♙a5 5.d4±, a transposition into the Scandinavian takes place and, perhaps, this is the best choice for Black). Now 5.♗b5+ follows. White activates his king's bishop with tempo, preparing a play down the e-file at the same time. Black has a rather limited choice there:

5...♗d7 6.0-0 ♗xb5 (after 6...a6 7.♗e1, White's threats along the e-file are extremely dangerous, for example: 7...f6 8. ♗f1 c5 9.d4 cxd4 10.♘xd4 ♙f7 11. f4±, with good winning chances for White) 7.♘xb5 ♙c4 (or 7... ♙b6 8.♙e2±, and White's advan-

tage in the development is rather impressive) 8.a4 ♗d6 9.d3 ♙c6 10.♗e1. And now the attack along the e-file decides the issue. Black is too behind in development. After the forced 10...f6, follows 11.d4+-, and White's threats are rather irrefutable.

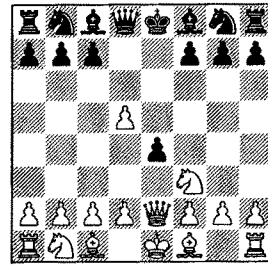
The variation 5...c6 6.♗a4, is somewhat analogous to the previous one, because the opposition along the e-file is dangerous for Black, for example: 6...♙g6 (in the case of 6...♗d6 7.0-0 ♘f6 8.♗e1 0-0 9.d4 ♘bd7 10.dxe5 ♘xe5 11.♘xe5 ♗xe5 12.♗f4±, Black suffered material losses in the game Schmuck – Vogelhuber, Germany 1996. Even worse for Black is the active 6...e4. After 7.0-0 f5 8.d3 ♘f6 9.♗b3 ♙e7 10.dxe4 fxe4 11.♘g5+-, Black's position is hopeless) 7.♙e2 ♘e7 8.♗b3 f6 9.d4 ♙xg2 (weaker is 9...exd4 10.♘e4±, with dangerous threats) 10.♗g1 ♙h3. It seems that Black managed to organise some counterplay, but his insufficient development tells there too. After 11.dxe5 ♗f5 (or 11...♗g4 12.♗g3 ♙h5 13.exf6 gxf6 14.♘e4+-, winning) 12.exf6 gxf6 13.♗f4±, in the game Xie Jun – Deep Junior, Internet 2000, Black failed to cope with the problems.

In the case of 3...♗d6, it is better for White not to play for retaining the extra pawn but to continue the development instead. After 4.d4 e4 5.♘e5, Black manages to regain the material

in the variation 5...♘e7 6.♗b5+ c6 7.dxc6 bxc6 8.♗e2 ♗xe5 9.dxe5 ♖a5+ 10.♘d2 ♗e6 (bad is 10...♖xe5?, due to 11.♘c4+-, with irrefutable White's threats) 11.0-0 ♖xe5, however, White obtains a perceptible advantage there, continuing with 12.♘c4 ♗xc4 13.♗xc4±. The pair of bishops and the better pawn structure provides White with significant advantage in the forthcoming struggle. The continuation 5...♘f6 6.♗b5+ ♗d7 (in the variation 6...c6 7.dxc6 bxc6 8.♗e2 ♗xe5 9.dxe5, in contrast to the previous one, the black knight is attacked and Black loses the right to castle after 9...♖a5+ 10.♘d2 ♖xe5 11.♘c4 ♖d5 12.♘d6+ ♖e7 13.♗f4±, with a clear advantage) 7.♘d7 ♘bxd7 8.0-0 a6 (the move 8...♘d5, leads by force to a position, where White obtains better chances because Black's king is too vulnerable 9.♘d2 f5 10.♘xe4 ♗xh2+ 11.♖xh2 ♖h4+ 12.♖g1 fxe4 13.♗xd7+ ♖xd7 14.c4 ♘f6 15.♖a4+ c6 16.d5±) 9.♗xd7+ ♖xd7, allows White to retain the extra pawn after 10.c4 0-0-0 11.♘c3? ♖f5 12.♗d2 ♖he8 13.♘e2 ♖h5 14.h3±. Despite some tension remaining in this position, the extra pawn in the centre allows White to count on successful outcome.

4.♖e2

It is practically the only move allowing White to fight for advantage.



4...♘f6

Failing is Black's attempt of playing for advantage in development by 4...♗e7. After 5.♖xe4 ♘f6 6.♗b5+ ♗d7 (impossible is 6...c6?, due to the simple 7.dxc6 ♘xe4 8.cxb7+, winning) 7.♖e2 ♘xd5 8.♗xd7+ ♖xd7 9. d4±, in the game Morphy – Paulsen, New York 1857, White obtained an extra pawn without any complications.

Sensible seems 4...♖e7, and the white knight is attacked again. 5.♘d4 ♘f6 (not better is the active 5...♖e5. After the forced continuation 6.♘b5 ♗d6 7.d4 ♖e7 8.c4 ♗b4+ 9.♗d2 ♗xd2 10.♘xd2 a6 11.♘c3 f5 12.0-0±, in the old game Morphy – Mongredien, Paris 1859, White retained the extra pawn and converted it later), 6.♘c3 ♖e5 (if 6...g6, or 6...a6, then the undermining 7.d3 follows, and after 7...exd3 8.♖xe7+ ♗xe7 9.♗xd3±, White retains the extra pawn in both cases. In the variation 6...c6 7.dxc6 bxc6 8.d3± Nilsson – P.Nielsen, Copenhagen 1997, White also obtains an extra pawn), and after 7.♘f3 ♖e7 8.♘g5 ♗g4 9.♖c4±, White's ad-

vantage is practically decisive.

Quite logical seems also 4...f5, though after the standard break 5.d3, Black has no real opportunities of counterplay; moreover, the light squares in Black's camp are weakened drastically. After the natural 5...♘f6 (or 5...♗e7 6.dxe4 fxe4 7.♖xe4 ♘f6 8.♖d4±, and Black can regain one of the pawns at the cost of the queens' exchange, after which the game is reduced to simple realisation of White's extra pawn) 6.dxe4 fxe4 7.♘c3 ♗b4, White obtains a big advantage by force 8.♖b5+ c6 9.♖xb4 exf3 10.♗g5 cxd5 (the counterattack on the queenside by 10...a5 11.♖a3 b5, is also desperate. However, some accuracy is needed on White's part when calculating the variations. In this case, White obtains a practically winning position after 12.♖c5 b4 13.dxc6 bxc3 14.c7 ♖e7+ 15.♖xe7+ ♖xe7 16.cxb8 ♖ ♖xb8 17.bxc3±, when White faces only technical obstacles). The game Tal – Lutikov, Tallinn 1964, continued 11.0-0-0 ♘c6 12.♖a3 ♗e6, when the most simple was 13.gxf3±, with an extra pawn and pair of bishops in an open position, which made White's chances better. By the way, Black had problems with the king, whose vulnerable position spelled troubles.

5.d3

A standard break.

5...♖xd5

Further sacrifices by 5...♗e7

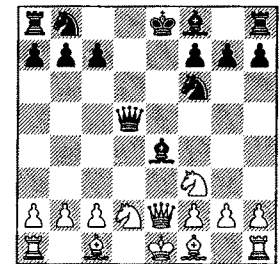
6.dxe4 0-0 7.♘c3 ♖e8, are not correct. After 8.♗d2! ♗b4 (outright hazardous is 8...b5 9.♖xb5 ♘a6 10.♘d4 ♘xe4 11.♘xe4 ♗f6 12.♘e6 fxe6 13.♘xf6+ gxf6 14.0-0-0+- Kotronias – Pandavos, Peristeri 1993) 9.0-0-0 ♗xc3 10.♗xc3 ♘xe4, White plays 11.♖e3!, and in the variation 11...♘xc3 (losing is 11...♘g3?! 12.♖d4 ♘f5 13.♖f4+-). Somewhat better is 11...♗g4, though after 12.♗b5 ♘d7 13.h3 ♘xc3 14.♖xc3 ♗xf3 15.♖xf3±, White retains an extra pawn and obtains good winning chances) 12.♖xc3 ♘d7 13.♗b5± De Smet – Schneider, corr. 1989. White's position allows him to hope for success.

6.♘bd2 ♗f5

In the variation 6...♘c6 7.♘xe4 ♗e6 8.♘xf6+ gxf6 9.c3 0-0-0 10.d4 ♗g4 11.h3±, Black obtains no compensation for the pawn.

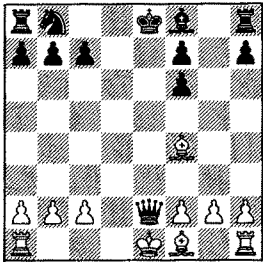
7.dxe4 ♗xe4

Losing right away is 7...♘xe4?, due to 8.♘h4+-. However, now follows a small combination:



8.♘g5! ♖xg5 9.♘xe4 ♖e5 10.♘xf6+ gxf6 11.♗f4 ♖xe2+

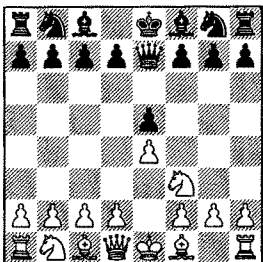
Even worse is 11...♗b4+ 12.c3 ♗xe2+ 13.♗xe2 ♗a5 14.♗f3+, with White's overwhelming advantage, Schweber – Alfaro, Zarate 1972.



12.♗xe2±

Perhaps White's advantage is sufficient for the point.

e) 2...♗e7



Amongst all the variations discussed in this chapter, this one seems to be the most reliable. Black has protected the pawn while moving the queen not too far. Essentially, Black intends to obtain a position resembling those ones from the Philidor's Defence, though the black queen is positioned rather lamely in many variations. One should note that Black's position

is deprived of any weaknesses despite being rather ridiculous. It is not so easy for White to open favourably the play.

3.♘c3 c6

A rather sharp play occurs after 3...♘f6 4.♗c4 h6 (it is necessary in view of the threat of 5.♘g5) 5.0-0 d6 6.h3 (White also prevents the possible knight's pin) 6...c6 7.d4 b5 (perhaps, better is 7...♗c7, transposing into variations analogous to the Philidor's Defence, though it assumes a loss of tempo) 8.dxe5 dxe5 9.♗b3 b4. Black is trying to overtake the initiative, but his insufficient development does not allow him to hope for equalisation. White plays 10.♘b1 ♘bd7 (dangerous for Black is 10...♗xe4 11.♞e1 ♗f5 12.♘bd2 ♘xd2 13.♗xd2 e4 14.c3!, and the play is opened to White's benefit. After 14...bxc3 15.♗xc3±, White obtains an obvious advantage thanks to the threats 16.♘e5, and 16.♗d5), followed by 11.a3!? White manages to open up the play, which gives him better chances thanks to Black's insufficient development. After 11...bxa3 12.♘xa3 ♘xe4 (12...♘c5 13.♘c4±) 13.♞e1 ♘ec5 14.♘c4 ♘xb3 15.cxb3 f6 16.♘d4±, White obtains a crushing initiative.

4.d4 d6 5.♗c4

Less active is the move 5.h3, transposing to the positions already examined.

5...♗g4

After 5...♘d7, Black cannot

disentangle the knot of pieces in the centre. Possible is 5...g6 6.♗g5 f6 7.♗e3, and Black begins to construct the bulwark with 7...♘h6. Nevertheless, after 8.0-0 ♗g7 9.a4±, Black obtained too passive position in the game Kr. Georgiev – Latas, Myslenice 1987.

5...h6 is also possible. An approximate course of events is perfectly illustrated by the game Feher – Ezsol, Balatonbereny 1996. After 6.a4 ♘f6 7.0-0 ♗g4 8.♞e1 ♘bd7 9.d5 ♘b6 10.♗f1± White's position is obviously better.

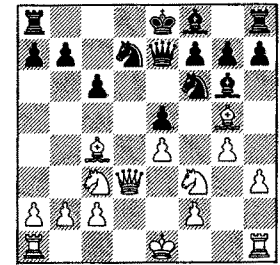
6.dxe5 dxe5 7.♗g5! ♘f6 8.h3 ♗h5 9.♗d3

White gets rid of the pin.

9...♘bd7 10.g4 ♗g6

(diagram)

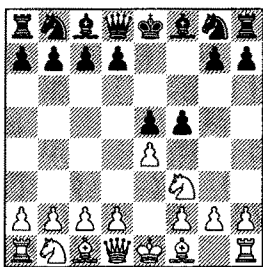
11.0-0-0



White's position is obviously more promising. Better for Black is the continuation 11...h6 (the attractive 11...b5 meets a refutation; after the forced 12.♗xb5! cxb5 13.♘d5 ♗d8 14.♗xf6 gxf6 15.♘xf6+! ♘xf6 16.♗xb5+ ♘d7 17.♘xe5 ♗h6+ 18.♗b1 0-0 19.♘xd7 ♞e8, follows 20.e5, and Black has no satisfactory defence against the threat of 21.♘f6), which leads to White's perceptible advantage 12.♗xf6 ♘xf6 13.♘h4±.

Chapter 2

1.e4 e5 2.♘f3 f5 Latvian Gambit



This opening is known as the Latvian Gambit. It was mainly developed by K.Behting, and also by group of Latvian chess players whose participation was reflected by the name of the opening.

3.♗xe5 ♖f6

The principal move, which drawback is that the black king's knight is deprived of his best square. Other continuations pose less problems to White.

The move 3...♗e7?, is just losing after 4.♖h5+ g6 5.♗xg6 ♖xe4+ 6.♗e2 ♗f6 7.♖h3 hxg6 (or 7...♞g8 8.♗c3 ♖c6 9.♗f4+-, with overwhelming position for White) 8.♖xh8 ♖xg2 9.♞f1 ♗g4 10.d4+-, and Black's position is hopeless since 10...♗xh2 is impossible, due to 11.♗h6.

Although the continuation

3...♗c6 is rather hazardous, certain accuracy is needed from White, since Black obtains many opened files and diagonals. The simplest way for White is to continue the development, while retaining the extra pawn, for example: 4.♗xc6 dxc6 5.♗c3 ♗c5 (or 5...♖e7 6.d3 ♗f6 7.♗g5 ♗d7 8.♗e2±, and White's position is firm) 6.d3 ♗f6 7.♗e2 0-0 8.0-0 fxe4 9.♗xe4 ♗xe4 10.dxe4 ♖h4. Black's threats seem dangerous. Nevertheless, after 11.♗e3 ♗xe3 12.♗c4+ ♖h8 13.fxe3 ♗g4 14.♖d4±, the tension recedes and White obtains rather good winning chances.

4.♗c4!

This move's idea is to keep the white d-pawn on its initial position in order to undermine Black's centre later.

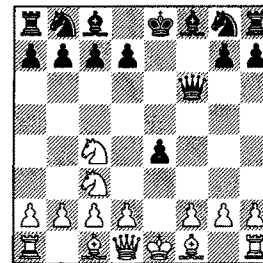
4...fxe4

The venturesome continuation 4...b5, only facilitates White's regrouping. After 5.♗e3 fxe4 (outright incorrect is 5...c6 6.♗xf5 d5 7.♗g3 ♗c5 8.♖e2 ♗e7 9.c3+-, and the game Agopov – Sersch, Gausdal 2000, ended soon with White's victory) 6.♗c3

c6 7.♗xe4 ♖h4 8.♗g3 d5 9.d4±, Black obtains no compensation for the material damage.

5.♗c3

The black e4-pawn is under attack. Black can protect it directly, as well as in an indirect way.



5...♖f7

Perhaps this is the strongest continuation, though other continuations have been tested too:

5...c6? This move is not a defence at all, since 6.♗xe4 ♖e6, is followed by 7.♖h5+! ♗d8 (or 7...g6 8.♖e5+-) 8.♖e5, and the pawn fork by 8...d5, fails to 9.♖xe6 ♗xe6 10.♗g5+-, winning.

5...♗e7?! Now the black e4-pawn is untouchable, so White transpose to the main set-up by 6.♗e3. After 6...♖e5 7.d4 exd3 8.♗xd3 d5 9.0-0, White obtains big advantage in the development. The game Pachman – Florian, Prague 1943, proceeded with 9...♗e6 (not better was 9...c6 10.♞e1 ♖d6 11.♗f5 ♗xf5 12.♗xf5±, with a big advantage for White) 10.f4 ♖d6 11.f5 ♗f7 12.♗g4 h5 (also in the case of 12...♗d7 13.♗b5 ♖c6 14.♗f4±, it

was difficult for Black to complete the development) 13.♗b5 ♖b6+ 14.♗e3 c5 15.♗e5±. Black's pieces are awkwardly placed, while his king is stuck in the centre for quite a long time. White obtained a big advantage.

5...♖e6? is also bad. White obtains huge advantage in a standard way 6.♗e3 c6 7.d3 ♗f6 8.dxe4 ♗xe4 9.♗xe4 ♖xe4 10.♗d3 ♖e5. It is practically forced, but now the black queen and king are standing on the e-file which leads to catastrophe. After 11.0-0 ♗b4 (losing is 11...♗e7 12.♞e1 0-0 13.♗f5+-, and Black is forced to give away the queen) 12.a3 ♗a5 13.♗c4+-, Despite the material advantage, Black's position is hopeless – which a single look at the position may confirm.

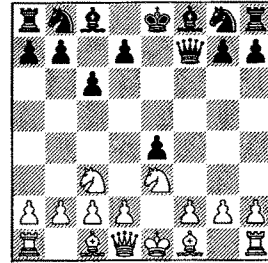
More complicated play arises after 5...♖g6. There White can conduct a thematic break 6.d3 without any preparation. 6...♗b4 (Black faces severe difficulties after 6...exd3? 7.♗xd3 ♖xg2? 8.♖h5+ g6 9.♖e5+ ♗e7 10.♗e4+- and suffers huge material losses, or 8...♗d8 9.♗g5+ ♗f6 10.♗e4+- and the black queen is trapped. Somewhat better is 7...♖e6+ 8.♗e3 ♗f6 9.0-0± Roth – Antusch, Bayern 1988, though White's huge advantage in the development provides him with good chances for success.) 7.♗d2, and now Black faces a difficult choice; in the case of 7...♗xc3 (the continuation 7...exd3 8.♗xd3 ♖xg2, it

gives White a strong attack in a forced way 9.♗e2 ♘f8 10.0-0-0±) 8.♙xc3, White obtains big advantage after 8...♚f6 (even worse is 8...d5. After the forced 9.♘e5 ♗f5 10.dxe4 ♗xe4+ 11.♙e2 ♚f6, White quickly obtained the decisive advantage in the game Smyslov – Kamishov, Moscow 1945: 12.0-0 c6 13.♙h5+ ♘f8 14.♞e1+-) 9.♙xf6! (exchanging the dark-squared bishop, White breaks through to the e4-square). Now both 9...♗xf6 10.dxe4 0-0 11.f3±, with an extra pawn, and 9...gxf6 10.♘e3 d6 11.dxe4±, with a huge positional advantage, give White good chances for success. More stubborn is 7...♚f6. After 8.♘e4 ♙xd2+ 9.♗xd2 0-0, as it happened in the game Howell – Beyer, Hamburg 1992 (another opportunity 9...♘e4 10.dxe4 ♗xe4+ 11.♘e3 d6 12.0-0-0 ♙e6 13.♙d3±, also leads to White's perceptible advantage), White could have obtained an obvious advantage continuing 10.♘xf6+ ♗xf6 11.d4±, though Black would have held on there.

6.♘e3 c6

The continuation 6...♚f6 7.♙c4 ♗g6 (bad is 7...♗e7 8.d3 c6 9.dxe4, with a clear advantage for White, while the pawn lunge 9...b5, which happened in one of the games, led to White's immediate win after 10.♚f5! ♗e5 11.f4+-) 8.d3 ♙b4 (Black does not obtain the sufficient compensation in the variation 8...c6 9.dxe4 ♙c5 10.0-0 d6 11.♗e2± De Blasio

– Minerva, Cecchina 1997) 9.♙d2 ♙xc3 10.♙xc3±, leads to the position where the pair of bishops advantage and the better development define White's substantial advantage.



7.d3! exd3

In the case of 7...d5 8.dxe4 dxe4 9.♘e4 ♗e7 10.♙d3 ♚f6 11.♘xf6+ ♗xf6 12.0-0+-, Black is a pawn down in a bad position, Overbeck – Van Hove, Dortmund 2000.

8.♙xd3 d5 9.0-0 ♙c5

Losing is 9...d4. After 10.♙c4 ♗d7 11.♗h5+ ♘d8 12.♞d1 ♚f6 13.♗h4 c5, follows 14.♘ed5! ♗g4 (or 14...dxc3 15.♙g5+-, with White's irrefutable threats) 15.♙g5 ♗xh4 16.♙xh4 ♚bd7 17.♘e4+-, and despite the queens' exchange White triumphs.

More solid is 9...♙d6 10.♞e1 ♘e7, yet White has an opportunity of developing the initiative 11.♘ed5! cxd5 12.♘b5. The best way for Black is 12...0-0, but after 13.♘d6 ♗xf2+ 14.♗h1 ♙g4 15.♗d2, White obtains an advantage, for example: 15...♗h4 16.♗e3, and Black is forced to give away a pawn. After 16...

♘bc6 17.♘xb7±, White's position is obviously preferable.

10.♘a4

White prepares the undermining of the black central pawn.

10...♙e7

The other retreat 10...♙d6 has the drawback that the black bishop gets under attack in many variations, and in a response to 11.c4, Black has to play 11...d4 (in the case of 11...♘e7 12.♘c3 ♙e6 13.cxd5 cxd5, White obtains an opportunity of 14.♘b5, and after the forced 14...♘c8, White plays 15.♘xd6+ ♘xd6 16.♗c2± White's position is obviously better. And if Black plays similarly to the main line 11...♚f6 12.cxd5 cxd5 13.♘c3 ♙e6, then after 14.♙f5, Black cannot exchange on f5 since his d6-bishop gets under fire and White obtains an important tempo for the attack. Now Black has to give away the d5-pawn. After 14...0-0 15.♙xe6 ♗xe6 16.♘exd5±, Black obtains no compensation for it) 12.♘c2 c5, and White develops the offensive 13.b4! cxb4. After 14.♘xd4, White's threats are extremely dangerous, for example: 14...♘c6 (or 14...♘e7 15.♘b5 ♙e5 16.f4! ♙xa1 17.♘d6+ ♘f8 18.♘xf7 ♙d4+ 19.♗h1 ♘xf7 20.f5!, and White's attack continues) 15.♘xc6 bxc6 16.♙e4 ♗xc4 17.♗xd6 ♗xe4 18.♘c5, with multiple White's threats.

11.c4 ♘f6 12.cxd5 cxd5 13.♘c3 ♙e6

Black has no choice. Losing is 13...d4?, due to 14.♘b5 dxe3 15.♘c7+ ♘f8 16.♙xe3 b6 17.♘xa8 ♙d6 18.♙f5.

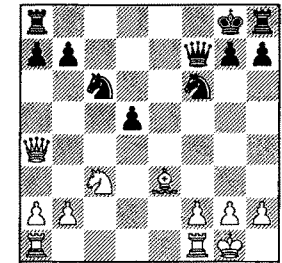
14.♙f5 ♙xf5 15.♘xf5 ♘c6

Bad is 15...♙c5?, due to 16.♙e3 ♙b4 17.a3, and Black has to play 17...♗d7. After 18.♘xg7+ ♗xg7 19.axb4, Black is a pawn down in a bad position.

16.♘xe7 ♗xe7

In the case of 16...♘e7 17.♗a4+, Black also loses the opportunity of the castling 17...♘c6 (or 17...♘f8 18.♗b4 b6 19.♞e1±, and White obtains a significant advantage) 18.♞e1+ ♘f8 19.♙g5±, and White's position is much more preferable.

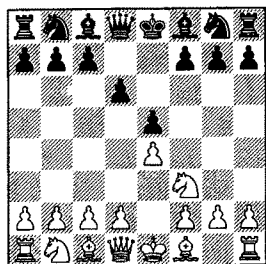
17.♙e3 ♘f8 18.♗a4 ♘g8



19.♞ad1±

The complications are over. The black king is badly placed and the black central pawn is weak. White's chances are significantly better in the forthcoming battle.

Chapter 3

1.e4 e5 2.f3 d6
Philidor's Defence

This continuation was introduced into chess practice by the 18th century French player F.Philidor. Nowadays it is rarely used by top players, but not because of some forced refutation. The reason is that the pawn structures after 2...d6 are relatively not very promising for Black. White has precise ways of getting a better (even if sometimes only slightly better) position without real counterchances for the opponent.

3.d4

In this position Black has a large choice of continuations, from which we will examine a) 3...g4, b) 3...f5 and c) 3...d7 in this chapter. The line with 3...e5xd4 can be found in Chapter 4, and the move 3...f6 is in Chapter 5.

3...c6 4.b5 leads with another move order to the Old Steinitz Defence in the Ruy Lopez (see Chapter 17).

a) 3...g4?! 4.dxe5

It is impossible to play 4...dxe5 at once due to 5.cxd8 cxd8 6.dxe5, so Black has to make a choice: either he exchanges his g4-bishop for the f3-knight at first, then takes the e5-pawn conceding to his opponent the advantage of a bishop pair; or he sacrifices a pawn, leading out his b8-knight, and intending to obtain some advantage in development as compensation.

4...c6

4...d7 5.exd6 cxd6 6.c3 d6f6 7.e2 e7 (Black has attacked the e4-pawn and White has to defend it somehow on his next move.) 8.d4 (8.d2!?) 8...e2 (Losing a piece: 8...dxe4 9.dxe4 cxe4 10.f3+-) 9.cxe2 b4 10.0-0 c3 11.bxc3 0-0 12.f3 c5 13.d2+ Johansson – Herstrom, Haninge 1997. Though White's pawn is doubled, still it is an extra one. His further play should be connected with using

his pawn majority on the kingside.

4...xf3 5.cxf3 dxe5 6.c3!?! (White forces a weakening of the light squares. 6.c4 e7± could have allowed Black to avoid it.) 6...b6 7.c4± Light squares are extremely weak in Black's camp; moreover, he is greatly behind with the development. White activates his pieces with tempo, attacking the black queen, which is forced to go to f6 or to e7 now, and has every prospect of transforming his development advantage into material or of creating an attack to the king.

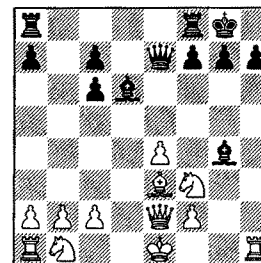
5.exd6 cxd6 6.h3

It is quite possible to play immediately 6.b5 d6e7 7.e3 a6 8.e2 h6 9.h3 h5 10.dbd2 g6 11.0-0 d5 12.dxe5 cxe5 13.d4± with an extra pawn, Kramnik – Molognier, Lyon (simultaneous) 2001

6...h5 7.b5 e7 8.e2 d6f6 9.g4 c6g4

In case of 9...g6 White also wins a piece after 10.e5.

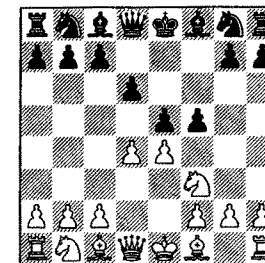
10.hxg4 c6g4 11.e3 0-0 12.c6 bxc6



13.dbd2± Black's compensa-

tion for the piece is insufficient, Cooper – Hodgson, Chester 1979.

b) 3...f5



A risky continuation. Although Black is underdeveloped, he seriously weakens his king (exposing the a2-g8 diagonal and opening files in the centre), and he still cannot inflict serious damage to White in the centre.

4.c3

Black has three continuations at his disposal: b1) 4...exd4, b2) 4...d6 and b3) 4...fxe4.

b1) 4...exd4 5.cxd4 c6

If 5...fxe4, then 6.g5 d6f6 7.dxe4 e7 8.c4±. Black has fallen behind with the development and cannot castle. This line leads to White's large advantage in the ending as well: 8.0-0-0 0-0 9.dxf6+ cxf6 10.c4+ c8h8 11.cxf6 cxf6 12.cxf6 gxf6 13.d4 d7 14.he1± Tseshkovsky – Inkirov, Minsk 1982.

6.b5 fxe4

Or 6...d7 7.c6 c6 8.g5 d7 (8...d6 was relatively better, in order to castle at the cost of the f5-pawn 9.exf5±) 9.

0-0-0 ♖e7 10.♞he1 and here Black did not find anything better than 10...0-0-0 (White was threatening to take on e7 or f5), that after 11.♞xa7 b6 12.exf5+ led to a hopeless position in the game Kratz – Anton, Mehlingen 1992.

7.♙g5 ♞d7

In case of 7...♗f6 there will follow 8.♗xe4 ♙e7 9.♙xf6! ♙xf6 10.♞d5±, again hampering Black's short castling. With his next moves White castles and puts the rook on e1, and after that the black king is in trouble.

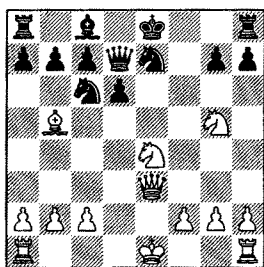
8.♞e3!?

White does not want to trade queens after 8.♞xe4+ ♞e6 9.♞xe6+ ♙xe6 10.0-0-0 ♖f7∞.

8...♙e7

If 8...♗ge7, then 9.♗xe4 will follow as well – Black has the same problems with his king and undeveloped pieces.

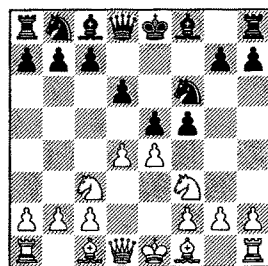
9.♗xe4 ♙xg5 10.♗fxg5 ♗ge7



11.0-0-0±

with White's large advantage, because after 11...0-0 (11...h6 12.♗c5 ♞g4 13.♗ge6±) follows 12.♙c4+ d5 13.♗c3, winning the d5-pawn.

b2) 4...♗f6



This continuation leads Black to a bad position.

5.dxe5 ♗xe4

Also bad is 5...fxe4 6.exf6 exf3 7.f7+ (White can simply win the pawn as well – 7.♞xf3 ♞xf6 8.♞xf6 gxf6 9.♗d5±) 7...♖xf7 8.♞xf3+ ♖e8 9.♙c4 with Black's hopeless position, Lomax – Oostheim, Guernsey 1987. The uncastled king will be mated soon.

6.♗xe4 fxe4 7.♗g5 d5

Loosing is 7...♙f5 8.♞d5 ♞d7 9.♞xb7, Sergeant – Senneck, Nottingham 1946.

8.e6 ♙c5

Avoiding the fork threat 9.♗f7.

9.♗xe4!

In case of 9.♗f7 now there is 9...♞f6 with a threat of check-mate.

9...♙e7

The move 9...dxe4 will be followed by a double blow 10.♞h5+ g6 11.♞xc5± – Black's position is extremely weakened, moreover, he cannot keep the e4-pawn.

10.♞h5+ g6 11.♞e5 ♞f8

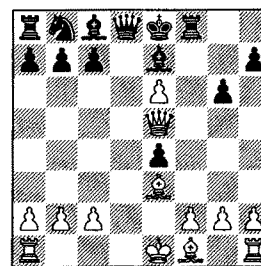
In case of 11...0-0 Black suffers material losses: 12.♙h6 ♙f6,

and now the simplest way is 13.♗xf6+ ♞xf6 14.♞xc7 with material advantage.

12.♙e3

White also has an advantage after 12.♗g5± owing to the extra pawn that he is still keeping, better development and dangerous position of the black king.

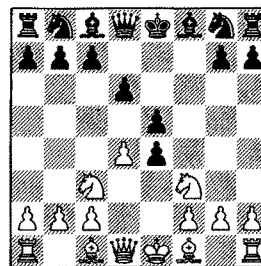
12...dxe4



13.♞d1

With a strongest attack, for example, 13...♙b4+ (13...♙d6 14.♙b5+ c6 15.♞xd6 ♞a5+ 16.c3 ♞xb5 17.♙g5 ♞b6 18.♞c5! and Black has no defence) 14.c3 ♞f6 15.♞xc7 ♙xc3+ 16.bxc3 ♗c6 17.♙b5 ♞xc3+ 18.♖f1 ♙xe6 19.♞xb7 ♞c8 20.♙g5 – it is possible to escape mate only at the cost of serious material losses.

b3) 4...fxe4



5.♗xe4 d5

5...exd4 6.♞e2!?. (The idea of the move is to prepare faster a long castle and to use the e-file, weakened by Black.) 6...♙e7 (6...♗e7 7.♗xd4±; 6...♞e7 7.♙g5±) 7.♗xd4 ♗c6 8.♗xc6 bxc6 9.♙d2±. Black is behind in development with a seriously weakened position.

5...♗f6 6.♗xf6+ gxf6 7.dxe5 dxe5 (7...fxe5 would weaken the black king very much and White can make use of this fact by 8.♗g5 ♞f6 9.♙c4 with a strong attack.) 8.♙d3± White has an advantage thanks to his better development and the weakened diagonals d3-h7 and d1-h5.

6.♗xe5 dxe4 7.♞h5+ g6 8.♗xg6 ♗f6

After 8...hxg6 9.♞xg6+ ♖d7 10.♞f5+ ♖e8 11.♞e5± White takes the h8-rook and after that there is a position, where he has a rook and three pawns for two black knights, i.e. a material advantage approximately of one and a half pawn. In case of queens exchange, in the end-game his passed pawns will be very dangerous. If the queens stay on the board, then the exposed position of the black king will be important.

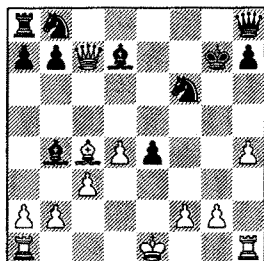
At the same time White has to reckon with Black's counter-chances, connected with the activity of his minor pieces.

9.♞e5+ ♖f7 10.♙c4+ ♖g7

10...♖xg6 11.♞g5#

11.♙h6+ ♖xh6

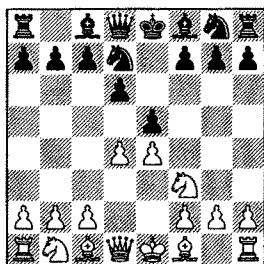
11...♟xg6?? 12.♞g5#
 12.♞xh8 ♠b4+ 13.c3 ♞xh8
 14.h4 ♟g7 15.♞xc7+ ♠d7



16.♞g3±

White has a material advantage, moreover, Black's king is in a bad position.

c) 3...♞d7



4.♠c4

Now Black has to be very accurate when parrying the threats to the f7-square. So, losing is 4...♠e7? 5.dxe5 ♞xe5 (5...dxe5 is bad because of 6.♞d5!, and it is possible to defend from mate only at the cost of a piece 6...♠b4+ 7.c3+-) 6.♞xe5 dxe5 7.♞h5. A double attack to f7 and e5 wins a pawn. 7...g6 8.♞xe5 ♞f6 9.♠h6+-.

4...c6

4...h6?! This is not very good for Black. 5.dxe5 ♞e7 (The only acceptable move for Black. 5...dxe5 gives White an opportunity of dragging out the black king into the centre and attacking it: 6.♠xf7+! ♟xf7 7.♞xe5+ ♟f6 8.♞c3! ♟xe5 9.♞d5+ ♟f6 10.♞f5+ ♟e7 11.♞d5+ ♟d6 12.♠f4+ ♟c6 13.♞e6+ ♠d6 14.♞b4+ ♟b6 - 14...♟b5 15.a4+ ♟a5 16.♞c4 c6 17.♞d5 with mate - 15.♠xd6 cxd6 16.♞xd6+ ♟a5 17.♞d5 b6 18.c4+-). The move 19.♞a3# is threatening, and 18...♟a6 will be followed by 19.♞c6 - threatening is 20.♞b4+ ♟a5 21.♞b5# - 19...♞g5 20.♞c7+ ♟a5 21.b4+, and Black's king is defenceless. The other continuations fail as well: 8...♠b4 9.♞d4 ♠xc3+ 10.bxc3+-, and Black has to allow the taking of the d7-knight with check, because impossible is 10...♟e6 11.♞d5+ ♟f6 12.♞f7+ with mate; or 8...♠c5 9.♞f3+ ♟xe5 10.♞f5+ ♟d6 11.♠f4+ ♟e7 12.♞d5+ ♟e8 13.♞xc7+ ♞xc7 14.♠xc7+-; or 8...♞e7 9.♞d4 ♟e6 10.f4 and in the game Formanek - Metz, Atlanta 1967, Black resigned, because it was not possible to defend from the threats 11.♞c4+ and 11.f5+.) 6.e6 (6.♞c3 deserves attention as well.) 6...fxe6 7.0-0± White has an advantage in development. Black's squares along the diagonal h5-e8 and the e6-square are weakened. White can use these weaknesses either by means of ♞f3-d4 and f2-f4-f5, or by e4-e5, depending on Black's play.

5.0-0 ♠e7 6.dxe5 dxe5 7.♞g5!?

This move aims at getting the advantage of the bishop pair.

7...♠xg5

Dubious is 7...♞h6?! 8.♞e6! fxe6 9.♠xh6 ♞b6 (of course, it is impossible to take the piece: 9...gxf6?? 10.♞h5+ ♟f8 11.♠xe6 ♞e8 12.♞xh6#) 10.♞h5+ g6 11.♞e2 ♞d4 12.♞d2 ♞xb2 13.a4. White's compensation for the pawn is more than sufficient - the black queen is in danger, the king is not castled, the pawns e6 and e5 (and b7, if there will be an opportunity) are weak. The game Hamdouchi - Wahab, Dubai 1995, went on 13...♠d7 14.a5 ♞c8 15.♞b3 ♞c3 16.♠d2 ♞xc2 17.♞fc1 ♞b2 18.♞cb1 when Black resigned in view of 18...♞c2 19.♠d3 capturing the queen.

8.♞h5 ♞e7

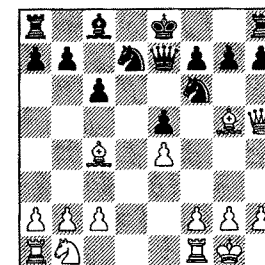
The other moves are worse:

8...g6 9.♞xg5 ♞xg5 10.♠xg5 ♞c5 11.♞d2 ♞e6 12.♠e3 ♞f6 13.f3 (13.♞f3 is also possible, offering Black to exchange the pawns e4 and e5. That would only increase the bishop's power, for example, 13...♞xe4 14.♞xe5 ♞d6 15.♠d3 ♞f5 16.♠d2 ♞c5 17.♞fe1 ♠e6 18.♠c4 ♞d6 19.♠xe6 ♞xe6 20.♞ad1 ♞b5 21.♠h6 with decisive threats, Keres - Menvielle, Tel Aviv 1964) 13...♞h5 14.a4 ♟e7 15.♞fd1 ♞d8 16.♠a2 f6 17.♞c4 b6 18.♞xd8 ♞xd8 19.a5 ♠e6 20.♠b3 ♠xc4 21.♠xc4± and White, combining action on both sides (this is one of chief pluses

of the bishop pair advantage), won in the game Boleslavsky - Sherbakov, Moscow 1942.

8...♞f6 9.♠xg5 ♞g6 10.♞h4±. Thanks to the weakness on d6 and the absence of Black's dark-squared bishop, White manages to seize the d-file and to obtain a large advantage. For example: 10...♞gf6 11.f3 0-0 12.♠e3 ♞b6 13.♠b3 ♞e8 14.♞d2 ♠e6 15.♠xe6 ♞xe6 16.a4 ♞ee8 17.a5 ♞c8 18.♞c4 ♞d7 19.♞fd1± Granda Zuniga - Rogers, New York 1998.

9.♠xg5 ♞g6

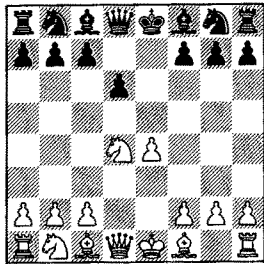


10.♞e2±

White has a small edge owing to the advantage of the bishop pair and Black's queenside, which is slightly weakened by c7-c6. In the game Gipslis - Csom, Budapest 1977 was 10...h6 11.♠d2 0-0 (in case of 11...b5 12.♠d3 ♞c5 with an idea to exchange one of White's bishops, it is possible to play 13.♠a5± with a small advantage due to the weakness of Black's queenside) 12.a4 b6 13.f3 ♠b7 14.♠e3 a6 15.♞f2 b5 16.♠d3 ♞e8 17.♞d2 ♞c7 18.♞b3 ♞e6 19.♞fd1 ♞fd8 20.♠f1 ♞df8 21.♠b6±.

Chapter 4

1.e4 e5 2.f3 d6 3.d4 exd4 4.dxd4 Philidor's Defence



Black has two fundamentally different approaches. The first is connected with fianchettoing the king's bishop **a) 4...g6**, and the second one – with the development of the bishop to e7, which starts with the move **b) 4...f6**.

The branch 4...e7 5.dxc3 f6 transposes to the line **b) 4...f6**.

a) 4...g6

Black leads his bishop to the long diagonal, where it is more active than on e7, but at the same time he gives White a "clue" (the g6-pawn) for a pawn attack to the kingside (h2-h4-h5, rarely f2-f4-f5) in the opposite-side castles position.

5.dxc3 g7 6.e3 f6

There is another possible development of the knight – 6...e7 7.d2 b6 8.0-0 0-0 9.h4 h5

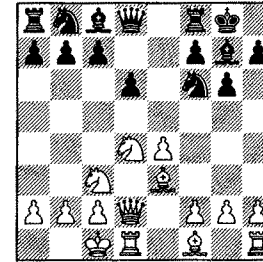
10.f3↑ (White intends to exchange the dark-squared bishops, planning the further pushing g2-g4 and to hxg4 – h4-h5.) 10...dxd4 (or 10...e5 11.h6 d7c6 12.gxg7 g7 13.e2 f6 14.b1 dxd4 15.dxd4 e6 16.f4 d6 17.d2 d7 18.f5 gxf5 19.gxh5 e5 20.exf5 gxf5 21.e2↑ Mohr – Gyorkos, Austria 1997 and later the weakened black castle began to tell) 11.dxd4 dxd4 12.dxd4 d6 13.e3 (Also possible is 13.d2 e6 14.e2 f6 15.f4 e8 16.f5 gxf5 17.gxh5 Stertenbrink – Spassky, Germany 1987, with better play for White, who has already ruined the black king's pawn shield.) 13...e6 14.e2 f6 15.b1 e5 16.g4 hxg4 17.f4 d6 18.gxc4 dxc4 19.h5 Koeller – Balshan, Biel 1995, with an attack.

7.d2 0-0

The line 7...d6 8.f3 0-0 9.0-0-0 leads by different move-order to the main variation – 7...0-0. After 7...d5 8.exd5 dxd5 9.g5 f6 10.0-0-0!± Black is hard set, as his king and the queen fall under attack along the open files. 10...fxg5 (10...dxc3 11.dxc3 f6 12.g5 f6) 11.e2+ f7 12.f3+

g6 (12...f6 13.g4+; 12...f4 13.g4+; 13. dxd5 (or 13. dxd5 dxd5 14. dxd5 d8 15. g4 g7 16. h1) 13...c6 14. dxf6 f6 15. g4+ g7 16. h1) White, who has seized the open files, has a clear edge.

8.0-0-0



Again Black chooses between two continuations: **a1) 8...d6** and **a2) 8...e8**.

a1) 8...d6

This move, which in general is connected with the idea of a counter-attack against the white king through the exchange on d4, e6, c7-c5, a5, b7-b5, leads to a sharp play in which White's chances are appreciably higher.

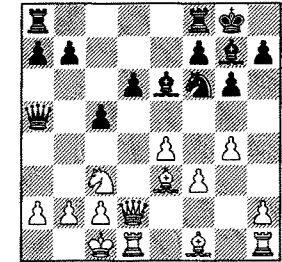
9.f3 dxd4

9...e8 transposes to the line 8...e8.

After 9...e6 10.dxe6 fxe6 11.h4↑ White has a clear play connected with g2-g4, h4-h5xg6 and an attack along the h-file. In the game Berg – B. Larsen, Denmark 1991 followed 11...e8 12.g4 d5 13.exd5 dxd5 14.dxd5 exd5 15.h5 d8 16.hxg6 hxg6 17.g5 d6 18.e1 with White's

upper hand, who has already created a threat to the enemy king having his own monarch secured.

10.dxd4 e6 11.g4! c5 12.e3 a5



13.g6!±

Practically for all variations which are cited below the following play is typical. White can perfectly combine his attack against the black king with material gains in the centre (the d- and b-pawns, first of all). Even opening up files near the white king is not fatal. On the contrary, after swaping the dark-squared bishops, Black will be in constant concern about the holes around his king. To create counterplay Black will have to go for material and positional concessions.

13...g6

Other continuations also do not help Black.

13...b5 (the move 13...xa2?? loses immediately 14.g7 g7 15.dxa2 xa2 16.c3) 14.g7 g7 15.dxb5! xa2 16.c3! White pins the f6-knight. 16...h6 17.h4 h8 18.g1 g5 19.f4! and in Sandor – Gross, Balatonbe-

reny 1996 White achieved a winning position.

13...♞fd8 14.♙xg7 ♖xg7 15.h4 (Deserves attention 15.♖b1 b5 16.g5 ♘h5 17.♙e3±) 15...h5 (Black cannot take a pawn 15...♙xa2 because of 16.h5 ♙e6 17.hxg6 ♙a1+ 18.♘b1 ♙a2 19.♙h6+ ♖h8 20.g7+ or 17...fxg6 18.♙h6+ ♖g8 19.g5 ♘h5 20.♞xh5+-) 16.gxh5 ♘xh5 17.♞g1 b5 18.♙g5 b4 19.♘b1 ♞h8 20.♞xd6 ♞ae8 21.♙e5+ ♖h7 22.♞a6 ♙d8 23.♙b5. White has a clear advantage – he grabs one of the black queenside pawns, thus getting a material advantage Yurtaev – Gulko, Frunze 1985.

14.♙xh6 b5

At least it is a bold continuation, introduced by the game Makarichev – Tukmakov, Palma de Mallorca 1989. We will be following it further as our main variation.

In the game Hennigan – Westerinen, Gausdal 1995 was 14...♙xa2 15.h4 ♙e6 16.h5 ♙c7 (White threatened with 17.hxg6 fxg6 18.g5 ♘h5 19.♘h5 gxh5 20.♙xe6+. The move 16...♙a1+ failed to 17.♖d2 ♙xb2 18.♞b1 ♙a3 19.hxg6 fxg6 20.g5 ♘h5 21.♞xh5+-) 17.♘b5 ♙e7 18.♘d6 ♘d7 19.f4 ♙xg4 20.♙c4! ♖h8 21.♘xf7+ ♞xf7 22.♙xf7 gxh5 and here the easiest winning line was 23.♞xd7 ♙xd7 24.♙xh5 ♙xe4 25.♙h6+-.

15.♙xb5 ♞ab8 16.a4 a6 17.♞xd6!→

White does his best to reach

the weak f6-square near the black king.

17...axb5 18.e5 ♘xg4

18...♘e8 19.♘e4 (with a threat of 20.♘f6+) 19...f5 20.♘g5 White regains his sacrificed piece with interest.

19.fxg4 ♙b4

Black does not let the white knight to e4.

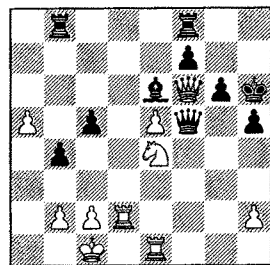
20.a5!

Suddenly the a-pawn turns out to be a passed one.

20...♙xg4 21.♞e1 ♙f5 22.♙h4 b4 23.♘e4 h5 24.♞d2 ♖g7

In Oesterle – Malaniuk, Forli 1990 after 24...♖h8 25.♘xc5 ♞b5 26.♞f2 Black had to give up his queen: 26...♞xc5 (if Black is stubborn in his repulsion to sacrifice the queen, then after 26...♙g4 27.♙f6+ ♖g8 28.♞f4 ♙h3 29.♞f3 ♙g4 30.♞g3 ♙f5 31.♞g5 ♙xf6 32.exf6+- he is a pawn down in the endgame) 27.♞xf5 ♙xf5 28.♞e2±.

25.♙f6+ ♖h6

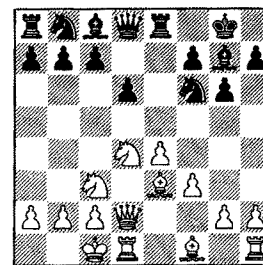


26.♘xc5

and White has converted his material advantage: 26...♞b5 27.♘xe6 fxe6 28.♙xf5 ♞xf5 29.a6 ♞fxe5 30.♞xe5 ♞xe5 31.♞d6 ♖g5

32.c4 ♖h4 33.♖c2 ♖h3 34.♖b3 ♖xh2 35.♖xb4 ♞e1 36.a7 ♞a1 37.♞d2+ Makarichev – Tukmakov, Palma de Mallorca 1989.

a2) 8...♞e8 9.f3



9...♘c6

Dangerous is 9...a6 10.h4 b5 11.♙h6↑. The play unfolds around the black king, whereas the white one is safe. The game Van der Sterren – Jacobsen, Silkeborg 1980 followed 11...♙h8 12.♙g5 ♙b7 13.h5 ♘bd7 14.g3 ♙g7 15.hxg6 hxg6 (Nevertheless, better is 15...fxg6 leaving a pawn on the h-file 16.♙h3 ♘f8 17.♘d5↑) 16.g4 ♘e5 17.♙f4 c5 18.♙h6! ♙h8 (18...cxd4 19.♙xg7 ♘fxg4 20.♙xe5 ♘xe5 21.♞xd4±) 19.♘f5! b4 20.♙g7! (White exchanges the main defender of the black king) 20...♘h5 21.♙h6 ♙xg7 22.♘xg7 bxc3 23.♞xh5 cxb2+ 24.♖b1 gxh5 25.♘xh5, and Black resigned in view of the imminent mate.

10.g4 ♘e5

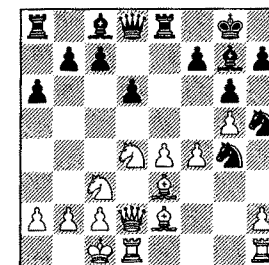
10...a6 11.♙e2 ♘e5 steers the play to the main line.

10...d5 leads forcedly to White's huge advantage. 11.g5

♘h5 12.♘xd5 ♘xd4 13.♙xd4 ♙xd4 14.♙xd4 ♙xg5+ 15.♙d2 ♙d8 (15...♙e5 16.f4 ♙xe4 17.♙b5 ♙e6 18.♙xe8± with the extra exchange. Also bad is 16...♙d6 17.e5 ♙c5 18.♙e2 and Black has to concede to a losing rook ending 18...♙e6 19.♙xh5 ♙xd5 20.♙xd5 ♙xd5 21.♞xd5 gxh5 22.♞d7+-) 16.♙h6 (17.♘f4 threatens) 16...♙d6 17.♞g1 ♘f6 18.♙b5 ♞e5 (18...c6 19.♘b6±) 19.♙c4 ♘xd5 20.♙xd5±. White has produced severe threats to the black kingside: sacrifices on g6, f3-f4-f5.

10...♘xd4 11.♙xd4 ♙e6 (After 11...c5 12.♙f2! ♙a5 13.♙xd6± Black does not have enough compensation for the pawn, although White has to switch to deflecting threats for a while.) 12.g5 ♘h5 13.♙xg7 ♘xg7 14.h4↑. It is not clear what can Black oppose to White's play on the kingside. Rodin – Meister, Podolsk 1992 further followed 14...♙e7 15.f4 c6 16.♙e2 ♞ad8 17.♙f3 f6 18.h5 fxg5 19.hxg6 hxg6 20.♞dg1 ♞f8 21.♞xg5 ♙xg5 22.fxg5 ♞xf3 23.b3 with a material advantage.

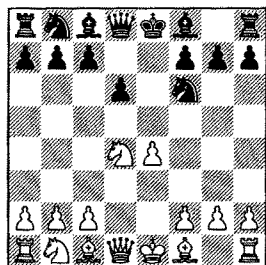
11.♙e2 a6 12.g5!? ♘h5 13.f4 ♘g4



14. ♖g1↑

Black must get his g4-knight out of trouble (15.h3 is threatening) – his next moves are forced. Further in the game M.Rytshagov – Meijers, Mezezers 2000 was 14...c5 15. ♖b3 ♗xc3 16.bxc3 ♜xe4 17.h3 ♖g3 18. ♖f3 ♜a4 19. ♗xc5 ♖xh1 20. ♖xh1 ♜a4 21. ♖b1 ♜a4 and now the easiest is 22. ♜xd6 ♜xd6 23. ♜xd6 ♖e6 (23...h5 24. ♜d8+ ♖h7 25.hxg4+- and 26. ♖d4 with the decisive material advantage) 24. ♖xb7 ♜b8 25.hxg4 ♜xf4 26. ♖xa6± with a material advantage.

b) 4... ♖f6



5. ♖c3 ♖e7

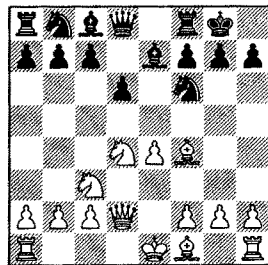
The line 5...g6 6. ♖e3 ♖g7 7. ♖d2 transposes to the variation with 4...g6, which is considered above.

6. ♖f4!?

As in the variation with the black king's bishop fianchetto, White arranges a long castling with further kingside pawns onset (f3, g4, h4). The similar counterplay against the white king (a6, b5-b4) is less efficient – the white c3-knight simply

goes for the centre to d5. White develops the bishop on f4 in case of d6-d5. The bishop on f4 is also useful in case Black plays on c6 in order to rob the white knight of the d5-square and prepare the b5-b4 advance.

6...0-0 7. ♖d2



Black must make up his mind whether he immediately carries out a break-through in the centre b1) 7...d5, or he prepares a queenside action by b2) 7...a6, b3) 7...c6 or b4) 7...♖c6.

b1) 7...d5 8. ♖db5

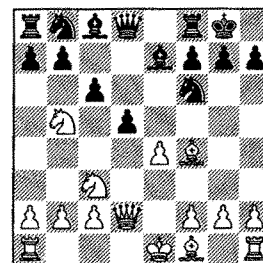
White uses the weakening of the c7-pawn. The emerging complications lead after a best play of both sides to White's edge in the ending. To hazy consequences leads 8.exd5 ♖xd5 9. ♖xd5 ♜xd5 10. ♖b5 ♜e4+ 11. ♖e2 ♜xg2 (11...♜d8 12. ♜e3) 12.0-0-0 ♖a6 13. ♜hg1 ♜xf2 (13...♜c6 14. ♜xg7+ ♖xg7 15. ♖e5+ f6 16. ♜g1+ ♖h8 17. ♜g5 ♖g4!) 14. ♖h6 g6 15. ♖xf8 ♖xf8∞.

Black has sufficient compensation for the exchange.

In the current position Black players used the moves b1a)

8...c6!?

b1a) 8...c6!?



A sharp continuation, which is an idea of the Romanian player Nisipeanu. Black hopes to use his lead in development and the exposed enemy king by a sacrifice of the a8-rook. In M.Brodsky – Nisipeanu, Bucharest 2001 further was

9. ♖c7 d4 10. ♖e2 g5 11. ♖e5 ♖bd7

11... ♖xe4 12. ♜xd4+- 12. ♖xf6 ♖xf6 13. ♜xg5+!

Apparently no success to White yields the line 13. ♖xa8 ♖xe4 14. ♜xd4 ♜a5+ 15.c3 (15. ♖c3 ♖f6 16. ♜xe4 ♖xc3+ 17.bxc3 ♜xc3+ 18. ♖e2 ♜xa1 19. ♖c7 ♜c3 – the move ♜d8 threatens, the c7-knight cannot be saved) 15...♖f5 16.f3 ♖c5 17.b4 ♖xd4 18.bxa5 ♖f2+ 19. ♖d1 ♜d8+ 20. ♖c1 ♖e3+ 21. ♖b2 ♖f2∞.

13... ♖h8 14. ♖xa8 ♜e8 15. ♖d2!

In the abovementioned game White played 15.f3, but after 15... ♖xe4 16. ♜e5+ ♖g8 17. ♜xd4 ♖c5 18. ♜xe4 ♜xe4 19.fxe4 ♖e3 20. ♜d1 ♖f2+ 21. ♖xf2 ♜xd1 he

lost because of the knight, stuck on a8 and doomed to be grabbed.

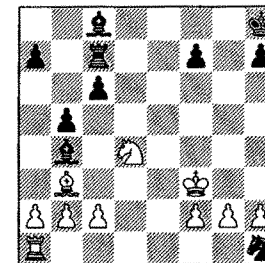
15... ♖xe4 16. ♜xd4+ ♜xd4 17. ♖xd4 ♖b4+ 18. ♖e2

18.c3 ♖xc3+ 19. ♖d2 ♖b5+ 20. ♖d3 ♜d8.

18... ♖g3+ 19. ♖f3 ♖xh1 20. ♖c4

20.c3 ♖d6 21. ♖d3 ♖g4+.

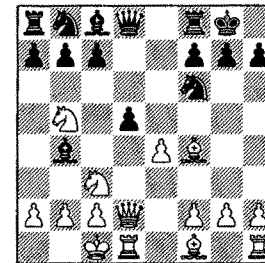
20...b5 21. ♖c7 ♜e7 22. ♖b3 ♜xc7



23. ♖xh1± The ephemeral initiative of Black is not enough to make up for the pawn deficiency.

b1b) 8... ♖b4 9.0-0-0

On 9.exd5 even 9... ♜e8+ 10. ♖e2 ♖xd5 is enough. 9. ♖xc7 d4 (9... ♖xe4 10. ♜xd5 ♜xd5 11. ♖7xd5±) 10.0-0-0 ♖c6 11. ♖xa8 ♜a5∞ does not yield White any dividends .



9...c6

Also possible is 9...dxe4 10. exd5 exd5 11. dxd5 a6 12. e3 c6 13. bxc7 cxd5 14. dxa8 – the white knight gets out of captivity preserving the extra material.

9...e5 10. exd5 a6 11. d4 e3c3 (after 11...d4 12. e3 dxc3 13. bxc3 White is a pawn up, though his opponent has some compensation. However the following line leads to material losses 13...exd5? 14. d3 e5 15. g4±; 11...dxd5 12. d3 e6 13. dxa5 dxf4 14. g3 e6 15. e2±) 12. e3c3 dxd5 13. e3g3 dxf4 14. e3xf4 e5 15. d3 e5 16. e3c7 d6 (16...e3xf2 runs to 17. e4 d6 18. h1 e3+ 19. b1 – in order to repel the threats to f7 Black has to sacrifice his b7-pawn with the move 19...e6 20. h1 e6 21. e6 fxe6 22. e3xb7±) 17. e3g3 e6 18. d3± Istratescu – Gelashvili, Patras 2001. Black does not have sufficient compensation for a pawn.

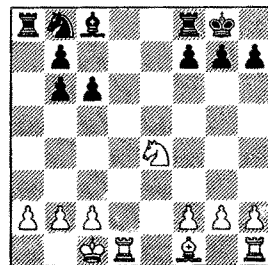
10.d4 11.e3 e5

11...dxc3 is not good – 12. bxc3 e3+ 13. b1±. After capturing on a8 White will have a whole extra rook for a pawn for some time, and a strayed, but hard to capture knight, as shown by the game Kalegin – Riabchok, Smolensk 1992: 13...a6 14. dxa8 b5 15. e3g3 d5 16. d3 dxd3 17. h3d3 e5 18. d7 dxd3 19. cxd3+.

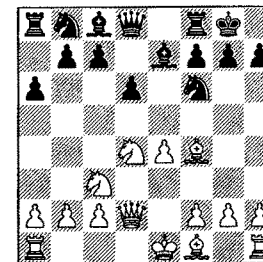
Stronger is 11...e3 with the idea of harassing the f4-bishop

after 12. bxc3 g5 (worse is 12... e7 13. b2 g5 14. e3 f5 15. dxa8 f4 16. e1! f3 17. f3 – Black loses a knight because of the pin, that was why the queen should not have been placed on e7 – 17...a6 18. e6 bxa6 19. fxe4 e4 20. d4 20...xa8 21. exd5 with the extra exchange (less clear is 20. exd5 e7+ 21. c1 d1, Shabanov – Vorotnikov, Krasnodar 1991). 13. e4 (Leads to a better endgame for White forcedly. To unclear consequences leads the variant which was in the game Yagupov – Kozlov, Tula 2000: 13. e3 f5 14. dxa8 f4 15. e3?! – better is 15. e4 gxf4 16. e3a7 a6 17. e1 e5 18. e4 dxe4 19. e4+ e7 20. e4+ e6 21. d6± – 15...f3 16. d3 dxf2 17. e3b8 dxd1 18. h3d1 e4 19. e3g3 dxd1 20. dxd1 and here the correct 20...h7 gave Black an edge.) 13...e3 14. e3h7+ e3h7 15. e3c7 e6 16. h4±. The bishop pair advantage coupled with the black king's poor position determines White's advantage.

12. e4 e3 13. e3c7 14. dxe4 15. e3b6 16. e3xb6

**16.a3±**

In the current position White has an advantage in the placement of his pieces – the knight can occupy the d6-square, weakened by his opponent, the rooks – the central open files. In Yagupov – G. Kuzmin, Alushta 1999 further was 16...d7 17. e4 d5 18. e1 dxe4 19. e4 b5 20. b3 c5 21. d5 a6 22. e7 f6 23. f3 b6 24. c7 h5 25. c6 e5 26. e6 gxf6 27. e6 b4 28. axb4 cxb4 29. d5± with material gains.

b2) 7...a6**8.0-0-0**

The attempt to open up the play in the centre brings Black troubles: 8...d5 9. exd5 dxd5 10. dxd5 e3 11. d3 e6 12. d3±. White has a development advantage and targets on both flanks. On 12...e6 (not good is 12...e4 – the queen will be lonely in the centre as the other black pieces are lagging behind in development. In Salinnikov – Payen, St. Petersburg 1998 further came 13. e1 e6 14. b1 c5 15. e4 c4 16. e4 e4 17.

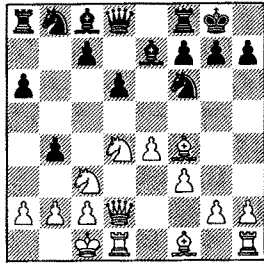
e7+–) deserves consideration the move 13. b4!? with the threat of d7+ (less clear is 13. e1 e3 14. e3c7 d6 15. h4 e4 16. g1 e4 17. c3 e3a2 18. e4 e8, Konguvel – Yurtaev, Calcutta 1998) – after 13...d7 14. e4 e5 15. e3b5 axb5 16. e3c7 e3a2 17. d6 d8 18. c3 White has a better endgame and prospects to attack the weak enemy queenside pawns.

8...b5 9.f3 b4

Too optimistic is 9...d5 – in comparison with the variation 8...d5 Black has weakened the queenside even more with the move b7-b5. In Ermenkov – Lechtynsky, Berlin 1982 after 10. dxd5 dxd5 11. exd5 e3 12. d3 e3 13. h3d2 Black made up his mind to sacrifice a pawn – 13...e5, but in the case of the immediate 14. e3c7 (in the game was 14. d4 e6 15. e3c7 e3 16. e4 e6 and White had to step back with the knight – 17. d3 d6 18. a3 a5) 14...e3 15. e4 he was unlikely to get real compensation for it.

The move 9...e6 with the idea to prevent the white knight from taking d5 does not decide anything, too. White can force the exchange of the e6-bishop for the f5-knight (playing d5 right away or later), e.g., 10. d5 e5 11. exf5 d6 12. g4 e5 13. h4 (better is 13. e2 → not giving up material and threatening with further pawns' onset) 13...b4 14. d2 d4 (14...dxf3 15. e3

♘e5 16.g5 ♘fd7) 15. ♖d4 d5 16.g5 ♘h5 17. ♙h2 with White's clear edge Bellon Lopez – Van den Bosch, Olot 1969.



10. ♘d5±

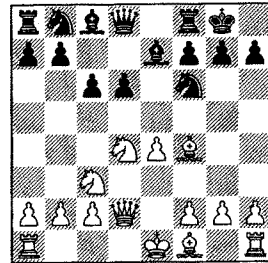
White has an advantage, as he dominates the centre. He has opportunities to attack the black king, he can show his activity in the centre or even direct it against the weakened black queenside pawns. In Kholmov – Antoshin, Havana 1968 further was 10... ♘xd5 11. exd5 a5 12. ♙c4 ♙b7 13. ♘f5 ♘d7 14. ♘xe7+ ♖xe7 15. ♖h1 ♖d8 16. ♙g5 f6 (the weakening of the e6-square is very annoying for Black). 17. ♙e3 ♘e5 18. ♙b5 ♙a6 19. ♙xa6 ♖xa6 20. f4 ♘g6 21. ♖d3 ♖a8 22. ♙d2 – White has a space advantage, the e-file for the rooks and good opportunities to utilise the defects in the enemy pawn structure.

b3) 7...c6

(diagram)

8.0–0–0 d5

Via 8...b5 Black can start his play on the queenside. 9.f3 b4 10. ♘b1! (To unclear consequences leads 10. ♘ce2 c5 11. ♘b5?! ♖a5



12. ♘a3 ♘c6 with Black's advantage; 11. ♘f5 ♙xf5 12. exf5 d5! 13. g4 d4) 10... ♖b6 (Now 10...c5 fails to 11. ♘b5 and after 11... ♖a5, unlike in the variant 10. ♘ce2 there are neither the unprotected b5-knight nor the mating threat on a1, so the simple capture of the pawn is possible 12. ♙xd6) 11. g4↑ White manages to design serious threats to the black king much earlier than his opponent. On c6-c5 the attacked knight will move to f5 and on the obligatory ♙xf5 White either takes with the g-pawn, opening up the file for an attack, or with the e-pawn with the further g4-g5 and f5-f6. In Lanka – Bosboom, Netherlands 1994 further came 11... ♖d8 (after 11...d5 12.e5 ♘e8 13.h4 White's attack resulted in mate: 13... ♘c7 14. ♘f5 ♙c5 15. ♙d3 ♘d7 16. ♙h6 ♘xe5 17. ♘xg7 ♖h8 18. ♘h5 ♘e8 19. ♖g5 ♘xf3 20. ♙g7 ♖g8 21. ♙xh7+ ♖xh7 22. ♖h6+ ♖g8 23. ♖h8# Hyldkrog – Jensen, corr. 1984) 12.h4 c5 13. ♘f5 ♙xf5 14. gxf5 ♘c6 15. ♖g2 ♘d4 16. ♙h6 ♘e8 17. ♙g5 ♘f6 18. ♘d2 ♖b7 19. ♙d3 ♖h8 20. ♖d1 ♖g8 21. f4 ♖ac8 22. ♘c4 and not waiting for the in-

evitable e4-e5, Black “twitched” his pawn 22...d5 23. ♘e5 ♙d6 and lost the exchange 24. ♙a6+.

9. exd5 ♘xd5 10. ♘xd5 ♖xd5 11. ♖b1

White has an initiative owing to his development advantage and the black queen's poor position.

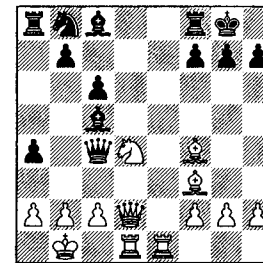
11...a5 12. ♙e2 a4

To take the pawn with 12... ♖xg2 is dangerous for Black, since the g-file got open and White creates serious threats to the black king along it, e.g., 13. ♖hg1 ♖d5 14. ♙h6 ♙f6 15. ♖f4 ♘d7 (15... ♖e5 16. ♙xg7 ♖xf4 17. ♙xf6+ ♙g4 18. ♖xg4+ ♖xg4 19. ♙xg4+–) 16. ♙xg7 ♙xg7 17. ♘f5 ♖e5 18. ♖xg7 ♖h8 19. ♖xh7+!+–.

13. ♙f3 ♖c4

In Leko – Barbero, Hungary 1995 it was 13... ♖c5 14. ♖h1 ♙f6 15. ♙e3 and after Black's blunder 15... ♖d8? (15... ♖b6± must have been played) 16. ♘xc6! ♖xd2 17. ♙xc5 ♖xd1+ 18. ♙xd1+– White won a pawn.

14. ♖h1 ♙c5

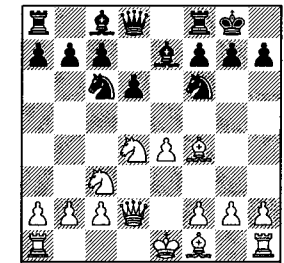


15. ♖e4!→

The black pieces' poor set-up (they are either undeveloped or

pushed back on the queenside) gives White good chances to attack the black king. In Brustman – Chiburdanidze, Novi Sad 1990 further was: 15... ♖a6 16. ♙h6! ♙xd4 (16... gxf6 17. ♖xh6 f6 18. ♖h4 ♖f7 19. ♘e6 ♙xe6 20. ♖d8+ ♙f8 21. ♖xf8+–) 17. ♖xd4 gxf6 18. ♖xh6 ♙f5 (18... ♙d7 19. ♖g5+ ♖h8 20. ♖f6+ ♖g8 21. ♙e4 with a threat of 22. ♙xh7+) 19. ♖d8 ♘d7 20. ♖g5+ ♙g6 21. ♖8xd7±.

b4) 7...♘c6



8.0–0–0 ♘xd4

Black exchanges the knight to get a possibility to transfer his bishop on an active position on the e6-square. On 8... ♘e5 White can prepare the move g4 by 9.h3, e.g., 9...c6 10.g4 ♖c7 11.g5 ♘e8 12. ♘f5 ♙xf5 13. exf5 f6 14.g6 with an attack Zuckerman – Nikolic, Bari 1970.

The move 8... ♙d7 is not good because on this square Black's bishop is passive and does not contribute in creating a counterplay. In Borghi – Varga, Buenos Aires 1978 Black connected this move with the idea of exchanging the dark-squared bishops af-

ter 9.f3 ♘h5 10.♙e3 ♘xd4 11. ♗xd4 ♙g5, however this plan needs a lot of time and White manages to advance his pawns on the kingside: 12.g4 ♙xe3+ 13.♗xe3 ♘f6 14.g5 ♘e8 15.h4 c6 16.f4± with a clear advantage.

Also passive is 8...♞e8 9.f3 ♙f8; again with his last moves Black has not undertaken anything to create his own play and if he intended to lead his bishop out to g7, as in the game Weng – Frazao, Litomys 1994, which saw 10.h4 g6, then it is not clear why he did not fianchetto it as early as on the 4th or the 5th move. Further came 11.♘xc6 bxc6 12.e5 ♘h5 13.♙g5 ♗d7 14.♘e4 d5 (14...♞xe5 15.g4) 15.g4 dxe4 (15...♗e6 16.♙c4! ♗xe5 17.♞de1 ♗g7 18.gxh5 dxe4 19.hxg6 hxg6 20.fxe4) 16.♗xd7 ♙xd7 17.♞xd7 ♘g7 18.♙c4 with an overwhelming positional advantage.

9.♗xd4 ♙e6 10.f3 ♘d7

Or 10...a6 11.g4 b5 (11...♞e8 12.h4± White's chances, who has already advanced his kingside pawns, are obviously better) 12.h4 c5 13.♗d2 ♗a5 (13...b4 14.♘d5 ♙xd5 15.exd5 ♘d7 16.g5 ♘b6 17.h5± – White starts to attack earlier than his opponent Martorelli – Scalcione, Montecatini Terme 2002) 14.♗b1 b4 15.♘d5 ♙xd5 16.exd5 ♘d7 17.g5 ♘b6 18.h5±. Black is evidently late with his counterplay – g6 is already on the agenda and 18...c4?! (with the idea of c3) does not work because of 19.♗d4 with the

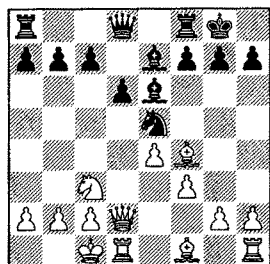
threats of 20.h6 and 20.♙c4.

11.♗d2

White withdraws his queen from the ♙f6-attack in advance and prevents a possible swap of the dark-squared bishops on g5.

11...♘e5

Possible is 11...a6 12.♗b1 b5 13.♘d5 ♙xd5 14.exd5↑. As it is typical for positions like that, White plans a pawn attack on the kingside (g4-g5, h4-h5, g6). Black's possible counter-chances are in his play against the b2-square or in exchanging pieces, although White is able to hinder it.

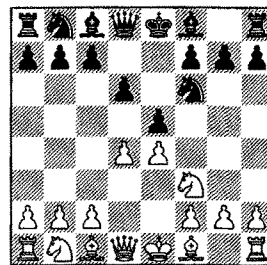


12.♗b1±

Ankerst – Straub, Munich 1993 went on 12...c6 when 13.♙g3!? was worth consideration, with the idea of f4-f5. In the arisen position White retains his slight advantage thanks to his more active central position. In the game White played 13.♙e2 (with the idea of g4). In this case the move led to a loss of time, since after b5-b4 the white knight is better off retreating to e2. 13...b5 14.g4 a5 15.♗e3 ♗c7 16.♙d3 ♞fb8∞.

Chapter 5

1.e4 e5 2.♘f3 d6 3.d4 ♘f6 Philidor's Defence



Black's last move allows White a possibility to get a lead in development in position with an open centre, which in the future can be turned into a bishop pair advantage in the endgame, for instance.

4.dxe5

The alternative is 4.♘c3.

4...♘xe4 5.♗d5

The best move! It is both assaulting the e4-knight and preventing its protection with the move d5. White affects the coordination of Black's forces.

5...♘c5

The move 5...f5 terribly weakens the a2-h8 diagonal, and with the king in the centre exposed on the open central files, Black's position is dubious: 6.♙c4 ♗e7 7.0-0 c6 8.exd6 cxd5 (8...♘xd6 9.♗d3 ♘e4 10.♞e1±; 8...♗f6

9.♗d1±) 9.dxe7 dxc4 10.exf8♗+ ♗xf8 (on 10...♞xf8 comes 11.♞e1± with the threat of ♘b1-c3xe4) 11.♘bd2. Black has serious troubles – his is behind in development and his king and the c4-pawn are exposed to attack. 11...♘xd2 12.♘xd2 ♙e6 13.♞e1 ♗f7 (This attempt to develop somehow the pieces results in a difficult position for Black, but 13...♙f7 14.b3 brings no alleviation as well – after ♙a3+ the king will have to retreat to g8, which means that with the rook locked on h8 and White's domination along the open central files the losses will be just around the corner.) 14.♘f3 h6 15.♘e5+ ♗f6 16.♙d2 ♘d7 (16...♘c6 17.♘xc6 bxc6 18.♙c3+ ♗f7 19.♙xg7±) 17.♘d7+ ♙xd7 18.♙c3+ ♗f7 19.♙xg7±. White has a sound extra pawn and the only drawing chance for Black is the bishops of the opposite colour.

6.♙g5

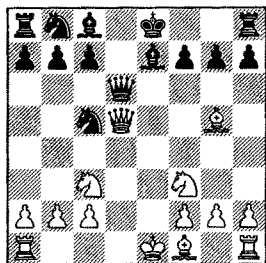
Black has two moves: a) 6...♙e7 and b) 6...♗d7.

a) 6...♙e7 7.exd6 ♗xd6

Of course, 7...cxd6 8.♙b5±

gives White a clear edge due to the weakness of the d6-pawn, which is difficult to protect with the poorly set up black pieces.

8. ♖c3



8...♖e6

In this position Black has a great choice of approximately equal continuations, but owing to the better position of the white pieces the assessment varies from a slight advantage for White to appreciable one, both in the middlegame and in the endgame after a queens exchange.

The move 8...♖e6 gives White a possibility to get a bishop pair advantage after 9. ♖xd6 ♖xd6 10. ♖b5±;

8...0-0 9.0-0 ♖e6 (again to White's advantage leads 9...♖c6 10. ♖xd6 ♖xd6 11. ♖b5±. Also seen is 9...a6 10. ♖e3 ♖e6 11. ♖h5 ♖c6 12. ♖d4 ♖e8 13. ♖xe6 ♖xe6 14. ♖c4±. Black's pieces are extremely badly placed, Engelbert – Dreyer, Germany 1982 and also 9...h6 10. ♖e3 ♖ba6, Llames – Olea, Gijon 1999 when 11. ♖h5 would have given White a serious advantage, e.g., 11...♖e6 12. ♖d5 ♖d6 13. ♖d4 ♖g4 14.

♖xg4 ♖xg4 15. f3 ♖d7 16. b4 ♖a4 17. ♖b5 ♖xb4 18. ♖xb4 ♖xb5 19. ♖xb5 ♖c3 20. ♖xd6 cxd6±) 10. ♖xd6 ♖xd6 11. ♖b5 ♖e4 12. ♖xd6 cxd6 13. ♖h4 ♖c6 14. ♖d4± White's advantage consists in his bishop pair advantage and better pawn structure, Steiner – Von Holzhausen, Berlin 1928;

8...c6 9. ♖xd6 ♖xd6 10.0-0-0 ♖e7 (Or 10...♖c7 11. ♖e3 ♖e6 12. ♖e4 0-0 13. ♖d6 ♖xd6 14. ♖xd6 ♖d7 15. ♖c4 ♖f6 16. ♖e5 ♖e4 17. ♖dd1± the bishop pair advantage ensures some edge to White, Korneev – Bukacek, Werfen 1992) 11. ♖c4 ♖e6 12. ♖he1 ♖ba6 13. ♖xe7 ♖xe7 14. ♖d4 ♖he8 15. ♖xe6 fxe6 16. a3, Seyffer – Hoermann, Germany 1989. White is better – he threatens after b2-b4 and ♖e4-d6(g5) to attack Black's weaknesses;

8...♖xd5 9. ♖xd5 ♖d6 10. 0-0-0 (the move 10. ♖e3 was worth considering with the idea of ♖d2-c4) 10...♖c6 (To White's advantage leads 10...♖e6 11. ♖e3 ♖bd7 12. ♖c3 ♖f6 13. ♖b5± Marciano – Berend, France 1998. Black fails to impede the move ♖b5 by 12...a6? because of the loss of a piece 13. b4) 11. ♖b5 ♖e6 (11...♖d7 12. ♖he1 ♖e6 13. c4 ♖c8 14. ♖f4 a6 15. ♖xd6 cxd6 16. ♖xc6 ♖xc6 17. ♖b1± Nijboer – Cifuentes, Netherlands 1994, the d6-pawn is weak) 12. ♖he1 0-0 13. ♖h4 f6 (13...♖f4 14. ♖g3±) 14. ♖g3 ♖xg3 15. hxg3, Madl – Coenen, Budapest 1992, White has seized the central files;

8...♖e6+ occurred in the game Rublevsky – Abramovic, Budva 1996, which went on 9. ♖e3 c6 10. ♖d4 0-0 11. ♖c4 ♖g4 12.0-0 b5 13. ♖e5! ♖xc4 14. ♖xe7 ♖b7 (14... ♖ba6 15. ♖e5 ♖e6 16. ♖xc5+-; 14...♖e6?? 15. ♖e5+-) 15. ♖g5 ♖h4 (On 15...h6 may follow 16. ♖d4 ♖c5 17. ♖xc5 ♖xc5 18. ♖ge4 ♖xe4 19. ♖xe4±. Black's dark squares and the queenside pawns are weak) 16. ♖d4 ♖h5 17. ♖hd1±. Black has only his queen “developed”;

8...a6 9.0-0-0 ♖e6 10. ♖xe7 ♖xe7 11. ♖e5 f6 12. ♖h5+ ♖f7 13. ♖h4 ♖bd7 14. ♖e1 ♖e6 15. ♖c4± Keitlinghaus – Gretarsson, Reykjavik 1997, a pin along the e-file is troublesome.

8...h6 9. ♖e3 c6 (9...♖xd5 10. ♖xd5 ♖e6 11. ♖xe7 ♖xe7 12. ♖d4± Korneev – Hoffman, Linares 1997) 10. ♖xd6 ♖xd6 11.0-0-0 ♖e7 12. ♖c4± (Despite the simplifications, Black did not achieve equality – the white rooks will operate freely along the open central files, while Black's main concern is how to complete his development. White threatens with 13. ♖xc5 ♖xc5 14. ♖he1+) 12...0-0 (Black players also tried 12...♖ba6 13. ♖he1 ♖e6 14. ♖xe6 ♖xe6 15. ♖d4 ♖xd4 16. ♖xd4 f6 17. ♖e3, the black king and the pinned bishop are very uncomfortable on the open central file Prie – Shaw, Moscow 1994 and 12...♖e6 13. ♖xc5 ♖xc4 14. ♖he1 ♖e6 15. ♖e4 ♖d7 16. ♖xe7 ♖xe7 17. ♖d6 ♖ab8 18. ♖d4

♖f6 19. ♖e3 ♖c5 20. b4 ♖a6 21. ♖de1 ♖c7 22. c4± White's pieces' active position and the possibility for an attack against the black king constitute White's advantage, Gusev – Antoshin, Moscow 1955) 13. ♖he1 ♖e6 (or 13...♖e6 14. ♖e5 ♖d8 15. ♖e4 ♖d7 16. ♖g6 ♖e8 17. ♖xe7+ ♖xe7 18. ♖d6± a bishop pair advantage and the knight on d6 give White a technically winning position, Melamed – Kalinina, Alushta 1999) 14. ♖xc5 ♖xc5 15. ♖xe6 fxe6 16. ♖d2 (Lindfeldt – Bank, Esbjerg 1997) and after 16...♖e8 17. ♖e4± Black would be unable to secure his pawn.

9. ♖xe7 ♖xe7 10.0-0-0 ♖c6

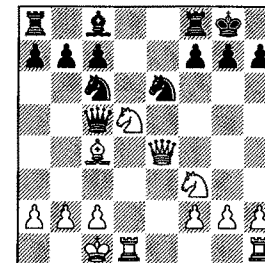
10...0-0 11. ♖h5↑, White has an initiative in the centre and on the kingside thanks to his better development.

10...c6 11. ♖d2 0-0 12. ♖c4 b5 13. ♖b3 a5 14. ♖d6 ♖xd6 15. ♖xd6 ♖c5 16. a3 ♖xb3+ 17. cxb3 ♖b7 18. ♖e1 ♖a6 19. ♖e7 Brodsky – Tolledano, Benasque 1996, Black's pieces are not co-ordinated.

11. ♖e4

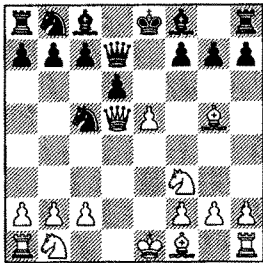
11. ♖b5 ♖d7 Δ0-0-0.

11...♖b4 12. ♖c4 0-0 13. ♖d5 ♖c5



14. ♖h4±

The actively placed pieces make White's play much easier. In Ionov – Yandemirov Elista 1994 further was 14... ♖d8?! (an immediate 14... b5± is better with the idea of organising a counterplay on the queenside) 15. ♖he1± b5 16. ♕b3 ♕b7?? (16... ♕d7± allowed Black to avoid the immediate losses) 17. ♖xe6!+- a5 (17... fxe6 18. ♗g5 exd5 19. ♖xh7+ ♖f8 20. ♗e6+-; 18... h6 19. ♗xe6 ♔d6 20. ♗xd8+-) 18. ♗g5 h6 19. ♖xh6! and Black resigned.

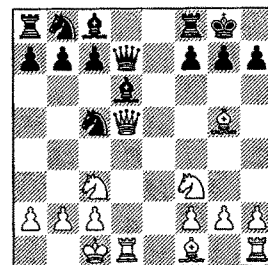
b) 6... ♔d7**7. exd6 ♕xd6 8. ♗c3**

An important idea in White's plan is the exchange of the d6-bishop (or a threat of exchange) and a transition to a better endgame.

8... 0-0

Black can exchange the queens outright by 8... ♖e6+ 9. ♕e3 ♖xd5 (unsatisfactory is 9... c6 10. ♔d4 0-0 11. ♕c4 ♖g6 12. 0-0-0 ♕e7 13. ♗e5 ♖f6 14. ♗xf7 ♖xd4 15. ♕xd4+-, as was in the game Rublevsky – Zarubin, Voronez 1991 or 14... ♖xf7 15.

♖xf6 gxf6 16. ♕xc5 ♕xc5 17. ♖d8+-) 10. ♗xd5 ♗e6 – allowed White to accomplish the mentioned idea (see the note to White's 8th move). 11. 0-0-0 (Nothing changes 11... ♗c6, which is met with the same move as the castling 12. ♗d2 with the idea of ♗c4(e4). 12... ♗e7 13. ♗c4 ♗xd5 14. ♗xd6+ cxd6 15. ♖xd5 ♖e7 16. ♕c4± with a bishop pair advantage, Quinteros – Najdorf, Buenos Aires 1975 or 12... ♕d7 13. ♗e4 ♕e7 14. f4 f5 15. ♗xe7 ♗xe7 16. ♗c5 ♗xc5 17. ♕xc5 ♗c6 18. ♖e1± with a bishop pair advantage and vulnerable black king in Howell – Tepper, Pardubice 1994) 12. ♗d2!±. Black faces an unpleasant choice: to admit the exchange of his dark-squared bishop or to clear the f8-square for its retreat by 12... ♖d8, but after 13. ♗c4 (or 13. ♗e4 ♕f8 14. ♕c4) 13... ♕f8 14. ♕e2± White is more active and he dominates the centre.

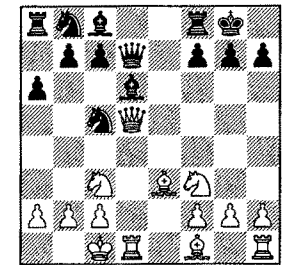
9.0-0-0**9... a6**

Defending against ♗b5. The options are:
9... ♗c6 (in practice have oc-

curred retreats of the queen to f5 and c6 and they do not hinder White's principal idea. After the move ♗b5 with 9... ♖f5 after the preliminary queen exchange and 11. ♗d4 Black will face the same troubles as with 9... ♗c6) 10. ♗b5±. White achieves his goal and the advantage. However, he should keep in mind the active black knights and a possible counterplay along the opened up c-file, e.g., 10... ♖e6 (10... ♖g4 11. ♗xd6 cxd6 12. ♕e3 ♕e6 13. ♖xd6 ♗e4 14. ♖a3 ♖ac8 15. h3 ♖g6 16. ♕d3± – there is no compensation for a pawn, Svensson – Boe, Gotenburg 1994) 11. ♗xd6 cxd6 12. ♕e3 ♖xd5 13. ♖xd5 ♗e4 14. ♕d3 f5 15. ♕xe4 fxe4, Becerra – Hoffman, Cuba 1994 and here the move 16. ♗d2± led to a win of pawn.

9... h6!? (The only alternative is 9... a6, which prevents ♗b5) 10. ♕e3 ♖e7 (or 10... ♗e6 11. ♕c4 ♗c6 12. ♖b1 ♖e7 13. ♖h5 ♖d8 14. ♗d5 ♖f8 15. ♖he1± White has the upper hand thanks to his active central pieces, Prasad – Chakkravarthy, Sangli 2000) 11. ♖h5 White has better prospects, since he has a development advantage and possibilities for play in the centre and on the kingside. Moreover, the unlucky black queen is still chased. In Brynell – H. Hansen, Copenhagen 2000 further came 11... ♗bd7 12. ♗d5 ♖e4 13. ♖d4 ♖g6 14. ♖h4 ♗b6 15. ♗e7+ ♕xe7 16. ♖xe7 ♗e6 17. ♖d1± White has the

bishop pair advantage.

10. ♕e3**10... ♖c6**

Black strives to trade queens and if he manages to retain the same material in the endgame (i.e. not to allow an exchange of the bishop for a knight, first of all), a draw will be not far off. With queens on the board Black will have to reckon with the awkward position of his pieces and possible worrisome threats to the king (♖h5, ♗g5).

The continuation 10... ♗e6 11. ♕d3 ♗c6 12. ♖h5 g6 13. ♖h6 f5 14. ♕c4± Danek – Lanc, Poznan 1985 seriously weakens Black's position.

10... ♖e7 11. ♖h5 ♗bd7 cannot solve the problems because of 12. ♗d5 ♖e6 (12... ♖d8 13. ♕c4±) 13. ♗g5 ♖g6 14. ♖xg6 (on 14. ♖h4 Black answers 14... h6 driving the knight away) 14... hxg6 15. b4 ♗e6 16. ♗e4± and as far as impossible is 16... ♕e5 17. ♗e7+ ♖h7 18. ♗xc8+- White exchanges on d6 and wins a pawn.

11. ♗e5!?

In practice occurred only 11. ♖h5, which in the game Van

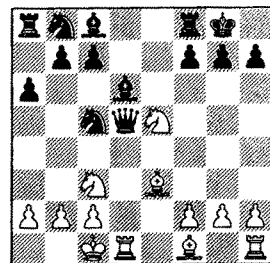
der Werf – Cifuentes Parada, Wijk aan Zee 1993 after 11... ♖bd7! (with the idea of ♖f6) 12. ♗d4 ♗f4+! 13. ♖b1 ♗h6 14. ♗xh6 ♗xh6 15. ♖d5 ♖e6 16. ♖e7 ♗h8 17. ♖xc8 ♗axc8 brought White a slight advantage. Still, with the move 11. ♖e5 White achieves even more profitable exchange of the dark-squared bishop.

11... ♗xd5

(diagram)

12. ♖xd5±

White manages to exchange



the black dark-squared bishop, as the capture on c7 is threatened, immediately or after an exchange on c5) and 12... ♗xe5 13. ♗xc5 ♗e8 is met by 14. f4±.

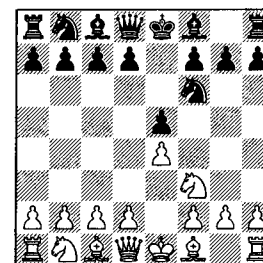
Conclusion

White is much better prepared for a concrete tactical fight in every line of the Philidor's Defence after a precise play. Black has to defend usually a worse position without too many counter-chances. White succeeds to obtain the bishop pair advantage in a symmetrical position quite often.

Part 2

Petroff Defence

1. e4 e5 2. ♖f3 ♖f6



ensures his long lasting positional edge, but Black's position remains very solid throughout.

The rest of the chapters deal with 5... d5. We analyse the plan with 6... ♖c6 and 7... ♗g4, which is aimed at exerting pressure at White's d4-pawn, in Chapter 7.

Chapters 8 and 9 treat the active plan with the development of Black's dark-squared bishop to d6, in which the black knight usually remains on e4 and Black opts for a kingside counterplay. The fashionable lines of this system are dealt with in Chapter 9.

Petroff Defence is becoming more and more popular at top level chess since the nineties of the 20th century. This is due to the fact that as a rule the central e-pawns are exchanged in this opening and the arising symmetrical pawn structure with a single open file is rather drawish. Black has seldom any difficulties with his development and almost never obtains poorly placed pieces. Accordingly Petroff Defence is a very solid opening, almost ideally suitable for Black to play to equalize easily. Therefore the strong players are often using it when the tournament or match situation requires playing for a draw.

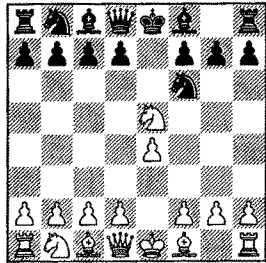
Chapter 10 is devoted to Black's attempts to avoid the main lines of the 6... ♗e7 variation. The analysis of the most critical contemporary lines of the Petroff Defence, starting with the moves 1. e4 e5 2. ♖f3 ♖f6 3. ♖xe5 d6 4. ♖f3 ♖xe4 5. d4 d5 6. ♗d3 ♗e7 7. 0-0 ♖c6 8. c4, begins with Chapter 11. Black's favourite choice here is 8... ♖f6 9. h3 0-0. He usually exchanges on d4 and then plays against White's isolated central pawn.

We are going to have a look first at lines in which Black refrains from early d7-d5 and plays passively in the centre retreating with the knight to f6 (Chapter 6). White's space advantage and better piece development

Finally, the subjects of our last two chapters are the two most popular lines nowadays – 8... ♖b4 9. ♗e2 0-0 10. ♖c3 ♗f5 (Chapter 12) and 10... ♗e6 (Chapter 13).

Chapter 6

1.e4 e5 2. ♗f3 ♗f6 3. ♗xe5 Petroff Defence



3...d6

This is no doubt the best move. The other two attempts to recapture the pawn are less advisable because Black slows his development considerably.

3... ♗d4?! 4. ♖e2 ♖e7 5. ♖xe4 d6 6. d4 dxe5 (After 6...f7 7. ♗c3 dxe5 8. ♗d5 ♖d6 9. dxe5 fxe5 10. ♗f4± – Black is too much behind in his development. Or 6... ♗d7 7. ♗c3 dxe5 8. ♗d5± – and White wins at least a pawn since 8... ♖d6 doesn't work because of 9. dxe5 ♗xe5 10. f4 ♗e6 11. ♗c3 ♗d7 12. f5+–) 7. dxe5 ♗c6 8. ♗b5 ♗d7 9. ♗c3 0–0–0 10. ♗f4 g5 (Black fails to regain his pawn in the other lines as well: 10...a6 11. ♗c4± Sax – Hulak, Budapest 1975; 10... ♖b4 11. 0–0–0 ♖xe4 12. ♗xe4± Gusev – Aframeev, Tula 2001, and if 12... ♗xe5, then

13. ♗xd7+ ♗xd7 14. ♗g5±) 11. ♗g3 ♗g7 12. 0–0–0 ♖he8 13. ♖he1± – and White preserves his material advantage without any compensation for Black.

3... ♖e7 4. ♗f3 ♗xe4 (Or 4... ♖xe4+ 5. ♗e2 d5 6. 0–0 ♗e7 7. d4± White is better since the exposed position of Black's queen will present him with additional tempi for development.) 5. ♗e2 d5 6. 0–0 – Black's queen on e7 is hindering the development and can be attacked along the e-file.

4. ♗f3 ♗xe4 5. d4

White is not pushing back the knight on e4 deliberately, hoping to gain the initiative attacking it later in the opening.

5... ♗e7

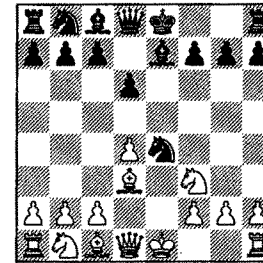
The main lines of this opening arise after 5...d5 and we are going to analyse them later. The move in the text is too timid and White obtains the advantage relatively easily. Refraining from d7–d5 Black presents the opponent with an undisputed domination in the centre and comfortable piece development.

The other moves usually lead to well known lines by transpo-

sition:

5... ♗f6 6. ♗d3 ♗e7, and 5... ♗g4 6. ♗d3 ♗f6 (6...d5 is dealt with in the lines after 5...d5) 7. 0–0 ♗e7 lead to the line – 5... ♗e7.

6. ♗d3 ♗f6



About 6...d5 see the lines after 5...d5.

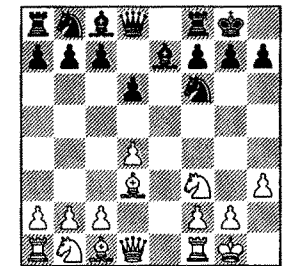
The move 6... ♗g5 (with the idea to simplify the position exchanging a couple of pieces) is not good enough to equalize: 7. ♗xg5 ♗xg5 8. ♖e2+ ♗e7 (It is too dangerous for Black to play 8... ♗e6 9. f4! ♗h4+ 10. g3 ♗e7 11. f5 ♗d5 12. 0–0 0–0 13. ♗c3± and White has the advantage in development and good attacking chances. After 8... ♗f8 9. ♗e3± it is quite unclear why Black has forfeited his rights to castle – Velimirovic – Murey, Moscow 1982) 9. 0–0 0–0 (Or 9... ♗c6 10. c3± and White is better with his rather active pieces.) 10. ♗c3 ♗c6 (It is worse for Black to play 10...c6 11. ♖e1 ♖e8 12. ♗g5 ♗e6 13. ♗xe7 ♖xe7 14. ♖e4 g6 15. d5 cxd5 16. ♗xd5± – and White has the edge because of his powerful pieces and the weakness on d6,

or 12... ♗f8 13. ♗xe7+ ♖xe7 14. ♖d2± – and Black's deficiency in development renders his situation critical.) 11. ♗d5 ♖e8 12. c3 (The other line is also possible 12. ♖e1 ♗e6 13. ♖e4 g6 14. ♗xe7 ♖xe7 15. c3 and White has the bishop pair advantage) 12... ♗e6 13. ♗f4. (Just like before White can capture on e7 getting the two bishop advantage.) 13... ♗d7 14. ♗e3± – and White's position is very active.

7.0–0 0–0

After 7... ♗g4 8. h3 ♗h5 9. ♖e1 0–0 10. c4 d5 11. ♗c3 dxc4 12. ♗xc4± White keeps the edge in a standard position with an isolated pawn because of his active pieces. If Black tries to attack the d4 pawn immediately with 12... ♗c6, there follows 13. g4 ♗g6 14. ♗e5 and 14... ♗xd4 doesn't work because of 15. ♗xg6 hxg6 16. ♖xe7±.

8.h3



8... ♖e8

Black has been trying some other moves here as well:

8... ♗c6 9. c3 ♖e8 (or 9...h6 10. ♖e1 ♖e8 11. ♗bd2 ♗f8 12. ♗f1 d5 13. ♗e5 ♗d6 14. ♗f4 – and the

occupation of the e5-square ensures White's lasting initiative – King – Barua, London 1982) 10.♞e1 ♗d7 11.♟bd2 ♗f8 12.♟e4 d5 (or 12...♟xe4 13.♗xe4 h6 14.♗d2 ♜f6 15.♜c2± Liberzon – Smyslov, Venice 1974 – and White has a comfortable positional edge) 13.♟g3 ♗d6 14.♞xe8+ ♜xe8 15.♜c2 h6 16.♗d2 ♜f8 17.♟f5 ♗xf5 18.♗xf5, Bronstein – Smyslov, Leningrad 1971 – and White enjoys the bishop pair advantage.

The line 8...c6 9.c4 ♟bd7 10.♟c3± usually leads to positions in the variation with 8...♞e8 by transposition.

Or 8...c5 9.♟c3 ♟c6 10.♞e1 a6 11.d5 ♟a7 12.a4 ♗d7 13.a5 ♞e8 14.♗f1 h6 15.♗f4± Karpov – Smyslov, Moscow 1972 – and Black is rather passive due to the lack of space.

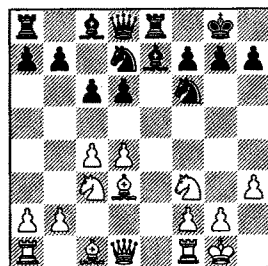
9.c4 ♟bd7

The other moves here also lead to positions better for White, because of his space advantage and more active pieces: 9...c6 10.♟c3 a6 11.b4 ♟bd7 12.♗e3 ♟f8 13.a4 a5 14.b5 ♟g6 15.♞e1 ♟h5 16.♜d2 ♗d7 17.♞ab1± Tukmakov – Bronstein, Moscow 1971; 9...♟c6 10.♟c3 h6 11.♞e1 ♗f8 12.♞xe8 ♜xe8 13.♗f4 ♗d7 14.♜d2 ♜c8 15.d5 ♟b4 16.♟e4 ♟xe4 17.♗xe4± Fischer – Gheor-

ghiu, Buenos Aires 1970; 9...c5 10.d5 ♗f8 11.♟c3 a6 12.a4 a5 13.♗g5 h6 14.♗h4 ♟a6 15.♞c1 ♟b4 16.♗b1± Fedorowicz – Smyslov, Dortmund 1986.

10.♟c3 c6

The knight manoeuvre fails to equalize – 10...♟f8 11.♞e1 ♟g6 (or 11...♟e6 12.b4 g6 13.♞b1 c6 14.♞b2 ♗f8 15.♞be2 ♗d7 16.♗e3 ♗g7 17.♜d2± Vasiukov – Rossetto, Camaguey 1974) 12.♜c2 ♗d7 13.♗g5 ♗c6 14.d5 ♗d7 15.♞ad1 a6 16.♗e3± Arnason – Karpov, Oslo 1984 – and White is better in all the examples due to his extra space quite typical for this line.

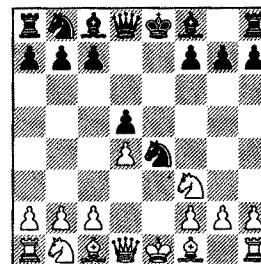


11.♞e1±

White has the space advantage (as usual) and better piece disposition. The game Shomoev – Grachev, Tomsk 2002, continued 11...♟f8 (or 11...a6 12.♜c2 ♟f8 13.♗f4 ♟g6 14.♗h2±) 12.♗f4 ♟g6 13.♗h2 with an advantage for White.

Chapter 7

1.e4 e5 2.♟f3 ♟f6 3.♟xe5 d6 4.♟f3 ♟xe4 5.d4 d5 Petroff Defence



This is the main line. Black pushes that pawn forward enabling his active piece development (♟c6, ♗f5 or ♗g4) and fighting for the centre. White will have to play c2-c4 later and that will lead to the formation of an isolated central d4-pawn that Black plans to attack later.

6. ♗d3

There are three important variations in the diagrammed position – 6...♟c6, 6...♗d6 and 6...♗e7.

The other moves lead to positions after one of these three lines, for example: after 6...♗g4 7.0–0 the move 7...♗e7 transposes to lines after 6...♗e7, the move 7...♗d6 – to 6...♗d6 and the move 7...♟c6 – to 6...♟c6.

6...♗f5 7.0–0 ♗e7 and 6...♟f6 7.0–0 ♗e7 are dealt with in the

variations after 6...♗e7.

This chapter is devoted to the least popular of the three main lines – 6...♟c6.

6...♟c6 7.0–0 ♗g4

The idea of this move is to attack the weakened d4-pawn.

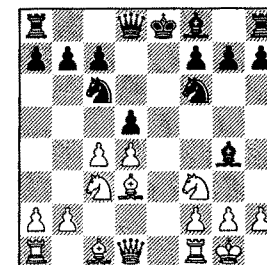
7...♗e7 will be analysed in the lines after 6...♗e7.

8.c4 ♟f6

The move 8...♗e7 is once again leading to lines after 6...♗e7 by transposition.

The pawn capture is obviously premature 8...♗xf3 9.♜xf3 ♟xd4. After 10.♜e3 ♟f5 11.♜e1 ♟e7 (Otherwise Black loses a piece) 12.cxd5 ♟d6 13.♟c3 ♜d7 14.♗e3± White has a substantial lead in development and good prospects to attack the enemy king stranded in the centre.

9.♟c3



Black is forced now to make a principled choice:

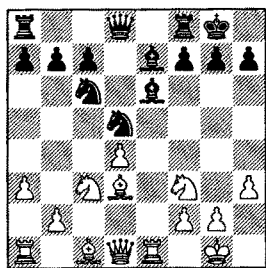
– to transpose to lines after 6...♗e7, except that there White could have prevented the pin ♗g4, while now the bishop is on g4 already – a) 9...♗e7

– or to take on f3 and later on d4 winning a pawn, but falling behind in development presenting White with a lasting initiative – b) 9...♗xf3.

a) 9...♗e7 10.cxd5 ♘xd5 11.h3 ♗e6

11...♗h5 12.♗e4 ♘f6 13.♗xc6 bxc6 14.g4 ♗g6 15.♘e5±. The doubled pawns and the misplaced bishop on g6 make Black's position difficult, for example: 15...♗d6 (or 15...0-0 16.f4±) 16.♘xc6 ♗c8 17.♗e1+ ♘f8 18.♗f3+- Chandler – Gravel, Oviedo 1992.

12.a3 0-0 13.♗e1±



This is a standard position with an isolated pawn and White's chances in the middle-game are better mostly because of the possible initiative on the kingside.

13...♗f6

Black has some other moves here as well:

13...h6 14.♗c2 ♗e8 (14...♘f6 15.♗f4 a6 16.♗d3 ♗e8 17.♗ad1 ♘a7 18.d5 ♗d7 19.♘e5, Hunt – Milligan, Delden 1993 – and White has a powerful kingside attack) 15.♗d3 ♘f6 16.♗xh6, and since 16...gxf6 17.♗xe6 fxe6 18.♗g6+ ♘h8 19.♗xh6+ ♘g8 20.♘g5 was leading to checkmate, Black was left with a pawn down in a hopeless position in the game Chandler – Fries-Nielsen, Bundesliga 1982;

13...♘xc3 14.bxc3 ♗f6 15.♗b1 b6 16.♗b5 a6 17.♗h5 g6 18.♘g5 ♗xg5 19.♗xg5→ Gipslis – Rothfuss, Germany 1996, and White has a kingside attack;

13...♗d7 14.♗b5 ♘xc3 (14...a6 is worse for Black after 15.♘e5 ♗e8 16.♘xc6 bxc6 17.♗a4± – and Black's queenside is destroyed Flores – Szmétan, Buenos Aires 1999. While 16...♘xc3 is hopeless after 17.♘xe7+ ♗xe7 18.bxc3 axb5 19.d5 ♗ad8 20.♗f3+-) 15. bxc3 ♗f6 16.♗g5 a6 17.♗xc6 ♗xc6 18.♗xf6 gxf6 19.♗d2± – Black's kingside pawns are terribly weak, so White has a big advantage Nijboer – Kroeze, Netherlands 2000;

13...a6 14.♗c2 ♘f6 (14...h6 has been tried too 15.♗h7+ ♘h8 16.♗f5 ♗xf5 – but not 16...♗d7 17.♗xe6 fxe6 18.♗e4, Timofeev – Gashimov, Dubai 2003, and Black's e6 pawn is rather weak – 17.♗xf5 ♘xc3 18.bxc3± – and White has better piece placement

and more space.) 15.♗e3 h6 16.♗ad1 ♘d5, Barbulescu – Radovici, Romania 1992, and White could have tried here 17.♗c1± with well developed pieces and good chances for a kingside attack;

13...♗e8 14.♗c2 ♘xc3 15.bxc3 ♗f6 16.♗b1 b6 (It is worse to play here 16...♗d5 17.♗xe8+ ♗xe8 18. ♗f4 ♗e7 19.♘h2 g6 20.♘g4± Popovic – Handoko, Zagreb 1985, and Black will not manage to defend his numerous weaknesses.) 17.♘d2 ♘a5 18.♘e4 ♗f5 19.♗f3 ♗g6 20.♗f4 ♗e7 21.a4 ♘c4 22.♗b3 ♘d6 23.♘xd6 ♗xd6 24.♗xd6 ♗xd6 25.♗e3 ♗ad8 26. ♗be1 ♘f8 27.h4 f6 28.♗e6 c6 29. ♗g4↑ Balashov – Kochiev, Leningrad 1977, and White kept his initiative and better piece position despite the simplifications.

14.♘e4 ♗f5

But not 14...♗xd4 15.♘eg5 ♘f6 16.♗xe6 fxe6 17.♘xe6 ♗d7 18.♘fxd4 ♘xd4 19.♘xd4 ♗fd8 20.♗e3 c5, De Firmian – Bhat, USA 1996, and now White was winning with 21.♗f5+-.

After 14...h6 15.♘c5 ♗c8 16.♗c2± – White has the habitual perspectives in this line of a kingside attack (but not 16. ♘e5 ♘xd4 17.♗c4 ♘e7 – and White had to fight to equalize in the game Sanakoev – Morgado, ICCF 1994).

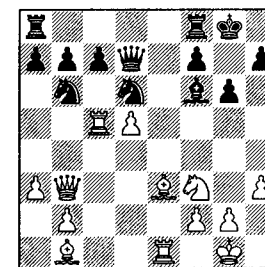
15.♗b3 ♘b6

Black has also tried here 15... ♘xd4 16.♘xf6+ ♘xf6 17.♘xd4 ♗xd3 18.♗xd3 c5 19.♗e3 cxd4

20.♗xd4± Del Rio Angelis – Barez Menendez, Madrid 1995, and White has a bishop against a knight in an open position, which gives him the advantage.

15...♗b8 16.♘xf6+ ♗xf6 17. ♗g5 ♗g6 18.♗xd5 ♗xd3 19.♘h4 ♗d6 20.♗xd6 cxd6 21.d5 f6 22.♗e3 ♘e5 23.♗xa7 ♗a8 24.♗d4 ♗a5 25.♗ad1 ♗xd5 26.♗c3± Hellers – Schussler, Malmö 1987, and White has a small edge in the endgame, because of the weakness on d6.

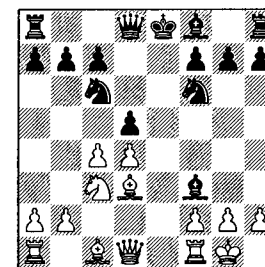
16.d5 ♗xe4 17.♗xe4 ♘e7 18.♗e3 ♘ec8 19.♗ac1 ♘d6 20.♗b1 ♗d7 21.♗c5 g6



22.♗ec1±

Shirov – I.Sokolov, Las Vegas 1999, and White has active pieces and a space advantage.

b) 9...♗xf3

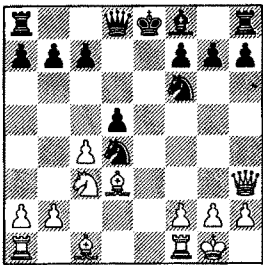


10.♙xf3 ♘xd4

Black has won a pawn, but will have imminent problems with his development and his king in the centre.

11.♙h3!?

That particular move caused the decline of popularity of the line with Black's capturing of the d4 pawn. Unlike the other retreats, White's queen is posed to attack Black's king immediately in case of a short castle.

**11...dxc4**

Black has also tried here 11...♙e7 12.cxd5 ♘xd5 13.♞e1 c6 14.♙g5, White prevents Black from castling and attacks along the open central files.

Or 11...♘e6 12.cxd5 ♘xd5 13.♙b5+ c6 14.♞d1± (White recaptures his pawn keeping the advantage in development.) There might follow 14...♘c7 15.♘xd5 ♘xd5 16.♙b3 cxb5 17.♞xd5 with a quick checkmate) 15.♞xd5 ♙c8, Suarez Real – Fernandez Torre, Norena 2001, and here 16.♘b5 ♙c6 17.♙d3 ♙c5 18.♘d6+ was leading to a clear advantage for White, because of the superior-

ity of the bishop over the knight in an open position.

12.♙xc4 ♙e7

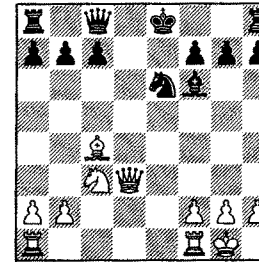
It is insufficient to play 12...♘c6 (Black should not let the e-file remain completely open) 13.♙g5 ♙e7 14.♙xf6 ♙xf6 15.♞fe1+ and White got a decisive advantage in the game Howell – Duskojanov, Oropesa del Mar 2001 because 15...♙e7 was refuted by 16.♘d5 0-0 17.♘e7+ ♘xe7 18.♞ad1 ♙e8 19.♞d7+.

13.♙g5 ♙c8

After the natural development 13...0-0 14.♞ad1 c5 15.♞fe1, White has more than sufficient compensation for the pawn – better development and excellent piece placement. Black has to be on the alert about the eventual exchange sacrifice on e7, followed by ♘d5. The game Kupreichik – Jussupow, Minsk 1987 continued 15...h6 16.♙xh6 (16.♞xe7 was also very good here and now after 16...♙xe7 17.♘d5 lead to material losses for Black in the game Brodsky – Trofimov, Alushta 1999 while after 16...hgx5 17.♞xb7± White could have a strong pressure along the 7th rank.) 16...gxh6 17.♙xh6, and White's attack was very dangerous. Black played 17...♘h7 in that game, but soon lost some material and the game as well: 18.♞d3 ♙g5 19.♙h5 ♙f6 20.♞g3 ♞ae8 21.♘e4 ♙h8 22.h4 ♞xe4 23.♞xe4 ♙f4 24.♞g4 ♙h6 25.♙xc5±.

14.♙d3 ♘e6

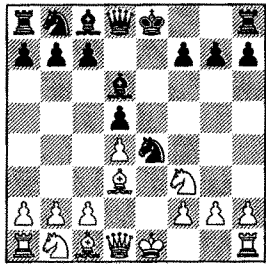
14...c5 was very bad for Black after 15.♞fe1 ♘e6 16.♙xf6 ♙xf6 17.♙f5± Howell – Van Keme-nade, Port Erin 2001.

15.♙xf6 ♙xf6**16.♘d5**

White has a wonderful compensation for the pawn with his better development and ample attacking prospects against the black king, for example: 16...♙d8 17.f4 0-0 (17...c6 looks very risky due to 18.f5 cxd5 19.♙b5+ ♙f8 20.fxe6 ♙b6+ 21.♙h1 ♙xe6 22.♞ae1) 18.f5 ♘c5 19.♙d4 ♘d7 20.♞ae1 ♘f6 21.♘e7+ ♙xe7 22.♞xe7 and the strong pressure against f7 is more than sufficient compensation for the pawn (analysis).

Chapter 8

1.e4 e5 2.♘f3 ♘f6 3.♗xe5 d6 4.♘f3 ♗xe4 5.d4 d5 6.♔d3 ♔d6 Petroff Defence



This is an active plan. Black places the bishop on d6 eyeing the kingside of the opponent and hoping to create some threats against the enemy king exploiting the knight on e4, while the d5 pawn will be usually supported with c7-c6.

7.0-0 0-0

After 7...♔g4 8.c4 Black should refrain from 8...c6 (it is better to play 8...0-0 transposing to the main line after 7...0-0) 9.h3 ♔h5 10.♞e1±. After 10...f5 11.cxd5 cxd5 12.♖b3 White wins a pawn capturing either the d5 or the b7 pawn.

8.c4 c6

Black has tried here some other possibilities:

8...♔g4 (Black's compensation for the lost material is not

sufficient.) 9.cxd5 f5 10.h3 ♔h5 11.♘c3 ♘d7 (Or 11...♖e8 12.♖e2± – and White has a solid extra pawn. It is useless for Black to try 11...♞e8 12.♞e1 ♘xc3 13.♞xe8+ ♖xe8 14.bxc3 ♔xf3 15.♖xf3 ♖e1+ 16.♔f1 ♘d7 17.♔b2± Kashdan – Levin, Hollywood 1954.) 12.♘xe4 fxe4 13. ♔xe4 ♘f6 14.♔f5 ♖h8 15.g4 ♘xd5 16.♔e6 ♔f7 17.♘g5±, White wins the exchange and after 17...♔xe6 18.♘xe6 ♖f6 19.♘xf8 ♞xf8 20.♖d3, Gipslis – Christensen, Gausdal 1992 the weaknesses around White's king were not enough to compensate Black's material deficit.

8...♘f6 (The retreat of this knight is not quite in the spirit of the active development of the bishop on d6.) After 9.♔g5± White has an effortless lasting advantage, for example: 9...dxc4 10.♔xc4 ♔g4 11.h3 ♔xf3 12.♖xf3 ♘c6 13.♘c3 ♘xd4 14.♖xb7 ♖b8 15.♖xb8 ♞axb8 16.♞ad1 ♘e6 17.♔c1± O'Kelly de Galway – Radulescu, Bucharest 1953.

8...♔e6 9.♞e1! ♞e8 (The other lines are unsatisfactory too:

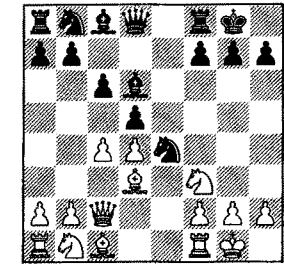
9...c6 10.cxd5 cxd5 11.♔xe4 dxe4 12.♘g5± and White wins material; 9...f5 10.♖b3 dxc4 11.♔xc4 – but not 11.♖xb7 cxd3 12.♖xa8 ♘a6∞ – 11...♔xc4 12.♖xc4+ ♖h8 13.♘c3± Zude – Rissmann, Germany 1993, and the e-file is very strong for White after the trade of the black knight.) 10.c5 ♔e7 (Or 10...♔f8 11.♘c3 and if 11...♔f5 12.♖b3±; the other try also fails: 11...f5 12.♖b3 b6 13.♔g5! and Black's position is difficult – 13...♘g5 14.♘g5 ♖xg5 15.♞xe6 ♞xe6 16.♖xd5+, while after 11...♘xc3 12.bxc3± – White has the advantage just like in the lines after 10...♔e7.) 11.♘c3 (11.♔xe4?! dxe4 12.♞xe4 ♔xc5±) 11...♘xc3 (11...f5? 12.♖b3±) 12.bxc3 ♘d7 (Or 12...b6 13.♖c2 h6 14.cxb6 axb6 15.♘e5± Δ♔b5.) 13.♔f4±. White obtained some space advantage and better piece placement. The game Kamsky – Jussupow, Tilburg 1992 continued 13...b6 14.♖c2 ♘f8 15.♘e5 ♔f6 (15...bxc5?! 16.♔b5 ♘d7 17.♘c6 ♖c8 18.♘xe7+ ♞xe7 19.♔c6 ♞b8 20.♔xd5±) 16.♔b5 ♔xe5 17.♔xe5 ♔d7 18.c6 ♔c8 (18...♔e6 19.♔a6±) 19.♔g3 a6 20.♔d3 ♞e6 21.♞xe6 ♔xe6 22.a4!? ♖e8 (22...♘g6 23.f4!→) 23.♔xc7 ♖xc6 24.♔g3± – and the two bishops and the weaknesses on Black's queenside guaranteed White's edge.

9.♖c2

(diagram)

9...♞e8

The main line with 9...♘a6 is



dealt with in the next chapter.

9...♔f5 10.♘c3 ♞e8 leads by transposition to the variations after 9...♞e8 and is analysed there.

9...♘f6 enables White to pin favourably with 10.♔g5, because of the position of the black bishop on d6, for example: 10...h6 11.♔h4 dxc4 12.♔xc4 ♘bd7 13.♘c3± Ilyin-Zhenevsky – Poliak, Leningrad 1938, and White had an advantage in development and active position in the centre.

9...f5 10.♘c3 ♔e6 (10...♘a6 after 11.a3± transposes to the variations after – 9...♘a6. After f5 the exchange 10...♘xc3 11.bxc3 is senseless, because the e5-square is weakened with the disappearance of the knight on e4. 10...♖h8 is risky because of 11.cxd5 cxd5 12.♘xd5 ♔xh2+ 13.♖xh2 ♖xd5 14.♔c4 ♖d6+ 15.♘e5 ♘c6 16.♔f4 ♖f6 17.♘xc6 bxc6 18.♔e5 ♖h6+ 19.♖g1 ♘g5, Maciejka – Meijers, Istanbul 2000, and now 20.♔d3!± was giving White the two bishop advantage and the better position.) 11.♖b3 (The pressure against d5 is forcing now Black to exchange on c3.) 11...♘xc3 (11...♘a6? 12.cxd5 cxd5

13. ♖xe4 fxe4 14. ♗g5 ♕f5 15. ♗xd5+ – Pavasovic – Gunnarsson, Istanbul 2000.) 12.bxc3 dxc4 13. ♖xc4 ♖xc4 14. ♗xc4+ ♖h8 15. ♖e1, and the pawn on f5 is just an additional weakness in Black's position.

10. ♗c3 ♕f5

Black has two more possibilities:

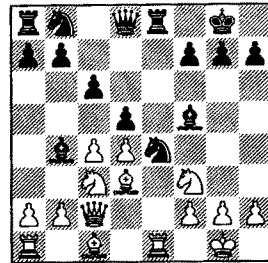
Taking on c3 is bad for Black: 10... ♗xc3 11. ♖xh7+ ♖h8 12.bxc3 and after 12...g6 13. ♖g5 ♕e7 14. ♖xg6 ♖xg5 (14...fxg6 15. ♗xg6 – White simply brings the rook in with a decisive attack.) 15. ♖xf7 ♖e4 16.cxd5 cxd5 17. ♗b3 – White has four pawns for the piece and since the black king is quite bare White has a formidable advantage.

10... ♖g4 is also better for White after 11. ♗e5!↑ White provokes favourable complications. Black made an immediate mistake in the game Kasparov – Garza Castro, Galicia 1991 with 11... ♗h4 12.g3 ♗h5 13. ♗xg4 ♗xc3 14.bxc3 ♗xg4 15. ♖xh7+ ♖h8 16. ♖d3+– and lost a pawn. After 11... ♖xe5 12.dxe5 White keeps the two bishop advantage in an open position: 12... ♖xe5

(Black's best try is probably – 12... ♗xc3 13.bxc3↑) 13. ♖f4 ♖f5 (13... ♖e8 14.cxd5 cxd5 15. ♗xe4 dxe4 16. ♖xe4±) 14.cxd5 ♖xf4 (14...cxd5 15. ♗xd5±) 15. ♖xe4.

11. ♖e1 ♖b4

11... ♗a6 12.a3 leads by transposition to the lines after 9... ♗a6 10. a3 ♖e8 11. ♖e1 ♕f5.



12. ♖g5!?

(The line 12. ♖e3!? ♖xc3 13. bxc3± – also deserves attention, because White obtains two bishops and initiative in the centre.) 12... ♗xg5 (Or 12...f6 13. ♖f4 ♖xc3 14.bxc3 ♗d7 15. ♗d2± Milos – Lahud, Sao Paulo 2002, and Black has grave problems along the b1-h7 diagonal.) 13. ♖xe8+ ♗xe8 14. ♗xg5±. White wins material, since after 14... ♖xd3 15. ♗xd3 g6 16.cxd5 ♖xc3 there follows 17.dxc6!

Chapter 9

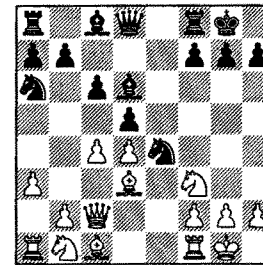
1.e4 e5 2. ♗f3 ♗f6 3. ♗xe5 d6 4. ♗f3 ♗xe4 5.d4 d5 6. ♖d3 ♖d6 7.0-0 0-0 8.c4 c6 9. ♗c2 ♗a6 10.a3 Petroff Defence

11. ♗c3 ♗c7 12.b4 ♖d7

Black has also tried here 12... ♖h8 13. ♖b2 ♖d7 14. ♗e5 ♖e8 15. ♗e2 ♗g5 16. ♖h1 ♗h4 17.g3 ♗f6 18.f3 ♗g5 19. ♗f4 ♗ge6 20. ♗xe6 ♗xe6 21.f4 ♖d8 22.c5 ♖c7 23.a4 a6 24. ♖ae1, Zontakh – Kochyev, St. Petersburg 2002, and White achieved a total domination over the whole board after having pushed away the active enemy pieces.

The surrender of the centre is quite illogical 12... ♗xc3 13. ♗xc3 dxc4 14. ♖xc4+ ♗d5 15. ♗b3 ♖h8 16. ♖g5 ♖e7 17. ♖xe7 ♗xe7 18. ♗e5 ♗d5 19. ♖xd5 cxd5 20. ♖fe1± N.Gaprinidashvili – Sternina, Tbilisi 1973, and Black's position is strategically hopeless.

13. ♖b2 ♗g5 14. ♗e5 ♖xe5 15.dxe5 f4 16.f3 ♖h8 17. ♖fd1 ♗e8 18. ♖ac1 dxc4 19. ♖xc4 a5 20. ♗f2 axb4

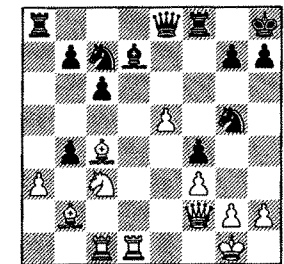


Black now has the choice between: a) 10...f5, b) 10... ♖e8, c) 10... ♖g4.

a) 10...f5

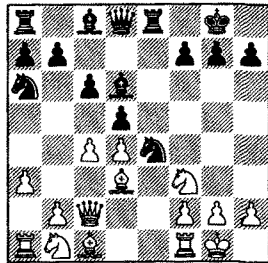
This move is played with the following ideas: at first Black keeps his knight on the central e4 square, although only temporary (until the move f2-f3); second he has the option to start pushing pawns on the kingside later, which might be troublesome for the opponent and third he intends to attack the central squares d4 and e5 with pieces (with a knight manoeuvre from a6 to e6, a bishop to f6 and a queen on g7).

Naturally White's main tasks are to bring one of his knights to c5, push away Black's knight from e4 and then think about what comes next.



21. axb4±

White kept his advantage due to his active centralized pieces in the game Leko – Morozevich, Dortmund 2002.

b) 10... ♖e8**11. ♖c3 ♗g4**

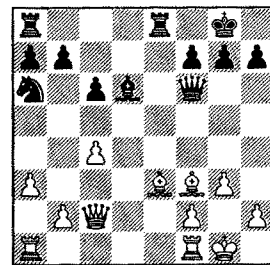
Black starts his counter-attack against the d4 pawn. 11... ♗f5, defending the knight, has also been played. 12. ♖e1 White is not threatening to capture on e4 yet, but he still has the edge. Black will fail to preserve his knight on e4 and after its exchange or retreat White will have a distinct space advantage. The game Anand – Kasimdzhanov, Hyderabad 2002 continued with 12... h6 13. c5 (13. ♖xe4 dxe4 14. ♗xe4 ♖e7) 13... ♗c7 14. ♗d2 ♗a5 (Anand considered best here 14... ♖xd2 15. ♖xe8+ ♖xe8 16. ♖xd2± – but Black still has less space and a “bad” knight on a6 to worry about.) 15. ♗f4 ♗xc3 16. bxc3 ♖c7 17. h3 ♖e6 18. ♗h2 ♖g6 19. ♖e5 f6 20. ♖g4±, and Black’s knight on e4 has no good square to retreat to against the threat of f2-f3.

12. ♖xe4!

White fails to obtain any advantage after 12. ♖e5 ♗xe5 13. dxe5 ♖ac5 14. f3 ♖xd3 15. ♖xd3 ♖xc3=. The inclusion of the moves 12. c5 ♗c7 after 13. ♖xe4 dxe4 14. ♗xe4 ♗xf3 15. ♗xf3 ♖xd4 16. ♗e3 allows Black to sacrifice the exchange with 16... ♖xe3 17. fxe3 ♖xe3+ 18. ♖f2 ♖xf2+ 19. ♖xf2 ♖xc5 20. ♗d1 a5 obtaining a quite reasonable game.

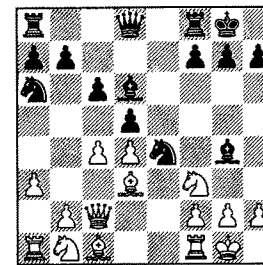
12... dxe4 13. ♗xe4 ♗xf3

13... f5 is not satisfactory, since after 14. ♗xf5 ♗xf3 15. gxf3 ♖h4 16. h3 ♖e7 17. ♗d2 g6 18. ♗g4± – Black’s compensation for the material deficit is insufficient and the bad position of the bishop on g4 can not be exploited successfully.

14. ♗xf3 ♖h4 15. g3 ♖xd4 16. ♗e3 ♖f6**17. ♗e4±**

White is slightly better in this position due to the bishop pair advantage. His plan is to occupy the d-file pushing the queenside pawns forward. Black’s counterplay is based on the manoeuvres ♖a6-c7-e6, ♗e5 and the exploi-

tation of the d4-outpost. There might follow 17... g6 (Or 17... h6 18. b4 ♖c7 19. ♖ad1 ♗e5 20. ♖d7 ♖e7 21. ♖fd1± Anand – Piket, Monte Carlo 2001, White occupied the d-file and increased his advantage.) 18. b4 ♖c7 19. ♖ad1 a5 20. b5 ♗xa3 (20... cxb5 was obviously insufficient after 21. c5 ♗e5 22. c6 b6 23. ♗xb6 ♖e6 24. c7 in the game Nedev – Safin, Erevan 2001, because the advanced passed pawn made White’s winning chances quite real) 21. bxc6 bxc6 22. ♗d4 ♖e6 23. ♗a1! (Black will have to counter serious threats on the long diagonal) 23... ♗e7 24. ♖de1 ♗f6 25. ♗xg6 ♖h3 (or 25... ♖xe1 26. ♗xh7+ ♖g7 (26... ♖f8 27. ♗xf6) 27. ♗xf6+ ♖xf6 28. ♖xe1 ♖xe1+ 29. ♖g2 – and Black is clearly worse, because of his exposed king) 26. ♗xh7+ ♖xh7 27. ♖xh7+ ♖xh7 28. ♗xf6±, and White won material in the game Kasimdzhanov – Akopian, Moscow 2002.

c) 10... ♗g4**11. ♖e5 ♗xe5**

Retreating with the bishop is weaker:

11... ♗f5 12. b4! White is preventing Black’s knight from coming to c5, after the exchange on e5. 12... ♖h4 13. ♖c3 ♖ae8 (After 13... ♖xc3 14. ♗xf5 ♖xd4 15. ♗xh7 ♖h8 16. ♖f3± – White wins material because 16... ♖e2+ 17. ♖xe2 ♖xa1 will be followed by 18. ♗b2, winning the queen. 13... ♖c7 was tried in the game Shirov – Adams, Sarajevo 2000, but Black just lost a pawn after 14. ♖f3 ♖h5 15. ♖xe4 dxe4 16. ♗xe4 ♗xe4 17. ♖xe4.) 14. cxd5! (White has no advantage after 14. ♗b2 f6 15. g3 ♖h5 16. ♖xe4 ♗xe4 17. ♗xe4 dxe4 18. ♖xc6 bxc6 19. c5 ♗xg3 20. hxg3) 14... ♖xc3 15. ♗xf5 ♖xd4 (15... ♖xd5 16. g3 ♖xd4 17. ♗b2 ♖xb2 18. ♖xb2 ♗xe5 19. ♖c2 ♗xa1 20. ♖xa1±) 16. ♗xh7+ ♖h8 17. ♖f3 ♖e2+ 18. ♖xe2 ♖xa1 19. ♖c2 ♖f6 20. dxc6 bxc6 21. ♗g5 ♖e6 22. ♗f5 ♖e2 23. ♖xe2 ♖xe2 24. ♗d3 ♖a2 25. ♗xa6 ♖xa3 26. ♗b7 ♗xb4 27. ♗xc6. White has good chances to press his material advantage home.

11... ♗h5 12. cxd5 cxd5 13. ♖c3 ♖xc3 (A. Huzman recommended here 13... ♗xe5!? 14. dxe5 ♖ac5, but that can be met by 15. ♖xe4 ♖xd3 16. ♖xd3 ♗g6 17. ♖f6+ (but not 17. ♖b3 ♗xe4 18. ♖xb7 ♖h4 19. f3 ♗d3 20. ♖f2 ♖d4) 17... gxf6 18. ♖g3 fxe5 19. h4 with an attack against the weakened black king. Black had probably better play 17... ♖xf6 18. ♖xd5± hoping to make a draw in the future endgame with a pawn down, due to the bishops of opposite colour.)

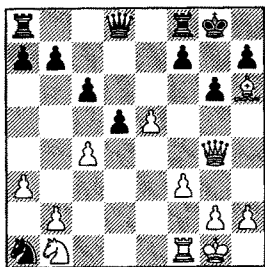
14.bxc3 ♖h8 (After 14...♗xe5 Kasparov suggested 15.♗xh7+! ♖h8 16.dxe5 g6 17.♖d2! ♖xh7 18.♖h6+ ♖g8 19.♗g5 f6 20.♗xf6 ♗xf6 21.exf6 ♖xf6 22.f3!± – and the black bishop is endangered, but Black could improve with 14...♗g6.) 15.f4 ♗xe5?! (The best is 15...f6.) 16.fxe5 ♗g6 17.a4! ♖d7 18.♗a3 ♗fe8 19.♗xg6 fxc6 (19...hxc6 20.♗f3+.) 20.♖b3±. In the game Kasparov – Shirov, Wijk aan Zee 2001 White achieved a big advantage, because Black had no counterplay against the attack along the f-file.

12.dxe5 ♗ac5 13.f3

White has to enter the following forced line, otherwise he has no advantage after the simple exchange on d3.

13...♗xd3 14.♖xd3 ♗c5 15. ♖d4 ♗b3 16.♖xg4 ♗xa1 17. ♗h6 g6

After 17...♖b6+ White can transpose to the game with 18.♗f2, or try 18.♖h1 g6 19.♖f4±.



18.♗c3!

White refrains from winning the exchange temporarily, trying to exploit the weak dark squares around the enemy king.

18...♖b6+

The other possibility is 18...♗c2 19.♗f2. The critical move here was 19...d4 (in the game Macieja – Mamedjarova, Batumi 2002 Black just lost a piece and got a hopeless position after 19...♗e8? 20.♗xc2+–) 20.♗e4 f5 21.exf6 ♗e3 22.♖e6+ ♗f7 23.♗d2 (White is not better after 23.♗e2 ♗f5 24.♖xf7+ ♖xf7 25.♗g5+ ♖g8 26.f7+ ♖h8 27.f8♖+ ♖xf8 28.♗xf8 ♗xf8) 23...♗f5 24.♗f4 ♖e8 (or 24...h6 25.g4 ♗h4 26.♖f2 g5 27.♗d6 ♖xf6 28.♖xf7+ ♖xf7 29.♗xf7 ♖xf7 30.♗d6 ♖e6 31.♗xd4+–) 25.♖xe8+ ♗xe8 26.g4 ♗e3 (26...♗h4 27.♖f2 ♗xe4 28.fxe4 ♗xf6 29.♖g3+–) 27.♗xe3 (27.♗xd4 c5∞) 27...dxe3 28.♗e2 – White has two pawns for the exchange and a powerful passed pawn.

19.♗f2 ♗fe8 20.♖f4 f5

This is definitely not the best. The critical position was arising after 20...♖c7 21.♗e2 ♗e6 22.cxd5 cxd5 23.♖d4↑ – and the weak dark squares and the weak knight on a1 are more than sufficient compensation for the exchange.

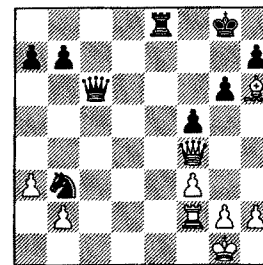
21.cxd5 ♗b3 22.e6 cxd5 23. ♗xd5 ♖xe6 24.♗c7 ♖c6 25. ♗xe8

25.♗xa8? ♗e1+ 26.♗f1 ♖c5+–
25...♗xe8

(diagram)

26.g4!±

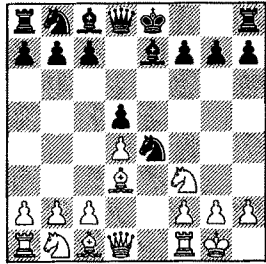
Shirov – Leko, Linares 2000. The position was simplified considerably, but Black was still in



dire straits. The dark squares around the black king are very weak in a middlegame with queens, while White's bishop would be much stronger than Black's knight in an eventual endgame. White is trying to open the position even more with his last move.

Chapter 10

1.e4 e5 2.♗f3 ♗f6 3.♗xe5 d6 4.♗f3 ♗xe4 5.d4 d5 6.♗d3 ♖e7 7.0-0 Petroff Defence



We are going to deal with the main line – 7...♗c6 in the next chapters, while now we will see a)7...0-0 and b)7...♗f5.

The other moves are not so popular:

7...♗d6 (As a rule whenever Black retreats with the knight to d6, he switches off to a passive defence in a somewhat symmetrical position, slightly worse though.) 8.♗f4 0-0 9.♗c3 c6 10.♗e2± Torre – Balinas, Melbourne 1975. White brings one of his knights to g3 trying to occupy the e5-outpost with the other one in an opportune moment and aims at a kingside initiative;

7...♗f6 8.♞e1 0-0 9.♗f4 ♗g4 (Or 9...♗c6 10.c3 ♗d6 11.♗e5 ♗g4, Milu – Dumitrache, Bucha-

rest 1992, and now White had to play 12.♗bd2 ♞e8 13.♖c2± with an advantage in the centre, creating some threats.) 10.♗bd2 ♗c6 11.c3 ♞e8 12.♖c2 ♗h5 13.♗e5± Alapin – Mason, Dresden 1892, and White had an excellent development and initiative;

7...♗g4. White should play 8.h3!? ♗h5 9.c4 in this line. It is practically always useful for White to include the moves h3 and ♗h5 whenever Black pins the knight, because White has the additional possibility to play g2-g4 at some moment and avoid the pin. The game Ljubojevic – Handoko, Indonesia 1983 went on 9...♗f6 10.♗c3 dxc4 11.♗xc4 0-0 12.g4 ♗g6 13.♗e5 – and White had active pieces while the black bishop on g6 was misplaced. Black tried a breakthrough on the other side, but that backfired: 13...c5 14.dxc5 ♖c7 15.♗f4 ♖xc5 16.♞c1 ♗c6 17.♗xg6 hxg6 18.♗b5± – and Black's queen was endangered.

a) 7...0-0 8.♞e1 ♗d6

We dealt with 8...♗f6 9.♗f4 in

the lines after 7...♗f6.

Black should refrain from 8...♗g5, because of 9.♗xg5 ♗xg5 10.♖h5 h6 11.♗xg5 ♖xg5 12.♖xg5 hxg5 13.♞e5± Soskov – Z.Ivanov, Mureck 1998, and White had an extra pawn in an endgame.

Black fails to keep his knight in the centre after 8...f5 9.c4 c6 10.cxd5 cxd5 11.♗c3± Tabunshikov – Duz-Khotimirsky, Moscow 1901, because White pushes the knight away from e4, while the weakness on e5 hurts.

8...♗c6 is interesting, but still after 9.♗xe4 dxe4 10.♞xe4 ♗f5 11.♞e1 ♗b4 12.♗a3 c5 13.♗f4 ♞c8 14.♖d2, Szelag – Weglarz, Poraj 1997, Black's compensation for the pawn was insufficient.

9.♗f4 ♗g4

The other square for the development of this bishop is not satisfactory: 9...♗e6 10.c3 ♗d7 11.♖c2 g6? (Black had better play here 11...h6, but it was weakening the kingside nevertheless.) 12.♗h6 ♞e8 13.♞xe6 fxe6 14.♗xg6+– Chandler – Hon Kah Seng, Jakarta 1978, and White had a decisive advantage.

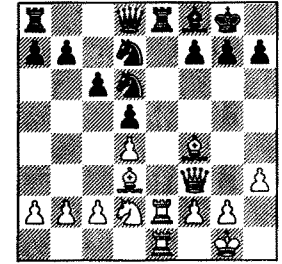
Black can also play here the solid lines: 9...♗c6 10.c3 ♗g4 11.h3 ♗h5 12.♗bd2 ♗g6, Lanka – Mikenas, Riga 1978, and White could try 13.♗xg6 fxg6 14.♗h2±, preserving some edge because of the better pawn structure; or 9...♗d7 10.♗bd2 ♞e8 11.c3 ♗f8 12.♖c2± Hess – Taruffi, Reggio Emilia 1978, with somewhat bet-

ter development for White.

10.h3 ♗xf3

Or 10...♗h5 11.♞e5, forcing the exchange of the bishop.

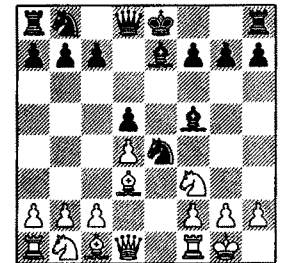
11.♖xf3 c6 12.♗d2 ♗d7 13.♞e2 ♞e8 14.♞ae1 ♗f8



15.♖g3±

White had an excellent piece placement and a two bishop advantage in the game – Timman – Hort, Bugojno 1978.

b) 7...♗f5



8.♞e1 ♗c6

Or 8...0-0 9.c4 c6 (9...♗c6 has been dealt with in the main line by transposition) 10.♖c2 ♗a6 (If 10...♗d7 White has 11.♗c3 ♗df6 12.♗e5!? ♞e8 13.♗f4 – while the immediate 13.f3 is not favourable for White after 13...dxc4 14.♗xe4 ♖xd4+ 15.♖f1 ♗xe4 16.

fxe4 ♖xe5 17.exf5 ♗xh2 – 13... ♙b4 14.a3 ♙xc3 15.bxc3± – and Black has problems with his knight on e4.) 11.a3±. Black's pieces now are rather passive in comparison to the lines after 6... ♙d6. The dark-squared bishop is misplaced and the e-file is not operative for the black rook.

9.c4 ♖b4

Black can also play 9...0–0 10.♖c3 ♖xc3 11.bxc3 ♙xd3 12.♗xd3 dxc4 13.♗xc4. White has mobile pawns in the centre and more active pieces. After 13... ♙d6 14.♞b1 ♞e8 15.♙e3 ♗f6 16.♗a4 b6 17.♙g5 ♗g6 18.g3 ♖e7 19.♙xe7 ♞xe7 20.♗g2 h6 21.♞xe7 ♙xe7 22.♞e1 ♗d6 23.♗a6± Timman – Van der Sterren, Hilversum 1983, White kept his edge due to his active pieces and the weak light squares on Black's queenside despite the simplifications.

10.♙f1 dxc4

After 10...0–0 11.a3 ♖c6 12.♖c3 ♖xc3 13.bxc3 dxc4 14.♙xc4, we reach by transposition the line 7... ♖c6 8.c4 ♖b4 9.♙e2 0–0 10.♖c3 ♙f5 11.a3 ♖xc3 12.bxc3 ♖c6 13.♞e1 dxc4 14.♙xc4, that we are doing to deal with later.

If 10...c5 White plays 11.a3 ♖c6 12.♖c3 ♖xc3 13.bxc3 0–0 (after 13...cxd4 14.♖xd4 ♖xd4 15.♗xd4 0–0 16.cxd5 ♙f6 17.♗d2± – White remains with an extra pawn) 14.cxd5 ♗xd5 15.c4 ♗d6 16.d5± – and the protected passed pawn in the centre guar-

antees White some advantage.

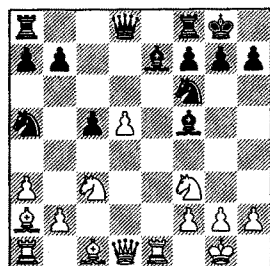
11.♖c3 ♖f6

After 11...♖xc3 12.bxc3 ♖d5 (12...♖c2? 13.♞e5 ♖xa1 14.♞xf5, White traps the knight on a1 easily) 13.♙xc4 ♙e6 14.♗b3, Jakovenko – Mijailovic, Budapest 1995 and Black was losing the pawn on b7 without any compensation, because 14...♞b8 15.♖g5 was even worse.

12.♙xc4

12.♗a4+!? is very interesting. After 12...♗f8 13.♙xc4 ♖c2 14.♖h4↑, if Black takes the rook – White will capture two pieces for it, while 14...♖xd4 15.♖xf5 ♖xf5 16.♙f4 ♖d6 17.♞ad1↑ presented White with a powerful initiative against the weakened black king in the game Wolff – Levin, Hawaii 1998.

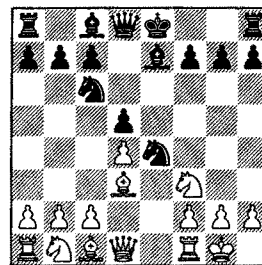
12...0–0 13.a3 ♖c6 14.d5 ♖a5 15.♙a2 c5



This position was reached in the game Karpov – Portisch, Tilburg 1982. White had to play here 16.♖e5 followed by ♗f3 achieving a substantial advantage, because of his central passed pawn, active pieces and the misplaced black knight on a5.

Chapter 11

1.e4 e5 2.♖f3 ♖f6 3.♖xe5 d6 4.♖f3 ♖xe4 5.d4 d5 6.♙d3 ♙e7 7.0–0 ♖c6 Petroff Defence



The main line in this variation.

8.c4

We have already discussed that White must play energetically in order to fight for an opening advantage. He should try to exploit the somewhat “hanging” position of the knight on e4. White should not be deterred by the possibility of the appearance of an isolated pawn on d4 – he has an ample compensation for that with a free development of his pieces and an advantage in the centre and the kingside.

We will analyse now a) 8... ♖f6 and b) 8... ♖b4 in details. The moves 8... ♙f5 9.♞e1 transpose to the lines after 7... ♙f5, and we have studied them in the previous chapter.

8... ♙e6 9.cxd5 ♙xd5 10.♖c3 ♖xc3 11.bxc3 0–0 12.♖d2!?± (White activates his knight (trying to bring it to e4), threatening to win a piece with c4 and d5 in the process. The game Sadvakasov – Aliev, Doha 2003 went on 12... ♙e6 13.♞e1 ♗d7 14.♖e4 ♞ad8 15.♗h5 g6 16.♗h6 and White had the initiative on the kingside.

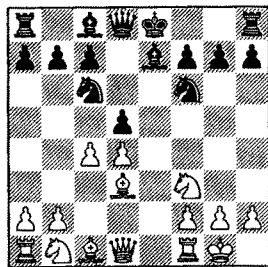
8...0–0 9.♖c3 (The other possibility for White leads to unclear positions – 9.cxd5 ♗xd5 10.♞e1 ♙f5 11.♗c2 ♖b4 – 11...♖d6!? – 12.♙xe4 ♖xc2 13.♙xd5 ♙f6∞) 9...♖xc3 (9...♖f6 transposes to the main line after 8...♖f6) 10. bxc3 dxc4 (10...♙e6 11.cxd5 ♙xd5 12.♖d2 transposes to the variations after 8...♙e6) 11.♙xc4 ♙f5 (Black has tried here 11... ♙g4 12.♞e1 ♙d6 13.h3 ♙h5 14.♞b1± Moreno Carnero – Al Badani, Istanbul 2000, but White had active pieces and a solid edge in the centre. Or 11...♖a5 12.♙d3 c5 13.d5 c4 14.♙c2 b6 15.♙f4↑ Norris – Kristensen, Ribe 1978, and White had a dangerous passed central pawn.) 12.♞e1±

Black failed to solve the opening problems – White had the advantage in the centre and very active pieces. The game Brodsky – Biriukov, St.Petersburg 1999 continued 12...a6 13.a4 ♖b8 14.h3 ♕f6 15.a5 ♜e8 16.♗e3 ♖d7 17.♗d2 ♗a7 18.♗b3 ♗e7 19.♗f1 and White had the initiative.

8...♗g4 9.cxd5 ♖xd5 10.♗c3 ♗xc3 11.bxc3 0–0 (Black can exchange on f3 immediately with the idea to castle long and defend the vulnerable b7-pawn with his king. It is an illusion however that the black king might be safe on the queenside in an endgame with so many pieces. After 11...♗xf3 12.♖xf3 ♖xf3 13.gxf3 0–0–0 14.♖b1 g6 Black prevents the check from f5 that would expose his king dangerously on the semi-open file. Still, after 15.♞e1± the two bishop advantage and the open files and diagonals for the rooks and the bishops are more than sufficient compensation for the defects of White's pawn structure. The comparison to the lines in which Black castles short is in favour of White, since he has the additional chances to attack the black king along the b-file – Sax – Insam, Lugano 1984) 12.♞e1 ♗xf3 (Black must trade on f3 outright, otherwise White would play ♗e4 neutralizing the pin of the knight.) 13.♖xf3 ♖xf3 14.gxf3 ♗d6 15.♗e3 (White has the advantage despite his pawn weaknesses. He has a strong

pressure along the b-file. If Black plays b7-b6 White will have a target for eventual pawn breaks like a4-a5 and c4-c5. If White manages to penetrate the enemy camp his advantage might become decisive.) 15...♞ad8 (Or 15...♗e7 16.c4 c6 17.♞ab1 b6 18.a4 ♞ab8 19.♞b3 h6 20.♞eb1 ♞fd8 21.♗c2 ♗c7 22.a5 ♖f8 23.♖g2 ♖e8 24.axb6 axb6 25.♞e1 ♖f8 26.♞a3 ♞a8 27.♞ea1 ♞xa3 28.♞xa3 ♖e8 29.♞a7, Timman – Jussupow, Belfort 1988 – and White keeps the pressure) 16. ♞ad1 b6 17.♗g5 f6 18.♗e3 ♗e7 19.c4 c6 20.♗c2 ♗g6 21.c5± Ehlvest – Jussupow, Saint John 1988, and White succeeded in weakening his opponent's position.

a) 8...♗f6



This is a solid, but a rather passive move. Black retreats with his knight from e4 relying to exploit the isolated d4-pawn later.

9.h3

White prevents the pin of the knight on f3, with this useful, although not yet obligatory move.

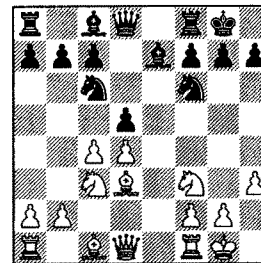
9...0–0

Black has tried two more moves here:

9...♗b4 10.♗e2 dxc4 (If 10...♗f5, then 11.a3, and after 11...♗c2 12.♗h4 ♗e4 13.f3 ♗xa1 14.fxe4 ♗xe4 15.♗f5 ♗f6 16.♗c3↑ – the knight on a1 is doomed and White will have two pieces for a rook. Black had better retreat with the knight – 11...♗c6 12.♗e5±) 11.♗xc4 0–0 12.♗c3, and we have reached a position from the line with 9...0–0 that we are going to deal with later;

and 9...♗e6 10.c5 0–0 11.♗c3±. The pawn structure is symmetrical, but White has the edge due to his space advantage and comfortable piece placement. The game Yasseen – Handoko, Doha 1992 continued 11...b6 (or 11...a6 12.a3 ♖d7 13.♞e1, Brenjo – Mijailovic, Banja Vrucica 1991 and White had space advantage on the queenside) 12.♖a4 ♗d7 13.♗b5 ♖e8 14.♞e1 a6 and White had to play here 15.♗f1 – after which the black knight poses no serious threats, while White's pieces are placed better.

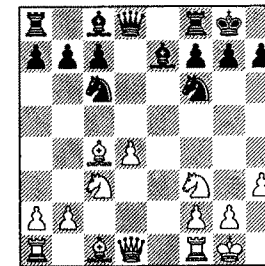
10.♗c3



Black has to make up his mind now about the method of playing against the isolated pawn, whether to exchange on c4 immediately a1) 10...dxc4, leaving the knight on c6, or manoeuvre that same knight to the blocking square d5 in front of the pawn a2) 10...♗b4. Black has to take into account the possibility of White playing c4-c5 if he tries something else. 10...♗e6 11.c5± was already dealt with in the lines after 9...♗e6.

After 10...h6 11.a3 ♗e6 (if 11...♞e8 White should better play 12.cxd5 ♗xd5 13.♗c2 with an initiative on the kingside) 12.c5 a5 13.♗f4 b6 14.♗b5 ♗e8 15.♞c1 bxc5 16.dxc5 ♗f6 17.♗b1, Socko – Zielinska, Polanica Zdroj 1995, and White had a clear advantage with a lot of extra space, the strong d4 knight and prospects of a kingside attack.

a1) 10...dxc4 11.♗xc4



This position can be reached by transposition in lines from the Queen's Gambit Accepted as well as the Chigorin Defence. We are going to deal with it now, irrel-

eventually of the way it was actually reached.

11...♖a5

Black repels the white bishop from c4 with the idea to develop his bishop on e6, occupying the a2-g8 diagonal. The development of the black bishop on f5 is less advisable in this pawn structure:

11...♗f5 12.♞e1

– in the game Vaisser – Z. Polgar, Oviedo 1993 Black chose 12...a6 13.a3 b5 14.♗b3 b4 15.axb4 ♖xb4, but after 16.♗e5 c5 17.d5 White had a great advantage because of his passed pawn and the numerous weaknesses of his opponent. The game continued 17...♗d6 18.♗c6 ♖c7 (if 18...♗xc6, then 19.dxc6 ♖c7 20.♖f3±) 19.♗g5 ♗d3 20.♖f3 ♗g6 21.♞e2 ♗e5 22.♗xe5 ♗xe5 23.♞ae1 ♗d4 24.♗a4 – White activated his pieces and was ready to support the promotion of his passed pawn.

After 12...h6, which was played in the game Pedersen – Lindfeldt, Nyborg 2001 White had to try 13.d5 ♗a5 14.♗f1, and if 14...c6 15.♗d4 ♗d7, then 16.♗xc6 ♗xc6 (16...♗xc6 17.d6±) 17.dxc6± with the bishop pair advantage.

Black fails to equalize with 12...♗a5 13.♗f1. The knight on a5 is misplaced and it is useless to retreat it to c6, because of d5 and ♗d4. The pawn advance c5 is not going to work either with a knight on a5 and a bishop on f5. White's pieces are evidently

better placed.

12.♗d3 ♗e6 13.♞e1 ♗c6

If 13...c5 14.♗g5! h6 15.♗h4↑ – the active white pieces guarantee his initiative even after the exchange of the central pawns.

14.a3 a6

It is not good for Black to play 14...♖d7 15.♗b5 ♞fd8 16.♖a4 a6 17.♗xc6 ♖xc6 18.♖xc6 bxc6 19.♗e5 ♗f8 20.♗e3, A. Sokolov – Koch, Marseilles 2001, because the endgame was rather unpleasant for him due to the pawn weaknesses on the queenside.

Black has some other more reliable moves:

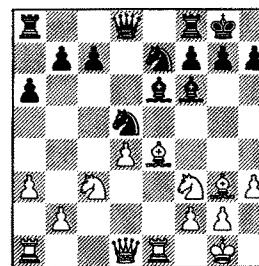
14...♖d6 15.♗e3 ♗d5 16.♖c2 ♗h8 (Black is defending the h7 pawn indirectly without weakening his kingside.) 17.♞ad1±. White has some advantage in the centre and good prospects to create some threats on the kingside later. In the game Gelfand – Adams, Wijk aan Zee 1994 Black weakened the whole complex of squares along the e-file with the move 17...f5 (17...♞ad8 was clearly better), and after 18.♗c1 ♞ad8 19.♞e2 ♗f6 20.♞de1 ♗c8 21.♗c4 White's advantage increased;

14...♞e8 15.♗b5 ♖d6 16.♗g5. Black will have to take on c6 with the pawn after the exchange and then his pawns on the queenside will be rather weak, for example: 16...♞ed8 17.♗xf6 ♗xf6 18.♗e4 ♖f4 19.♗xc6 bxc6 20.♖c1 ♖f5 21.♗xf6+ ♖xf6 22.♖xc6± Lobron – Handoko, Zagreb 1985.

15.♗f4 ♗d5

In the game Kasparov – Karpov, Moscow 1985 Black played 15...♖d7, but after 16.♗e5 ♗xe5 17.dxe5 ♗d5 18.♗xd5 ♗xd5 19.♖c2 g6 20.♞ad1 c6 21.♗h6 ♞fd8 22.e6 fxe6 23.♗xg6 ♗f8 24.♗xf8 ♞xf8 25.♗e4 White was better, because of the weaknesses on Black's kingside.

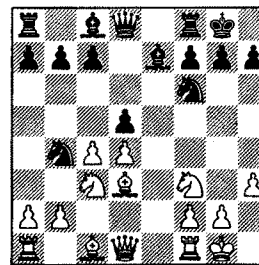
16.♗g3 ♗f6 17.♗e4 ♗ce7



18.♖c2±

We have reached a standard position with an isolated pawn. White has a space advantage and the possibility to gain the initiative on the kingside. Black is solid in the centre with his excellent blocking d5 square. Nevertheless White's prospects in the middlegame are better.

a2) 10...♗b4



11.♗e2 dxc4

Black's other moves here are inferior:

11...♗f5 12.a3 ♗c6 13.♗f4±. Black has problems to finish his development, because he failed to exchange some pieces in the centre in this position. Accordingly he will strive hard to find a good plan in the middlegame. The game Dolmatov – Karner, Tallinn 1985 continued 13...dxc4 14.♗xc4 ♗e8?! 15.♗d5 ♗d6 16.♗e5 with a considerable domination of White in the centre;

11...c5 12.a3 ♗c6 13.dxc5 dxc4 14.♗e3±. The position is symmetrical, but White has made a couple of useful moves in advance of Black. White has the advantage, because Black will have problems defending the c4 pawn and the d6 square is weak too. The game Velimirovic – Schussler, Smederevska Palanka 1979 went on 14...♗a5 15.♖c2 ♗d7 16.♞ad1 ♖c7 17.♗g5! g6 18.♗ge4 ♗f5 19.♗xf6+ ♗xf6 20.♖a4 ♗xc3 21.bxc3 ♞fd8 22.♞d6!± and the weakness of the dark squares was very tangible;

11...♗e6 12.a3 ♗c6 13.c5 ♗e4 14.♗b5±. Black can not support the knight on e4 with f5, because White exchanges on c6, followed by ♗e5, so Black must trade on c3, which leads to an advantage for White.

12.♗xc4 ♗bd5

If 12...c6 13.♞e1 ♗f5 (13...♗bd5 leads to the main lines after 12...♗bd5 by transposition)

White plays 14.a3 ♖bd5 (after 14...♗c2 15.♞e5 ♗xa1 16.♞xf5 – Black will lose material after White captures the knight on a1. Black's best chance is 15...♙g6 16.♞a2 c5 17.d5± – but still White will be a pawn up.) 15.♙g5± – Black should better develop his bishop on e6, if he has a blocking d5 knight, and not to f5, because this difference in comparison to the main line will be in favour of White.

13.♞e1 c6 14.♞b3

White is attacking the b7-pawn, so the black bishop must remain on c8 in order to defend it. Black's next move is practically forced, otherwise White would play 15.♗e5.

14...♗b6

Black can hope now to develop his bishop to e6 and neutralize the pressure along the a2-g8 diagonal.

15.♙d3 ♙e6 16.♞c2 h6

Black is preventing eventual tactical strikes against e6 and h7, depriving the white knight from the g5-square. Black tried to solve the same problem with 16...♙d5 in the game Ponomarev – Karpov, Wijk aan Zee 2003, but after 17.♗e5 h6 18.♙f4 ♞e8 19.♞e2 he had to retreat with the bishop to e6 anyway (Black's counterplay is based on the possibility of ♗d5, but presently that square is occupied by the bishop.), and after 19...♙e6 20.♞d2 ♙f8 21.♞ae1 ♗bd5 22.♙g3 White had good chances to

attack Black's kingside, weakened along the b1-h7 diagonal after the move h7-h6.

17.a3 ♗bd5 18.♗a4

In this position the white knights can occupy both squares defended by the d4 pawn – c5 and e5. Moreover, the knight on c5 will exert strong pressure against e6 and b7 and Black's attempt to repel it with b6 will weaken the c6-square irrevocably.

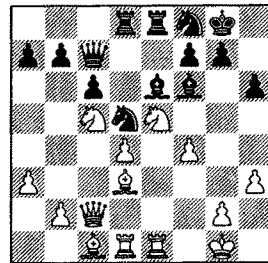
18...♗d7 19.♙d2

White is allowing the black rook to come to the centre.

19...♞e8 20.♞ad1 ♙f6 21.♗e5 ♞c7 22.f4

White is supporting the centralized knight on e5 and creates the threat f4-f5. So the black knight on d7 is forced to retreat and the white knight will be established on c5.

22...♗f8 23.♗c5 ♞ad8

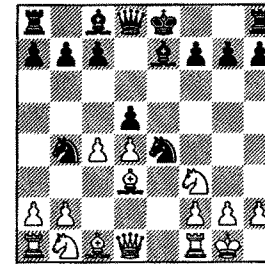


24.♙c1±

White's space advantage and better piece placement ensure his lasting initiative, besides the opponent has no clear-cut counterplay. In the game Bologan – Kasimdzhinov, Pamplona 2002

White managed to break Black's defence later with f4-f5 (at a moment in which Black had relinquished his control over the knight on e5) and later sacrificed a bishop on h6.

b) 8...♗b4



Black loses a tempo in this fashion (the knight must retreat to c6 after a3), but he rejects the bishop from its active position on d3 and fights for the centre. There are some lines in which Black manages to play c7-c5 before the retreat of the knight. Black must often exchange knights on c3 and there appears a typical pawn structure with a mobile pawn-tandem c3 and d4 in the centre. The evaluation of the arising positions depends on several factors. At first White should avoid exchanges of pieces, because that typically diminishes his advantage in this pawn structure. Secondly it is important for Black to develop his pieces harmoniously. Black has often to recapture on d5 with his queen and that might spell danger for that piece sometimes.

5.d4 d5 6.♙d3 ♙e7 7.0-0 ♗c6 8.c4

It is also very important whether White will manage to push his central pawns forward.

9. ♙e2

The tournament practice proved that White should not let that bishop be exchanged.

Black has two basic defences:

b1) 9...dxc4 and b2) 9...0-0.

9...♙f5 10.a3 ♗c6 11.♗c3 ♗xc3 12.bxc3 0-0 is dealt with in the line b2) 9...0-0.

The move 9...♙e6 before castling is unsatisfactory, because of 10.c5! and so if Black wants to play the line with 0-0 and to develop later the bishop to e6, he should castle first and only then put the bishop on e6. Now 10...a5 (After 10...0-0 11.♞b3 a5 12.a3 ♗c6 13.♞xb7 ♙d7 14.♞b3 ♙g4 15.♞a4 Black has no compensation for the pawn) 11.♗e5 f6 (otherwise White pushes Black's knights away) 12.♗d3 0-0 13.♗f4 ♙f7 14.♙g4± The weakness of the e6-square is very tangible now. The game Nataf – Topalov, Cannes 2002 went on 14...g6 15.♗e6 ♙xe6 16.♙xe6+ ♙g7 17.a3 ♗c6 18.♗c3 ♞e8 19.♗xd5 ♙xc5 20.dxc5 ♞xe6 21.♙f4 ♗e5 22.♞c1 c6 23.♗b6 ♞xd1 24.♞fxd1 ♞ae8 and now after 25.f3 White had the advantage in the endgame, because of the weak black pawns on the queenside and the vulnerable d6-square.

b1) 9...dxc4 10.♙xc4 0-0

The other moves in this position usually lead to the same lines via transposition after the

subsequent 0-0.

11. ♖c3 ♗d6

Black has also tried here 11... ♗xc3 12. bxc3 ♗d5 13. ♖d3 c6 14. ♗b3± Popovic – Kapelan, Vrsac 1989, and the space advantage and the solid centre secure White's better chances. In case of 11... ♗f6, the move 12. h3 transposes to the line – 8... ♗f6, we have already been dealing with. White can try instead 12. ♗e5!? (trying to save a tempo on h3) 12... c6 13. a3 ♗bd5 14. ♖e1±, which hasn't passed the test of the grandmaster practice yet.

12. ♗b3 ♗f6

The move 12... ♗g4?! looks rather dubious after 13. h3 ♗h5 14. g4 ♗g6 15. ♗e5 ♗f6 16. f4 ♗e4 17. ♖e1± Koglin – Engelmann, Leverkusen 1997, and White's initiative looks ominous, since Black's pieces are obviously totally disco-ordinated.

Black has also tried 12... ♗h8 (The idea of this move is to prepare the displacement of the knight after ♗e5 with f7-f6.) 13. a3 ♗c6 14. h3 ♗f6 15. ♗f4 ♗f5 16. ♖c1 ♖c8 17. ♖e1 – and White's pieces were much more active.

13. ♗e5 c5

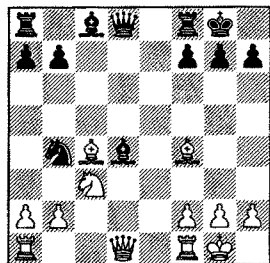
Black is trying to provoke exchanges in the centre and equalize in this fashion. After 13... ♗c6 14. ♗f4 ♗f5 15. ♗xc6 bxc6 16. d5± A. Sokolov – G. Agzamov, Riga 1985 Black was left with weak pawns on the queenside.

14. ♗f4 c4

In case of 14... cxd4 15. ♖xd4

♗c6 16. ♗xc6 ♗xd4 17. ♗xd8 ♖xd8 18. ♖ad1± – Black has grave problems with his light pieces in the centre. Black is lost after 14... ♗f5 15. dxc5 ♖xd1 16. ♖axd1 g5 17. ♗e4 ♗g7 18. ♗xf6 ♗xf6 19. ♗d2+.

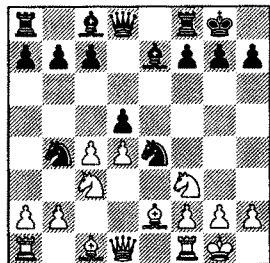
15. ♗xc4 ♗xc4 16. ♗c4 ♗xd4



17. ♗b5±

This position with an open centre allows White to get the advantage, because Black has to part with his dark-squared bishop. If Black tries to keep that bishop the arising endgame is clearly inferior for Black: 17... ♗c5 18. ♗c7 ♖xd1 (18... ♖b8 19. ♗xf7+ ♗xf7 20. ♖b3+ ♗f6 21. ♖ad1+) 19. ♖axd1 ♖b8 20. a3 ♗c6 21. b4 ♗b6 22. ♗d5 ♖a8 23. ♗d6 ♖e8 24. ♗xb6±.

b2) 9...0-0 10. ♗c3



This is the most critical position of the contemporary Petroff Defence. Black has to make the choice of how to develop and in what order of moves.

10...b6

The stronger and more popular lines for Black: 10... ♗f5 and 10... ♗e6 will be dealt with in the next chapters.

After 10...c5?! White plays 11. dxc5 and 11... ♗xc5 is bad for Black (Black's best chance is 11... ♗e6, so that White's extra pawn remained doubled.) after 12. a3± – Black simply loses a pawn without any compensation.

10... ♖e8. This is not the best order of moves. After 11. a3 ♗xc3 12. bxc3 ♗c6 13. cxd5 ♖xd5 14. ♖b1± White temporarily prevents the development of the bishop on c8 and keeps his opening edge.

10... ♗g4 (The g4-square in this position is obviously not the best for the development of the bishop.) Black has grave problems after 11. h3 ♗h5 12. a3 ♗xc3 13. bxc3 ♗c6 14. cxd5 ♖xd5 15. ♖b1± – and the bishop on h5 and the pawn on b7 are hanging simultaneously.

10... ♗f6 is just a concession in this position, because Black is losing tempi while manoeuvring each knight and settles for a purely defensive set-up. Now af-

ter 11. a3 ♗c6 12. h3 ♗e6 13. c5± White has a space advantage on the queenside in the symmetrical pawn structure. (The tournament practice has only tested 13. cxd5 by now.)

11.a3

11. ♗e5 is unclear after 11... ♗b7 12. ♖e1 c5!±.

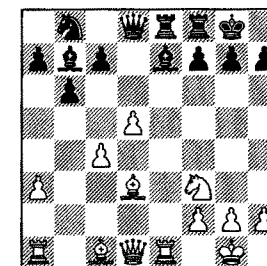
11... ♗xc3 12. bxc3 ♗c6 13. cxd5 ♖xd5 14. ♖e1 ♗b7

Black does not solve his problems with 14... ♖e8 15. ♗f4 ♗d6 16. c4 ♖a5 17. ♗e3, Kotronias – Picket, Lisbon 2001, and the black queen is rather uncomfortable, which is typical for this variation though.

15. ♗d3 ♖a8 16. c4 ♖d8

16... ♖h5 is quite dangerous for Black after 17. d5.

17. d5 ♗b8

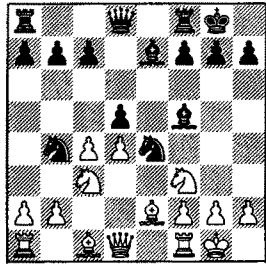


18. ♗e5↑

White played later ♗b2 and f4 and kept a lasting initiative in the centre and the kingside based on the strong knight on e5 in the game Kasparov – Olafsson, Kopavogur 2000.

Chapter 12

1.e4 e5 2.♘f3 ♘f6 3.♗xe5 d6 4.♘f3
 ♘xe4 5.d4 d5 6.♖d3 ♖e7 7.0-0 ♘c6
 8.c4 ♘b4 9.♖e2 0-0 10.♘c3 ♖f5
Petroff Defence



We are going to deal in this chapter with one of the most popular lines for Black. Black is developing his bishop on the most natural square.

11.a3 ♘xc3 12.bxc3 ♘c6

Of course not 12...♘c2? 13.♞a2+.

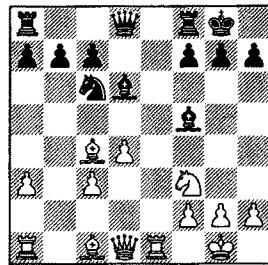
13.♞e1

White plays a useful developing move and lets Black make up his mind whether to exchange in the centre a) 13...dxc4, or find some useful move of his own like b) 13...♞e8, c) 13...♖e6, or d) 13...♖f6.

a) 13...dxc4 14.♖xc4 ♖d6

14...♖f6 15.♖f4 is dealt with in the line 13...♖f6 14.♖f4 dxc4 by transposition. After 14...♘a5 15.♖a2 White's pressure along the a2-g8 diagonal is very per-

ceptible: 15...c5 (or 15...♖f6 16.♘e5 c5 17.♝f3± – and White is dominating in the centre) 16.♞e5! (this is even stronger than 16.♘e5 ♖f6, Ehlvest – Khalifman, Minsk 1987, 17.♝f3 transposing to the previous line) 16...♝d7 (after 16...♖g4 17.h3 ♖xf3 18.♝xf3± White's light-squared bishop is left without an opponent and becomes extremely powerful) 17.♞d5 ♝c8 18.♖g5± White wins the c5-pawn.



15.♞a2!?

White is fighting for an advantage trying to occupy the open e-file with his rooks. He intends to manoeuvre his knight to e4 via g5 in order to create threats on the kingside.

15...♝d7

15...♘a5 16.♖d3 ♝d7 (The

line 16...♖xd3 is preserving matching pieces on the board after 17.♝xd3 ♞e8 18.♞ae2 ♞xe2 19.♞xe2 h6 20.c4↑. White keeps his initiative and his pieces are better placed.) 17.♞ae2±. White has a small edge. He has occupied the e-file and Black will be reluctant to exchange on d3 and play ♞fe8 because of ♘g5.

16.♘g5 ♘a5

After 16...h6 17.♘e4 ♞ae8 18.♞ae2± Black will have to exchange on e4 sooner or later just like in the other lines:

16...♞ae8 17.♞ae2 ♘d8 18.♘e4 ♖xe4 19.♞xe4 ♞xe4 20.♞xe4 ♞e8 21.f3± McShane – Schandorff, Esbjerg 2001. White is better, because of his bishop pair advantage;

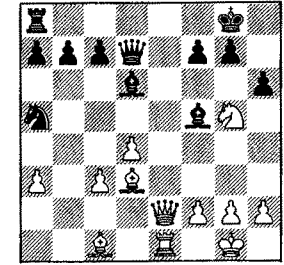
16...♖g6 17.♘e4 ♞fe8 18.♞ae2 ♖xe4 19.♞xe4 ♞xe4 20.♞xe4 ♞e8 21.f3±. White is trying to keep the rooks on the board with his last move. It is disadvantageous for Black to exchange rooks on e4, because the white pawn will come to the centre. White's two bishops give him a clear edge in the middlegame as well as in the endgame, but still Black should have enough defensive resources for a draw after a correct play, Adams – Anand, New Delhi (m/3) 2000.

17.♖d3 ♞fe8

Black succeeds to keep his knight on the beautiful c4-outpost with 17...b5 18.♝f3 ♖g6 19.♞ae2 ♘c4 20.a4 a6 21.h4 h6 22.♘e4↑. The evaluation of the

position remains just the same – White has a strong initiative with imminent threats against f6 and h6, Shirov – Karpov, Prague 2002.

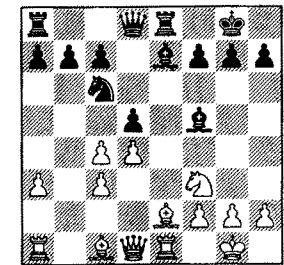
18.♞ae2 ♞xe2 19.♝xe2 h6



20.♘e4±

White has managed to create certain threats on the kingside that will eventually force Black to exchange on e4 at some moment. White will enjoy his two-bishop advantage then.

b) 13...♞e8



14.cxd5 ♝xd5 15.♖f4 ♞ac8

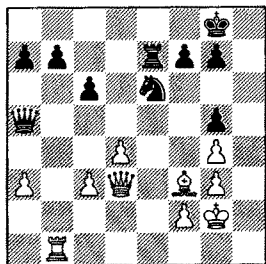
The other way to defend that pawn is 15...♖d6, and White preserves his edge with 16.c4 ♝e4 17.♖e3. This is an important move in order to avoid further exchanges, while the black queen

on e4 is in a perilous situation and can not retreat back safely. 17...♖ad8 18.♞a2 ♗g6 (18...♗f4 is losing a piece after 19.♘d2+-) 19.♞c1 (White is again preventing the bishop trade on f4.) 19...♘a5 20.c5 ♗e7 21.♗b5 ♞d5, Kasparov – Karpov, New York (m/4) 2002, and now 22.♗xe8 ♞xa2 23.♗a4 threatening ♗f4, attacking on e7 and c7, was creating problems that Black could have hardly coped with.

16.h3 ♗f6 17.♘h2 ♞a5 18.♗d2 ♞cd8 19.♗f3 h6 20.♘g4 ♗xg4 21.hxg4 ♗g5 22.♗xg5 hxg5 23.♞xe8+

Anand recommends here 23. ♞c1! – White is preparing ♞b1 and is eyeing the g5 pawn.

23...♞xe8 24.♞d3 ♘d8 25.g3 c6 26.♗g2 ♘e6 27.♞b1 ♞e7

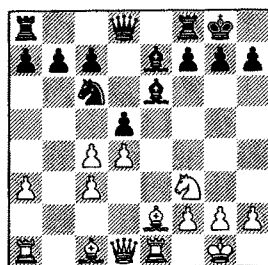


28.c4±

White is better in this position with a knight against a bishop, Kramnik – Anand, Wijk aan Zee 2003.

c) 13...♗e6
(diagram)

This move was played for the first time in the game Svidler –



Ponomarev, Moscow 2001. The idea of the move is to force the exchange on d5 and take with the bishop. This avoids the lines where capturing there with the queen was exposing it too much.

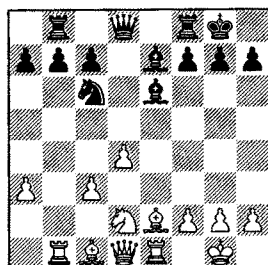
14.cxd5 ♗xd5 15.♘d2!?

This move was recommended by A.Lukin (Svidler played here 15.♗e3). White is threatening to win a piece with c4 and d5 and Black can not ignore this. He has to retreat with the knight to a5 or with the bishop to e6:

15...♗e6

Or 15...♘a5 16.♗d3±.

16.♞b1 ♞b8

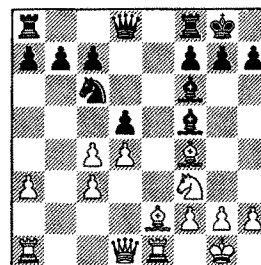


17.♗d3±

White is regrouping his forces against the kingside of the enemy and his initiative is evident.

10.♘c3 ♗f5 11.a3 ♘c3 12.bc ♘c6 13.♞e1

d) 13...♗f6 14.♗f4



Black must parry somehow the threat of taking on d5 and c7 next: d1) 14...♞c8, d2) 14...dxc4, d3) 14...♘a5.

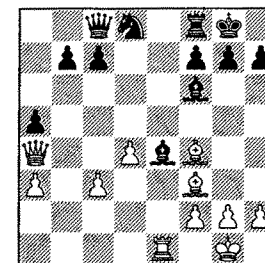
14...♘e7?! is not to be recommended. After 15.♞b3 b6 (15... ♞b8 16.♗e5± was to be preferred, because Black was not weakening the c6-square.) 16.cxd5 ♘xd5 17.♗e5 ♗g4 (Black's moves 17 and 18 were not convincing. He had better try 17...c6 18.c4 ♘c7 19.♗d3± – White achieved some progress in the centre having pushed c4 and establishing the knight on e5, but Black's position is still very solid.) 18.♞ad1 ♗e7?! 19.h3 ♗h5 20.g4! ♗g6 21.♗g3± Kasparov – I. Sokolov, Sarajevo 2000. White has a great advantage. The appearance of the white knight on e5 will be deadly for Black, because of the weak c6-square and the exposed bishop on g6.

d1) 14...♞c8 15.cxd5 ♞xd5 16.♘d2 ♞d7

16...♘d4? doesn't work, because of 17.♗c4 ♞d7 18.cxd4 ♞xd4 19.♞f3+-.

16...♞fe8 was played in the game Short – Karpov, Prague 2002, and now White had to play 17.♘f1!± when the black pieces in the centre are quite uncomfortable.

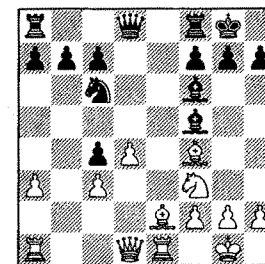
17.♘b3 ♞ce8 18.♘c5 ♞c8 19.♞a4 a5 20.♗f3 ♞xe1+ 21. ♞xe1 ♘d8 22.♘e4 ♗xe4



23.♞xe4±

White has some edge thanks to his two bishops, Shirov – Kramnik, Monte Carlo 1999.

d2) 14...dxc4



15.♗xc4 ♞d7

Black has also tried 15...♘a5 16.♗a2 c5 17.♘e5 (The other possibility is 17.♗e5 cxd4 18.cxd4±. White has a powerful central passed pawn and a strong bishop on a2, but Black's position is

quite solid.) 17...cxd4 18.cxd4 – White has a strong pawn in the centre and pressure along the a2-f7. Black tried to play actively on the queenside in the game Kovaliev – Bode, Dresden 1994, but after 18...♞c8 (♠18...♞c6 19.♞xc6 bxc6 20.♙e5±) 19.♞a4 a6 20.♞ac1 b5? (♠20...♞xc1 21.♙xc1±) 21.♞xc8 ♙xc8 22.♞xf7 he lost material: 22...♞xd4 23.♞xd4 ♙xd4 24.♙d6 ♞c4 25.♙xc4 bxc4 26.♙xf8 ♞xf7 27.♞e4 ♙f6 28.♞xc4+.

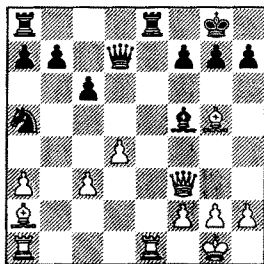
16.♞g5

White can also think about 16.♞a2!?± with the idea to double the rooks along the e-file.

16...♙xg5

After 16...♞a5 17.♙a2 h6 18.♞e4 ♙e7 19.♞h5 Black has to exchange one of his bishops anyway (most probably the light-squared one), since after 19...♞c6, White has 20.♙xh6, Al Sayed – Ahmad, Beirut 2000, and Black can not capture the bishop because after 20...gxf6 21.♞xh6 there is no defence against the transfer of the white rook along the third rank.

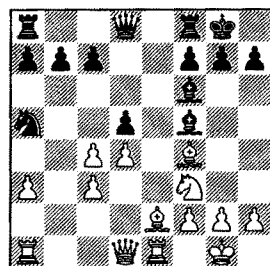
17.♙xg5 ♞fe8 18.♞f3 ♞a5 19.♙a2 c6



20.c4±

Stefansson – Thorfinnsson, Reykjavik 2001. White has two powerful bishops and a future passed pawn in the centre.

d3) 14...♞a5



15.cxd5 ♞xd5 16.♞e5

Black managed to survive in the game Alexander Sokolov – P.Nielsen, Germany 1998 after capturing the pawn – 16.♙xc7 ♞ac8 17.♙e5 (17.♙xa5 ♞xa5 18.c4 ♞fd8=) 17...♞xc3 18.♙xf6 gxf6 19.♞c1 ♞xc1 20.♞xc1 ♞e8 21.♞c7 ♙g6 22.h3 ♞g7 and the weakness of the black pawns on the kingside was not perceivable.

16...♞b3

After 16...c5 White plays 17.♙g4! (but not 17.♙f3 ♞b3 18.dxc5 ♞ad8 19.♞c1 ♞a4±) 17...♙xg4 18.♞xg4 ♞d8 19.♞xf6 ♞f6 20.♙e5 ♞c6 21.dxc5± Adams – Dao Thien, New Delhi (m/2) 2000. White has the advantage, because of his extra c5-pawn and the control over the d6-square. It is not easy to win though, because White can not create a passed pawn.

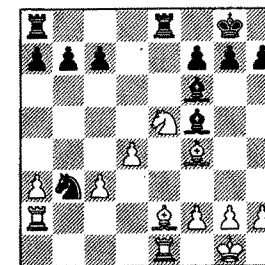
17.♞xb3

10.♞c3 ♙f5 11.a3 ♞c3 12.bc ♞c6 13.♞e1

White is not better after 17.♞g4 ♙xg4 18.♙xg4 ♞xc3 19.♙d2 ♞xd4 20.♙xa5 ♞xa1 21.♞xa1 ♙xa1 22.♞xa1 b6 23.♙c3 ♞ad8=.

17...♞xb3 18.♞a2 ♞fe8

Or 18...c6 19.♞g4!? and White obtains the bishop pair advantage in the endgame after the trade on g4, while 19...♙e7 can be met with 20.♙d1 ♞fe8 21.♞h6+ (21.♞e3 ♙e6 22.d5 ♞c1 23.dxe6 ♞d3=) 21...gxf6 22.♙xb3 ♙d6 (22...♙xa3 is just bad for Black 23.♞xe8+ ♞xe8 24.g4±) 23.♙e3±. Black has some weaknesses on the kingside and that determines White's minimal advantage.

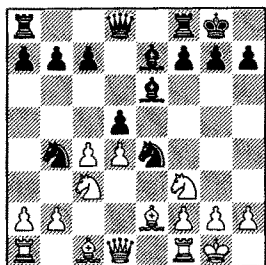


19.♙c4!±

This is better than 19.♞b2 ♞a5, because now Black is forced to exchange his bishop for the knight immediately. 19...♙xe5 20.♞ae2 ♞a5 21.♙d5±. White has the two bishop advantage in the endgame.

Chapter 13

1.e4 e5 2.♘f3 ♘f6 3.♗xe5 d6 4.♘f3
 ♘xe4 5.d4 d5 6.♗d3 ♗e7 7.0-0 ♘c6
 8.c4 ♘b4 9.♗e2 0-0 10.♘c3 ♗e6
Petroff Defence



We are going to analyse the most popular line of the Petroff Defence in this chapter. Black develops a piece, supports the d5-square and avoids problems with the exposed queen that were thematic for the line 10...♗f5.

11.♘e5

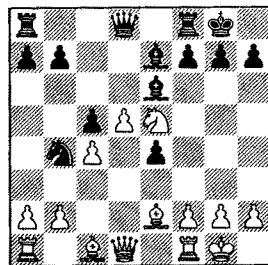
White must make an useful waiting move, while the natural 11.♗e3, as the practice has shown, leads to an almost complete equality after 11...♗f5 (this move now seems a bit strange, but Black creates the threat to take on c3 and then fork on c2, which was impossible without the bishop on e3) 12.♞c1 dxc4 13.♗xc4 c6 14.♘e5 ♘xc3 15.bxc3 ♘d5 16.♙f3 ♗e6=.

After 11.♘e5 Black has two basic defences: **a) 11...c5** and **b) 11...f6**.

11...♘xc3 is not advisable 12.bxc3 ♘c6 13.♘xc6 bxc6 14.c5 ♗f5 15.♗f4 ♗g5 16.♙d2± Kulaots – Lehiste, Tallinn 2000. Black's position is very passive and far from equal.

Black has not tried yet 11...♗d6!? 12.♗e3 c5!? with the idea to attack the knight on e5, avoiding the possibility of White taking on e4 and playing d5, unlike the line with the immediate 11...c5. White must simply retreat the knight 13.♘f3 and after 13...cxd4 14.♘xd4 ♙c7 15.h3± preserve some advantage in connection with the imminent capture on e6.

a) 11...c5 12.♘xe4 dxe4 13.d5



This is an interesting pawn

structure – White has a protected passed pawn in the centre, while Black has a pawn majority on the kingside. Naturally the central passed pawn comprises a long lasting advantage ensuring White's edge in every endgame. Meanwhile if Black manages to post a blocking knight on d6 and bring his bishop on the a1-h8 diagonal he will have a wonderful game.

Black's weak point in this position is the knight on b4, which is roaming in pursuit of a good square (b4-a6-c7-e8-d6).

Black must now decide whether he will retreat with the bishop **a3) 13...♗c8**, or attack the knight firstly with **a1) 13...♗d6** or **a2) 13...♙c7**.

Black has also tried here 13...♗f5, but it is the wrong square for the bishop and it is going to be attacked there. 14.a3 ♘a6 15.f3±. White is opening the f-file and that emphasizes the drawback of the disposition of the bishop on f5. Black now can not play the move f7-f5, which is essential for his counterplay. White can also play 15.♗g4 15...♙c8 16.f3 ♗xg4 17.♘xg4 exf3 18.♙xf3 f5 19.♘e5± and the weakness of the e6 square is quite unpleasant for Black, Khachian – Egin, Sochi 1997.

a1) 13...♗d6 14.a3 ♗xe5

This move is very risky, since White now has mobile passed pawns in the centre.

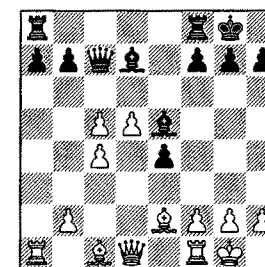
14...♘a6 15.f4±. The right place for the Black bishop is on the a1-h8 diagonal, i.e. on f6 in this pawn structure, and not on d6 – that square is suitable for the knight. Black must lose time and retreat with the bishop, so White gets the edge.

15.axb4 ♗d7

Or 15...♗f5 16.bxc5 ♙c7 17.g3 ♙xc5 18.♗e3 ♙d6 19.c5 ♙f6 20.♙b3 ♗xb2 21.♞a4 ♗e5 22.♙xb7 ♗h3 23.♞e1 a5 24.d6± Baklan – Timman, Neum 2000. Black can hardly cope with White's passed pawns.

16.bxc5 ♙c7

Or 16...f5 17.f4 exf3 18.♞xf3 ♙c7 19.d6!± Nadyrkanov – Majorovas, Krasnodar 1994, and after 19...♙xc5+ 20.♗e3 Black would lose a piece if he takes on d6, so White keeps his protected passed pawn.

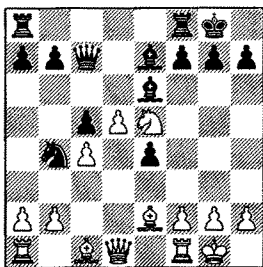


17.♗e3±

White must keep the pawn tandem c5+d5 on the queenside, while Black's counterplay on the kingside fails. 17...♗xh2+ (After 17...♗xb2 18.♞b1± Black has no counterplay and White's central pawns are very powerful.) 18.

♖h1 ♗e5 (Black's attempt to attack the king backfires: 18...f5 19.d6 ♖d8 20.♖xh2 f4 21.♖d5+ ♖h8 22.♖xe4 ♖h4+ 23.♖g1 ♖ae8 24.♖xb7 fxe3 25.fxe3+-; 23...♗c6 24.♖e7 ♖f6 – 24...♖h6 25.♗d4 – 25.d7 ♗xd7 26.♖xd7 ♖h6 27.♖h3+-) 19.♗d4 ♖fe8 (Or 19...♗xd4 20.♖xd4 a5 21.♖a3± Δ♖fa1 and White's advantage is obvious.) 20.b4 ♖d8 21.♗xe5 ♖xe5 22. ♖a3± Wahls – Pavasovic, Dresden 1998. The white pawns are moving forward, while Black can not create any threats against the enemy king.

a2) 13...♖c7



14.f4

White achieves nothing with 14.a3 ♖xe5 15.axb4 ♗d7 16.bxc5 ♗xc5 17.♖b3 b6, Rizouk – Gustafsson, Andorra la Vella 2002. White's passed pawn was reliably blocked.

The other possibility 14.♗f4 leads to equality after 14...♗d6 15.a3 (In case of 15.dxe6 ♗xe5 the black knight will soon occupy the weak d4-square. Therefore White is trying to repel the knight firstly.) 15...♖c6= Ivan-

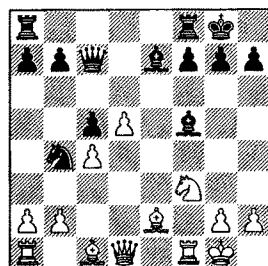
chuk – Nielsen, Bled 2002. White had no opening advantage to brag about.

14...exf3

14...♗c8 is "tougher" – 15.a3 ♖a6 16.♗e3±. White is a little better after 16...f6 17.♖g4 ♗xg4 18.♗xg4 f5 19.♗e2. He can try to organize g4, or b4 after the retreat of the knight to a6, with the preparing moves ♖d2 and ♖ab1. It is essential for White that he has placed the bishop on e3, controlling the important central d4-square for the enemy bishop.

15.♖xf3 ♗f5

Black makes use of the active knight on b4.

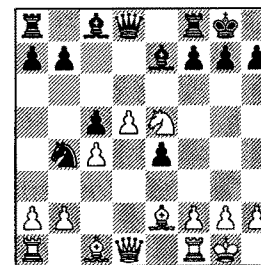


16.♖e1±

White is attacking the bishop and covering the c2 square. (16.a3 was also possible – 16...♖c2 17.♖a2 ♗f6 18.♗d3, but not 18.♖h4 ♗xh4 19.♖xf5 ♖d4. Black preserves his knight in the centre with 18...♗xd3 19.♖xd3 ♖d4 20.♖g5 ♗xg5 21.♗xg5±. White puts his bishop on e3 with his next move attacking the knight on d4. This would be rather unpleasant for Black, because his

knight has no good squares to retreat to and if Black allows the exchange on d4 – the pawn there will be very weak and difficult to defend too.) 16...♗e4 17.a3 ♖a6 18.♗d3 ♗xd3 19.♖xd3±. Black failed to solve the problems of the opening. He has no compensation for White's extra space and protected passed pawn. Black's knight on a6 is misplaced, while White's pieces are very active with good prospects for a king-side initiative.

a3) 13...♗c8



14.a3 ♖a6 15.♖c2

The straightforward 15.f4 f6 16.♖g4 ♗xg4 17.♗xg4 f5 18.♗e2 ♗f6, Leko – Kramnik, Monte Carlo 2001, did not provide any advantage for White. The black bishop occupies an ideal square on d4, while the black knight heads to d6 easily.

15...f6 16.♖g4 ♖d6

Black has to solve long-lasting problems in this position. White has a protected passed pawn; Black's knight on a6 is misplaced and it will take a long time to redeploy; the e6-square

is weak and White can exploit that after the exchange of the f2 and e3 pawns and the opening up of the e-file. Black will definitely fail to equalize.

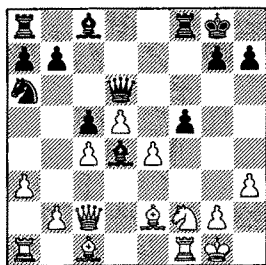
Black has also tried two other moves beside 16...♖d6:

16...♗d6 17.f4 exf3 Now that the black bishop is on d6 already, the exchange 17...♗xg4 18.♗xg4 f5 19.♗e2 is promising White a slight edge, because Black's bishop is evidently not on its best square. 18.♗xf3 ♖c7 19.g3 ♗d7 20.♖f2. White's task is to complete his development and neutralize the tactical threats of the opponent. The long-lasting advantages of his position will surely tell later. 20...b5 21.b3 ♖ae8 22.♖g2 ♗e5 23.♖b1 ♗d4 24.♗d2 b4 25.a4 ♖c8 26.♖be1 ♗f5 27.♗e4 ♖xe4 28.♖xe4 ♗h3+ 29.♖h1 ♗xf1 30.♖xf1 ♖g4 31.♖d6± Topalov – Shirov, Moscow 2001. White will have better chances in the endgame after the exchanges;

16...♖c7 17.f3 exf3 18.♗xf3 ♗d6 19.♖f2 f5 20.b3!± This is a prophylactic move, which neutralizes Black's counterplay against the c4-pawn and enables White to start his active play later. The immediate 20.♖d3 (this move is definitely a part of White's plan to occupy the f4-square and observe the e6-square) allows Black to attack White's centre: 20...b5 21.b3 (21.♗e3 bxc4 22.♖xc5 ♖e7 23.♖e6 ♖xe6 24.dxe6 ♖b8 25.♖xc4

♗xe6= Motylev – Mahesh, Calcutta 2002. White is not better after the exchanges in the centre.) 21...bxc4 22.bxc4 ♖h4 23.g3 ♖d4+ 24.♗g2 ♗a6 – the defence of the white pawn on c4 is problematic.

17.f3 f5 18.♘f2 ♗f6 19.fxe4 ♗e5 20.h3 ♗d4



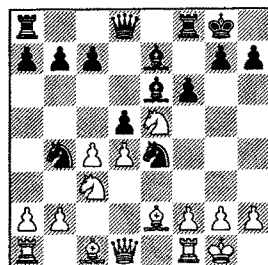
21.e5±

White gives back his extra pawn, but avoids Black's counterplay along the f-file. He obtains a pawn structure that favours the manoeuvre with the knight to e6. 21...♖xe5 22.♗h1 ♗d7 23.♘d3 ♗a4. Black is occupying the e-file temporarily, but is failing to achieve anything substantial out of it while the e6-square is weakened even more. 24.♖xa4 ♖xe2 25.♞f3 ♞ae8 26.♗f4 h6 27.♗d6 ♞f6 28.♘f4 ♖e4 29.♘e6± Anand – Shirov, Moscow 2001. Black will have to give the exchange on e6 sooner or later and he will not have enough compensation for it.

b) 11...f6

This move rejects the knight, but creates a weakness on e6

that will be perceptible after exchanges in the centre.



12.♘f3

Black must choose a waiting move that is going to be useful in the fight ahead. We will analyse the following moves in detail: b1) 12...c5, b2) 12...♞e8 and b3) 12...♗h8.

The immediate exchange is not very good for Black – 12...♘xc3 13.bxc3 ♘c6 14.♘d2± followed by ♞e1 and ♗d3 and White has a strong initiative on the kingside (weakened by f7-f6).

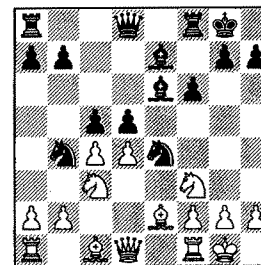
12...♞c8. This waiting move is not quite satisfactory, because after 13.♖b3 ♘xc3 14.bxc3 dxc4 15.♗xc4 ♗xc4 16.♖xc4+ ♘d5 17.♞b1± Timoshenko – Sulypa, Ordzhonikidze 2000, Black has to go back with the rook to defend the b7-pawn.

12...f5 13.♖b3 dxc4 14.♗xc4 ♗xc4 15.♖xc4+ ♗h8 16.♘e5↑ – White has the edge because of the weak a2-h7 diagonal and the powerful knight on e5.

12...♖d7 13.♗e3 ♗h8 14.a3 ♘xc3 15.bxc3 ♘c6 16.cxd5 ♗xd5 17.c4. White manages to push his central pawns now. 17...♗xf3

18.♗xf3 ♞ad8 19.♞e1 f5 20.d5 ♘e5 21.♗d4 ♘xf3+ 22.♖xf3 ♗f6 23.♗xf6 ♞xf6 24.♞e5± Bologan – Zulfugaryi, Minsk 2000. White is better because of the occupation of the e-file.

b1) 12...c5



13.♗e3 ♞c8

That is not solving the problems, so maybe Black should try instead 13...b6 14.♞c1 ♘xc3 15.bxc3 ♘c6 16.dxc5 ♗xc5 17.♗xc5 bxc5 18.♖a4 ♖c7 19.cxd5 ♗xd5 20.♗c4 ♗f7 21.♗xf7+ ♞xf7 22.♞fe1± Timoshenko – Laurent, Cappelle la Grande 2001. White is again better because of the weak a2-g8 diagonal, the strong c5-pawn and the important e-file.

14.dxc5 ♗xc5 15.♗xc5 ♞xc5 But not 15...♘xc5? 16.a3 ♘ba6 17.cxd5+.

16.♖b3

It turns out that Black is either losing material or has to comply with substantial positional concessions. It is not easy to defend the d5-pawn with the stray knight on b4 and rook on c5.

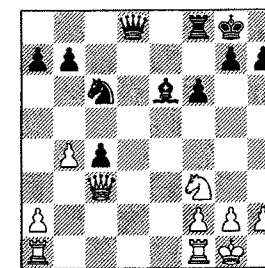
16...♘xc3

16...a5 is losing the d5 pawn: 17.♞ad1 ♖e7 18.♘a4 ♗f7 19.♖e3 ♞c7 20.a3 ♘a6 21.cxd5± Khalifman – Karpov, Bali 2000 and Black has no compensation for the pawn, or 17...♖e8 18.♘d5 ♗xd5 19.cxd5± Torre – Handoko, Bali 2000 and White has a sound extra pawn.

17.♖xc3 ♘c6

Black's position was really bad after 17...♘a6 18.b4 ♞c8 19.♘d4 ♘c7 20.♞ad1 ♖d7 21.h3 ♞fe8 22.c5± De Firmian – Neiksans, Istanbul 2000. White had a powerful blocking knight in front of the isolated pawn and a promising pawn majority on the queenside.

18.b4 ♞xc4 19.♗xc4 dxc4



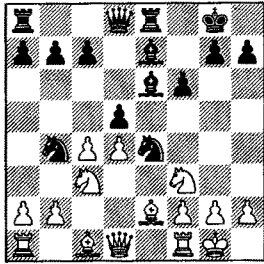
20.b5± Lutz – Kutuzovic, Pula 2000. Black's passed pawn is harmless and quite not enough to compensate the loss of the exchange.

b2) 12...♞e8

(diagram)

13.♗e3 ♗f8

Black has tried here: 13...♗h8 14.a3 ♘xc3 15.bxc3 ♘c6 16.cxd5

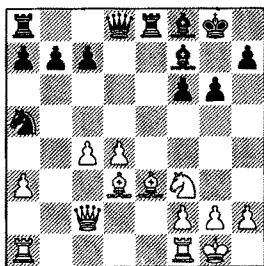


♗xd5 17.c4 ♗e4 18.d5 ♗xf3 19.♗xf3 ♗e5 20.♗e4 g6 21.c5↑ Sedina – Dolzhikova, Warsaw 2001. White has the bishop pair advantage and active pawns in the centre.

14.a3 ♗xc3 15.bxc3 ♗c6 16.cxd5 ♗xd5 17.c4 ♗f7 18.♖c2 ♗a5

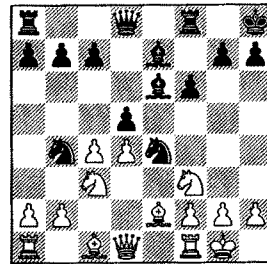
Or 18...♖d7 19.♗d3 g6 20.♖fe1 ♗d6 21.♖b2 b6 22.♖ad1±. White has the edge in the centre and Black has a weak kingside and particularly the f6-square, Kovchan – Nikolajev, Oropesa del Mar 2001.

19.♗d3 g6



Adams – Timman, Wijk aan Zee 2001 and now White had to continue with 20.h4!±, with active play on the kingside.

b3) 12...♖h8



13.♖b3 a5

The simplification 13...dxc4 14.♗xc4 ♗xc4 15.♖xc4 ♗xc3 16.bxc3 leads to a slight edge for White. 16...♖d5 (Or 16...♗d5 17.♖b1± – the e6-square is weak and the white central pawns are mobile. White is better.) 17.♖e2 (stronger than 17.♖b3 ♖xb3 18.axb3 ♗d5 19.♖e1 ♖fe8 20.♗d2 c6 21.c4 ♗b6 22.♗h4 ♗g8 23.♗f5 ♗f7 24.♗f1± Adams – Timman, Wijk aan Zee 2000, and White had a slight, but stable advantage in the endgame.) 17...♗c6 18.♖b1 ♖ab8 (This pawn must be defended, because its sacrifice after 18...♖ae8 19.♖b5 ♗d6 20.♖b2 ♖c4 21.♖xb7 ♖e2 22.♗d2± leaves Black with insufficient compensation.) 19.c4 ♖h5 20.♗e3±. White's pieces are very active and his central pawns are mobile.

In case of 13...♗xc3 14.bxc3 ♗c6 (Black should better play 14...dxc4 15.♗xc4 ♗xc4 16.♖xc4 transposing to the previous line 13...dxc4) 15.♖xb7 ♗a5 16.♖a6

c6 17.cxd5± White remains with an extra pawn.

14.cxd5!?

The other possibility leads to unclear position – 14.c5 ♗f5±.

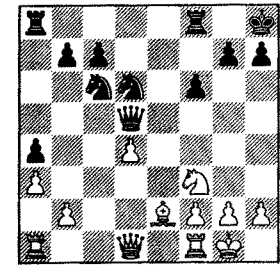
14...a4 15.♖d1

White's move 15.♖c4 will be met with 15...♗f7 16.♗xe4 ♗xd5.

15...♗xd5 16.♗xd5 ♖xd5 17.a3 ♗c6 18.♗f4

18.♗e3 f5 19.♖c2 ♗d6 20.♖ad1 ♗f6∞ is allowing Black to create counterplay against the d4-pawn.

18...♗d6 19.♗xd6 ♗xd6



20.♖c1±

The position of Black' queen is unstable and his pawns on the queenside a4 and c7 are weak. Our analysis finds White's position preferable.

Conclusion

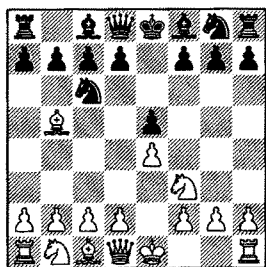
Black usually complies with a little worse, but quite defensible positions, playing the Petroff Defence. The middlegame is thematic for two types of pawn structures – White's isolated d4 pawn, or the pawn tandem c3+d4. Black's most natural defensive resource is the simplification of the position by exchanging a couple of minor pieces. Conversely, White should strive to avoid exchanges and try to create problems to the opponent in the centre and on the kingside, because he has extra space and active pieces.

White manages to keep some advantage in most of the lines of the Petroff Defence mostly due to various concrete factors in every different variation.

Part 3

Ruy Lopez without 3...a6

1.e4 e5 2.♘f3 ♘c6 3.♗b5



Way back in 1561 the Spanish priest Ruy Lopez described in his book *Libro del Ajedrez* some variations arising after 3.♗b5. Later chess theory called these systems after him – the Ruy Lopez.

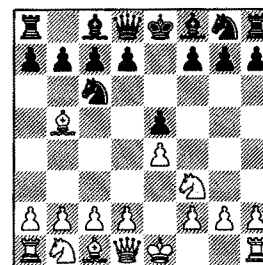
In the opening the task of White is not only to effectuate a good deployment of his pieces. He should also actively hinder the opponent in following plans of his own, giving Black no respite. The last move of White (3.♗b5) increases the pressure on the most delicate point in the opponent's camp. Black must be constantly on his guard against the threat of ♗xc6 followed by ♘xe5, and that significantly re-

stricts his choice of developing systems. To be sure, the threat is not imminent yet as 4.♗xc6 dxc6 5.♘xe5 fails to 5...♖d4 and Black regains the pawn with a good game. Building on this possibility, Black manages to insert 3...a6, which is covered in Book II. The present Book confines to the lines without 3...a6.

The Chapter 14 considers the rarely seen continuations 3...♗d6, 3...♖f6, 3...♗b4, 3...♘ge7, 3...f6. The subject of Chapter 15 is the Fianchetto Defence (3...g6), Chapter 16 deals with the Bird's Defence (3...♘d4), Chapter 17 – with Old Steinitz Defence (3...d6) and Chapter 18 – with the Classical Defence (3...♗c5). The sharp Jaenisch Gambit (3...f5) is thoroughly analysed in Chapters 19–22. The gem of this volume is the Berlin Defence (3...♘f6), which burst of popularity was due to the world title match Kasparov – Kramnik, London 2000. It is scrutinised in Chapters 23–29.

Chapter 14

1.e4 e5 2.♘f3 ♘c6 3.♗b5



This chapter deals with the variations when Black tries to avoid usual classical patterns: **a) 3...♗b4**, **b) 3...♘ge7** and **c) 3...f6**.

3...g5?! (This move only weakens Black's kingside.) 4.d4 ♘xd4 (Black may lose soon in case of 4...exd4 5.♗xg5 f6 6.♘xd4 fxe5 7.♖h5+ ♗e7 8.♘f5+ ♗f6 9.h4+; after 4...g4 White has a large advantage after the simple 5.♘xe5 ♘xe5 6.dxe5±) 5.♘xd4 exd4 6.♖xd4 ♖f6 (6...f6?! 7.♗xg5) 7.e5 (White gets a good play also after 7.♖xf6 ♘xf6 8.e5 ♘g4 9.♗xg5 Keres) 7...♖b6, Elbers – Welling, Eindhoven 1987, (the other queen's retreat 7...♖g6 is worse. After it White's initiative is developing by itself. 8.♘c3 ♖xc2? 9.e6+; 8...♗e7 9.♗e3 to be followed by 0–0–0 or ♘d5)

8.♖xb6 axb6 9.♘c3 (9.♗xg5 ♖a5 10.♘c3 is not bad too) 9...♗g7 10.f4 ♘e7 11.0–0±.

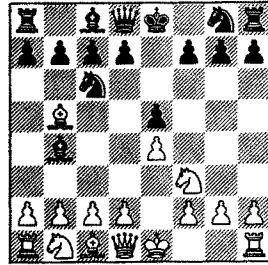
The continuation 3...♗d6?! does not meet the established conception of the harmonious development of pieces because the bishop placed before the d-pawn impedes the development of its mate on the other flank, and in this way of Black's whole queenside. But, certainly, White must play vigorously to prove the incorrectness of this sort of the opening performance, as otherwise Black may develop his kingside and move the queen's bishop on b7 to have then no particular problems. 4.0–0 (Before proceeding to active play by the self-suggesting d2-d4 White removes his king from the centre and, at the same time, employs his development advantage, White gives a start to the active operation, threatening with the simple ♗xc6 and then dxe5 with a fork. 5...♘xe4 6.♖e2 (Seems to be the most aggressive move, causing great difficulties in the defence of Black's pieces, which,

in turn, impedes their normal development). 6...f5 There is no other acceptable way to save the knight. 7.dxe5 ♖c5 (Black is not ready for the active counterplay of 7...♗xe5? 8.♗xe5 ♖xe5 9.f3 c6 10.♗d3 ♗h4 11.g3; 10...♗b6+ 11.♗h1 0-0 12.fxe4 ♗xb2 13.♗xb2 ♗xb2 14.♗d2+-; 11...♗xb2 12.♗xb2 ♗xb2 13.♗d2 d5 14.fxe4 fxe4 15.♗xe4 dxe4 16.♗xe4+- with the decisive attack.) 8.♗bd2! Exchanging Black's active knight, White increases his development advantage. 8...♗xd2 9.♗xd2± White's development advantage grows menacing, and Black can't castle because of the queen check on c4.

3...♗f6 looks somewhat unnatural too, usually queen is the last piece to be developed, yet it involves a more viable idea than the variation with 3...♗d6: Black hopes to use the early thrust of the enemy queen to put up active counterplay on the kingside, so White must play rather neatly to prove that the move ♗f6 has not been premature. 4.c3 (This is perhaps the most consistent continuation: White acts in the classical style, playing in the centre in answer to the early flank advance, and attacking at first with the pawns to clear up space for his pieces to come next). 4...g5 (Too sharply, maybe better is 4...♗c5 transposing into the variation of 3...♗c5 with the queen on f6 that will be analysed in Chapter 18). 5.d4 g4 6.♗xe5 ♗xe5

7.dxe5 ♗xe5 8.♗d3± White's advantage is irrefutable due to his prevalence in development and the weakening of Black's kingside.

a) 3...♗b4
(The Alapin Defence)



This continuation, inviting White to attack, presents no problems for the development of White's initiative, too.

4.c3

A natural reply to Black's third move.

4...♗a5 5.♗a3!?

The knight goes on c4: White wants to get the most from the awkward position of the black bishop.

5...♗b6

5...♗ge7?! is bad in view of 6.♗c4±, promising Black great difficulties in defence.

6.♗c4 d6

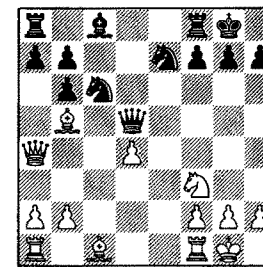
In case of 6...♗f6 an immediate attack in the centre is possible, and 7.d4!? ♗xe4 8.♗xb6 axb6 9.dxe5 d5 10.exd6 ♗xd6 11.♗e2 ♗f6 12.♗g5 ♗g6 13.♗f4 0-0 14.0-0 ♖d8 15.♗d3 ♗h5 16.♗g5 ♗xd1 17.♖fxd1 h6 18.

♗e4 ♗e8 19.♗c4± gave White a better chance owing to his bishop pair in Psakhis – Berkovich, Tel Aviv 1992.

7.d4 exd4 8.cxd4 d5 9.exd5 ♗xd5 10.♗a4 ♗ge7

10...♗d7?! is dubious, as the delay of the kingside development might cost Black very dearly. After 11.0-0 ♗ge7 12.♖e1 a6 13.♗xc6 ♗xc6 14.♗a3 ♗e6 15.♗g5! White launched a powerful attack in the game Jansa – Hector, Kerteminde 1991; neither Black achieved a clear equality after 10...a6 11.♗xb6 cxb6 12.♗c4 ♗a5+ 13.♗xa5 ♗xa5 14.♗e5 ♗e6 15.♗xe6 fxe6 16.♗d2 ♗c6 17.♗c4 ♖d8 18.♗xb6 ♖xd4 19.0-0-0 ♗f6 20.♗c3± when he had a weakness on e6, and White's bishop was stronger than his knight in Sax – Hector, Haninge 1990.

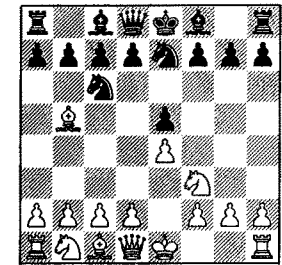
11.♗xb6 cxb6 12.0-0 0-0



13.♖e1±

Lima – Hector, Manila 1992. White maintains a stable advantage with his pair of bishops in the open position and the passed d-pawn, besides Black's queenside pawn structure is spoiled.

b) 3...♗ge7
(The Cozio Defence)



This method of the development is more playable, introducing one more minor piece into the fight, even though the diagonal for development of the f8-bishop turns out blocked, as a result. To make use of this circumstance White used to play

4.0-0

Black's best answer seems to be:

4...g6

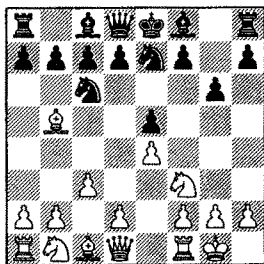
In case of 4...d6 after 5.d4! exd4 (5...♗d7 is possible as well, but after 6.d5± White exchanges the light-squared bishop, and in the subsequent struggle he stands better) 6.♗xd4 ♗d7 7.♗c3 g6?! (Black fails to develop normally, so perhaps he should confine himself to 7...♗xd4 8.♗xd4±, still experiencing problems with the development). 8.♗g5! emphasising the weakness of the dark squares in the opponent's camp: 8...♗g7 9.♗d5!±.

Also Black's position is quite passive in case of 4...♗g6 5.c3 d6 (5...a6 6.♗c4!? ♗a5 7.♗e2 ♗f4 8.d4 ♗xe2+ 9.♗xe2 exd4 10.

cx4±) 6.d4 ♘d7 7.d5 ♖b8 8. ♘xd7+ ♗xd7 9.c4 ♙e7 10.♗c3 0-0 11.♙e3± when the difference in prospects of White's and Black's minor pieces is obviously to White's favour.

Still Black has 4...a6 5.♙a4 (interesting is 5.♙c4!? ♗g6 6.c3 ♙e7 7.d4 d6 8.♙e3±) 5...d6 6.c3 ♘d7 7.d4 transposing into the Modern Steinitz Defence.

5.c3



5...♙g7

In the event of 5...d6 White has the strong resource of 6.d4 ♘d7 7.dxe5 dxe5 and then 8. ♙c4!?± putting unpleasant pressure upon Black's kingside and threatening with ♖b3 or ♗g5.

5...a6 6.♙a4 ♙g7 (the line 6...d6 7.d4 produces variations of the Modern Steinitz Defence, Book II). 7.d4 exd4 8.cxd4 b5 (8...d5 after 9.exd5 ♗xd5 10.♞e1 ♙e6 11.♙g5 results in a position similar to the variation of 5...♙g7 6.d4 exd4 7.cxd4 d5 8.exd5 ♗xd5 9.♞e1+ ♙e6 10.♙g5 only White's light-squared bishop does not hang in lines any more, and perhaps Black's a-pawn would look better on a7 because on a6 it is

more vulnerable). 9.♙b3 (On this very square, maintaining control over d5). 9...0-0 10.♗c3 d6 11. ♗d5!? (White's idea is to keep the light-squared bishop on the a2-g8 diagonal even if he has to exchange a pair of minor pieces to achieve this, and at the same time he prevents the thrust ♙g4 that could be possible in case of 11.a3 ♙g4⇒) 11...h6 (11...♙g4 meets the unpleasant 12.♙g5). 12.♗xe7+ ♗xe7 13.♙e3± allows White to maintain his advantage due to his prevalence in the centre and superior activity of his pieces.

6.d4 exd4

Black wants to attack the enemy pawn centre immediately by a counterstroke on the seventh move, more passive play promises him no good prospects, for example: 6...0-0 7.d5 a6 8.♙e2 ♗a7 (8...♗b8 9.d6↑) 9.c4 or 6...a6 7.♙xc6!? ♗xc6 8.d5±.

7.cxd4 d5

Passive play can't solve Black's problems again:

after 7...0-0 8.d5 ♗e5 9.♗xe5 ♙xe5 10.f4 ♙g7 White delivers the mighty blow of 11.f5!↑ developing a perceptible initiative on the kingside;

while the move 7...a6 after 8.♙a4 stirs the play into the variation with 5...a6.

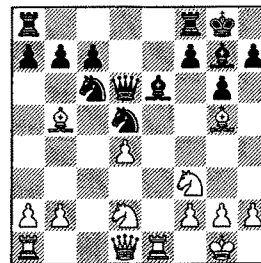
8.exd5 ♗xd5

Another capture 8...♙xd5?! adds fuel to the fire of White's attack: 9.♗c3 ♖h5 10.♙xc6+ bxc6 11.♞e1±.

9.♙g5

Also the preliminary check 9.♞e1+ is possible, but after 9...♙e6 10.♙g5 ♙d6 the play gets transposed into the 9.♙g5 variation.

9...♙d6 10.♞e1+ ♙e6 11. ♗bd2 0-0



12.♗e4

This move introduces the main line in this variation, but 12.♗c4!? ♖b4 13.a4 deserves a serious examination as well (also good is 13.♙xc6 bxc6 14.♖c1 ♞fe8 15.♙d2 ♖b5 16.a4 ♖a6 17.♗ce5± emphasising the weakness of Black's pawn structure, Djordjevic – Stankovic, Nis 1993) 13...a6 14.♙xc6 bxc6 15.♗fe5 ♞fe8 16.♞c1 ♖b7 17.♙d2 ♗e7 18.b4± fixing the weak points in Black's position that can't be covered with his bishop pair, Palac – D'Amore, Baden 1999.

12...♖b4 13.♙xc6 bxc6 14. ♖c1 ♞fe8

Black's play was hopeless after 14...♖b6 15.♙h6 ♞fe8 16. ♙xg7 ♖xg7 17.♗c5± in Jansa – Schwarzkopf, Badenweiler 1990.

15.h3 ♞ab8

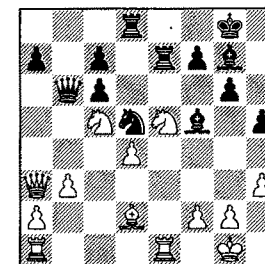
15...♖b6!? offered by I.Soko-

lov deserves attention, the best answer to keep up the advantage being 16.♗c5!?, while the alluring 16.♙h6 fails in view of 16... ♙f5!, hanging up White's pieces.

16.b3 ♙f5 17.♙d2 ♖b6

Black had real problems after 17...♖f8 18.♗g3 ♞xe1+ 19. ♙xe1 ♘d7 20.♗e5 ♖e8 21.♖c5 ♙xe5 22.dxe5 ♖xe5 23.♞d1 ♞a8 24.♙a5 ♙e8 25.♞e1 ♙d6 26. ♖xd6 cxd6 27.♗e4± when White gained a substantial advantage in the ending owing to the obvious weakness of the dark squares in Black's camp in Tseshkovsky – Dreev, Moscow 1992.

18.♗c5 h5 19.♗e5 ♞bd8 20.♖a3 ♞e7



21.♞ac1±

Wolff – I.Sokolov, Biel 1993. White parried the opponent's tactical threats and fixed the weak points in Black's position, yet Black's defensive resources are still big enough.

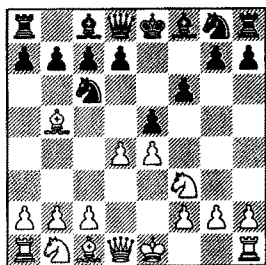
c) 3...f6

A low-grade move, which the first World Champion W.Steinitz sometimes played. The only plus of this move is the strengthen-

ing of the e5-square, but it has much more vital shortcomings: it delays the development, deprives the g8-knight of a nice f6-square, weakens the black king's position... If White is resolute, he can claim a considerable advantage. That is why this Black's third move is played very rarely nowadays.

4.d4

This is certainly the best move. White can choose later the best side for castling.



4...d4

Black also tried other possibilities, but everywhere White obtained a big advantage after correct play:

4...d5?! Horner – Griffin, IECG 1996. This move is too bold and reckless! 5.dxe5! fxe5 6.♖h5+ g6 (6...♗e7 7.♙xc6 bxc6 8.♙g5+ ♗f6 9.dxe5 dxe4 10.exf6+ gxf6 11.♙xf6+ ♗xf6 12.♖h4 ♗g7 13.♖xd8 ♙b4+ 14.♖d2 ♙xd2+ 15.♗xd2+-) 7.♖xe5+ ♗f7 (7...♖e7 8.♖xh8 ♖xe4+ 9.♙e3 ♖xg2 10.♙f1+-) 8.♖xh8 ♗f6 9.0-0 ♗xd4 10.e5+-;

4...a6. Black does not get enough compensation for the

sacrificed e5-pawn, although White certainly should not underestimate his opportunities. 5.♙xc6 dxc6 6.dxe5 fxe5 (6...♖xd1+ 7.♗xd1 ♙g4 8.♙f4 0-0-0 9.♗bd2 g5 10.♙g3±) 7.♖xd8+ ♗xd8 8.♗xe5+- Gaboleiro – Silva, Marinha Grande 2000;

4...d6 5.d5 a6 6.♙a4 b5 7.dxc6 bxa4 8.c4 ♙g4 9.♖xa4 ♙xf3 10.gxf3± Boucqueau – Woodfin, IECG 2000, and White's extra pawn is more significant than his slightly weakened kingside pawns;

This unusual development is hardly good: 4...♙d6 5.c3! ♗ge7 6.♗bd2. The idea of ♗d2-c4 is dangerous for Black. 6...exd4 (6...0-0 7.♗c4±) 7.cxd4 ♗g6 8.0-0±; 4...♗xd4 5.♗xd4 exd4 (5...c6 6.♙c4 exd4 7.♖xd4±. The d-pawn will remain weak for a long time.) 6.♖xd4 c6 7.♙c4 ♖a5+ 8.♗c3 ♖c5 9.♖d3 ♗e7 10.♙e3± Em.Lasker – Kahn, New York 1928. Black's queen is in for long and joyless wandering all over the board;

4...exd4 5.♗xd4 ♗xd4 (5...♙b4+ 6.c3 ♗xd4 7.♖xd4±; 5...♗ge7 6.♗c3 ♗xd4 7.♖xd4 ♗c6, Neusel – Karwatzki, Germany 1988, 8.♖d5 ♗e5 9.f4 c6 10.♖d4±; 5...♖e7 6.♗c3 ♖e5?! 7.♗f3 ♖h5, Galego – Cordovil, Lisbon 1997, 8.♗d5 ♙d6 9.0-0±; 5...a6, Salinardi – Zucchi, Chivilcoy 1987, 6.♙c4! ♖e7 7.♗c3 ♖c5!? A peculiar double attack on White's bishop and knight, however, it does not save Black from his

problems. 8.♙xg8 ♖xd4 9.♖h5+ g6 10.♖d5!±) 6.♖xd4 c6 (6...b6 7.♙c4 ♙c5 8.♖d5+-; 6...♙d6 7.f4±; 6...c5 7.♖d5 ♖a5+ 8.♗c3±; 6...a6 7.♙c4± Shahin – Shquti, Istanbul 1998) 7.♙c4 ♗e7 (7...c5 8.♖d5±; 7...♖c7 8.0-0 ♙d6, "Junior 5.0" – "Crafty 16.6", Utrecht 1999, 9.f4 ♖b6 10.♙e3 ♖xd4 11.♙xd4±) 8.♗c3 ♗g6 (8...♖b6 9.♖d1! ♗g6 10.0-0±) 9.0-0 ♖b6, Comte – Marchal, Jeune 1996, 10.♖d1±.

5.dxe5 ♗xe5

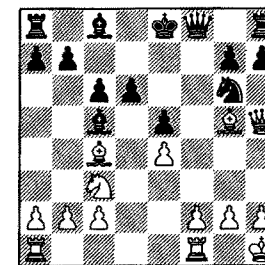
5...fxe5 6.♗c3 ♗g6 7.♗d5±.

6.♗xe5 fxe5 7.♗c3 ♗g6 8.0-0 ♙c5 9.♗h1 c6 10.♙c4 ♖f6

10...♖h4 11.f4 exf4 12.♙xf4 ♗xf4 13.g3 ♖g5 14.♙xf4±.

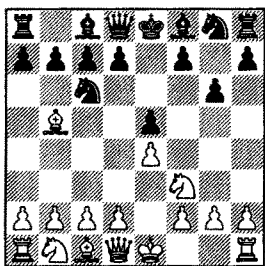
11.♖h5 d6 12.♙g5 ♖f8

1.e4 e5 2.♗f3 ♗c6 3.♙b5



13.f4 1-0 Daniuszewski – Rubinstein, Lodz 1907. This brilliant game has become a part of chess history turning into a requiem for 3...f6. If a small wonder happens and your opponent "surprises" you with this archaic opening, do not be upset – it is a rare chance for you to score a quick and beautiful win!

Chapter 15

1.e4 e5 2.♘f3 ♘c6 3.♖b5 g6
Fianchetto Defence

This old and frequently played on different levels variation has not lost its significance nowadays. It gives White considerable freedom for his activity, but decisive advantage for him has not been found yet (and it is not likely to expect such a deed for the near future). White's edge is hardly much bigger than in other, more popular systems. Hence we suggest you the sharpest idea, connected with a pawn sacrifice as early as on move 5. The arising positions demand Black's utmost attentiveness and thorough knowledge from the very beginning of the game.

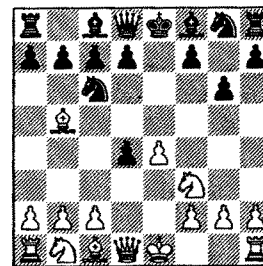
4.d4 exd4

4...♗g7?! is obviously an incorrect move, making Black's chances worse. The e5-pawn is too precious for "sacrificing" it so

thoughtlessly. 5.♗xc6 dxc6 6.♗xe5 ♖e7 (6...c5 7.♗e3 ♖e7 8.♖d3! cxd4 9.♗xd4±) 7.♗c3 ♗xe5. Now Black's dark squares are weak, but otherwise he will simply be a pawn down. 8.dxe5 ♖xe5 9.♗e3± Dobrotin – Korotkov, Moscow 1996.

It may seem strange, but capturing with the knight promises White a stable advantage... in the endgame. 4...♗xd4 5.♗xd4 exd4 6.♖xd4 ♖f6 (Black hopes to solve his defensive problems by exchanging the queens. Illogical is 6...♗f6?! 7.e5 c5 8.♖h4 ♖a5+ 9.♗c3 ♗d5 10.♗d2 ♗xc3 11.♗xc3 ♖xb5 12.e6 dxe6 13.♗xh8+-; 7...♗h5 8.♗c3±) 7.e5 ♖b6 (Too provocative is 7...♖e7 8.0-0! ♗g7 9.♖e1 c6 10.♗c3!±. Having such a tremendous advantage in development, White should not pay attention to trifles like possible loss of the b5-bishop. 10...cxb5 11.♗d5 ♖d8 12.♖c5+-) 8.♖xb6 (The queen's retreat to d3 has been tested in tournaments, but White has excellent chances in the ending, so there is no necessity to seek complications for the sake of the complications.) 8...

axb6 9.♗c3 c6 (9...♖a5 is inventive, but after the simple 10.Bd2 c6 11.Be2 it turns out that the capture of the e5-pawn is dubious: 11...♖xe5 12.♗a4. The problem is not only in the b6-pawn, also the bishop is going to c3. 12...d6 13.♗xb6 ♗g4 14.f3 ♗f5 15.♗c3 ♗xc2 16.♗c4 f6 17.♗xe5 dxe5 18.♖d2 ♗f5 19.♗d3 ♗h6+ 20.♖c2±) 10.♗c4! d5 11.exd6 ♗xd6 12.0-0 ♗f5 13.♖e1+ ♖f8 14.♗e3. Despite the simplification, Black's lag in development causes him lots of trouble. 14...♖g7 15.♖ad1 ♗c5 16.♗b3 ♗f6 17.♗xc5 bxc5 18.♖e7 ♗d5 19.♗xd5 cxd5 20.♗xd5±, and White soon won in the game Van den Bosch – Loman, the Hague 1929.

**5.c3!?**

This very pawn sac is our suggestion to you. It undoubtedly has enough right to exist – White not only wins a tempo for development, but also can use the open c-file to his benefit.

5...dxc3

Of course, like in all gambit variations, it is better for Black to take the gift.

It is unbelievable that the

timid reply 5...d3 6.♖xd3 ♗g7, Velimirovic – Mukhametov, Cetinje 1992, could be more promising. We suggest to continue the sharp course by 7.h4!? This is GM A.Bezgodov's move. 7...♗f6 (the other development of the knight is unconvincing: 7...♗ge7 8.h5, and after that White's attack may soon become dangerous; Black has lots of weaknesses after the unforced by events move 7...h5?! 8.♗g5±; 7...h6 8.♗f4±) 8.h5! The fact that White obtains the open h-file for his attack is more important now than inessential loss of a pawn. 8...♗xh5 9.♗g5 ♗f6 (Also after 9...f6 10.♗e3 ♗e5 11.♗xe5 fxe5 12.♗d2 White has an obvious lead in development.) 10.♗h6 d6 11.♗bd2, and after 0-0-0 White obtains a strong initiative;

Immediately loses 5...d5? 6.♖xd4+-, and Black suffers material losses;

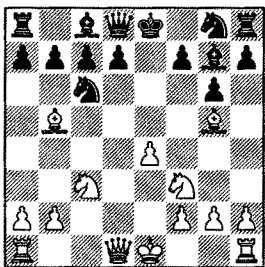
5...♗g7?! A move without any idea; Black voluntarily cedes mastery in the centre to his opponent. 6.cxd4 ♗ge7 (6...a6 7.♗a4 b5 8.♗b3 d6, T.Hernandez – Velez, Fuerteventura 1992, 9.d5! ♗e5 10.♗xe5 dxe5 11.0-0±) 7.d5 ♗e5, Dochev – Zshivkov, Bulgaria 1991, 8.d6. A typical blocking move, hindering the development of Black's queen-side. 8...cxd6 9.♗c3±, and Black cannot easily complete the deployment of his pieces;

5...a6 6.♗c4 d3 7.0-0 h6, Mahia – Aguila, Argentine 1986,

8. ♖b3 ♖e7 9. ♗xd3 ♘f6 10.c4 ♗g7 11. ♘c3 0–0 12. ♖e1±. White's advantage is stable because he has the important d5–outpost where his knight can jump at the right moment.

6. ♘xc3 ♗g7 7. ♗g5

An important reserve for White's attack. Of course, Black can fence off the threat to his queen by different means, but all of them are rather inconvenient for him.



7...f6

Now the pawn deprives Black's pieces of the nice f6–square, moreover, the king's position is being weakened. But is it possible to find something better? We are not sure about it. Judge for yourself:

7... ♘f6?? 8. ♗xc6 bxc6 9.e5+–;
7... ♘g7 8. ♗d5 h6 9. ♗f6 ♗xf6 10. ♘xf6+ ♖f8 11. ♖d2. It is hard to show a good way for Black's development. For example: 11... ♘g8 12. ♗d5 ♘f6 13. ♖c3 ♖g7 14. 0–0–0 ♖e8 15. ♖he1 a6 16. ♗xc6 bxc6 17. ♘b4 ♗b7 18. ♘e5 d6 19. ♘exc6 ♗xc6 20. ♘xc6 ♖c8 21. h3! White should hinder Black's queen from going to g4.

21... ♖e6 22. b3 ♖h7 23. e5±;

7... ♗f6, G.Perez – Amorosi, Italy 1999. White is not too afraid to exchange the dark–squared bishops – he can effectively make use of the weak dark squares in the opponent's camp. But first it is possible to strengthen the position by the move 8.h4! h6 (it is too dangerous to open up the h–file to the white rook: 8... ♗xg5 9. hxg5±) 9. ♗xf6 ♖xf6 (9... ♘xf6 10.e5 ♘g4 11. ♖e2 0–0 12. 0–0–0±) 10. e5! ♖e6 (in case of the capture 10... ♘xe5? 11. ♖e2+– the knight is lost) 11. ♗d5 ♖d8 12. 0–0 ♘g7 13. ♗c4±.

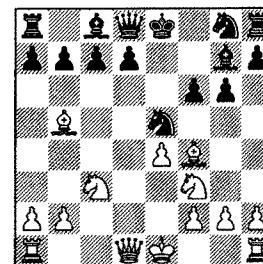
8. ♗f4 ♘e5!

GM V.Smyslov's witty move is probably Black's best chance to repulse the attack. With so many pieces on the board Black has only little hope to successfully finish his development, so he tries to weaken the efficacy of the incoming attack by trading some pieces. Of course, it is necessary to examine his other attempts as well:

8... ♘g7 9. ♖b3! This move hinders Black's castling. 9... d6 (the black king soon got into trouble after 9... a6 10. ♗e2 d6 11. 0–0 ♗d7 12. ♖ac1 ♖c8 13. ♖fd1 ♘e5 14. ♗xe5 fxe5 15. ♘g5 ♗h6 16. ♖f7+ ♖d8 17. h4 ♗xg5 18. hxg5 ♖e8 19. f4 ♗e6 20. ♖f6 exf4 21. e5 ♖d7 22. exd6 cxd6 23. ♘e4 1–0 Har Zvi – Ballon, Agios Nikolaos 1995) 10. 0–0 ♗d7 11. ♗d5 ♘a5 (11... a6 12. ♗e2 ♖b8 13. ♗e3! ♘xd5 14. exd5 ♘e5 15.

♗a7 ♖a8 16. ♖xb7±) 12. ♗xd7+ ♖xd7 13. ♖c3 ♘ac6 14. ♘xf6+ ♗xf6 15. ♖xf6 0–0–0 16. ♖c3 d5 17. ♘e5 d4 18. ♖d3 ♖e6! 19. ♘xc6 ♘xc6 20. ♖fc1 ♖he8 21. f3± Yermolinsky – Kreiman, New York 1993. White has obtained a positional advantage because his king is in a safer position, his bishop is stronger than the black knight, and his pawns are better placed;

Developing the knight on the edge of the board 8... ♘h6 does not promise Black an easy life: 9. ♘d5 d6 10. ♘d4 ♗d7 11. ♖c1 0–0 12. ♘xc6 bxc6 13. ♗xc6±.



9. ♖d4!?

A new and strong move, which has not been played yet.

9... ♘xf3+

9... ♘e7? Black does not manage to win back the pawn: 10. ♘xe5 fxe5 11. ♗xe5+–;

9... ♘c6 10. ♗xc6 bxc6 11. e5 ♖b8 12. 0–0! In such a perfect position White should not expose his king even to a small risk, castling long. 12... f5 13. ♗g5 ♘e7 14. ♗f6 0–0 15. ♘g5±.

10. gxf3 ♘e7

10... c6 11. 0–0 cxb5 12. ♘xb5±;

10... ♗h6 11. ♖e3 ♗xf4 12. ♖xf4 c6 13. ♗c4±.

11. ♗a4!?

A cunning move – not determining his king's position yet, White takes away in advance his bishop from possible attacks and at the same time vacates the promising b5–square for his knight.

11... ♘c6

Obviously disadvantageous is 11... 0–0? 12. ♖c4+ d5 13. exd5±.

12. ♖c4 a6

12... ♘e5 13. ♗xe5 fxe5 14. ♘b5 c6 15. ♘d6+ ♖e7 16. ♖b4 ♖f6 17. f4 ♖e7 18. fxe5+ ♖xe5 19. f4+–.

In case of 12... g5 13. ♗g3± White can play h2–h4 or f3–f4 to his benefit.

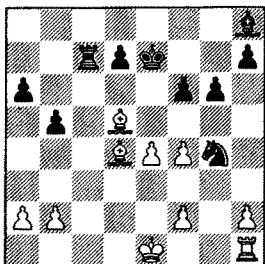
13. ♘d5! b5 14. ♖c3 ♖a7

Black's trouble lies in the fact that it is not easy to recapture the pawn with profit, finishing his development – the opponent retains dangerous threats in all variations! For example: 14... 0–0 15. ♗b3 f5 16. ♖e3 ♖h8 17. ♗xc7 ♖h4 18. ♗g3 f4 19. ♗xf4 ♗xb2 20. ♖b1 ♗g7 21. ♗g5 ♖h5 (21... ♖h3 22. ♘f4 ♖xf4 23. ♖xf4 ♘e5 24. ♖e2 ♗b7 25. ♗f6 ♖e8 26. ♖hd1+–) 22. ♗d1 d6 23. h4! Black's queen is trapped. 23... ♘e5 24. f4 ♘g4 25. ♖g3 ♖e8 26. ♖f1!+–.

15. ♗b3 ♘e5 16. ♗e3 ♖b7 17. f4 ♘g4 18. ♗d4 c6 19. ♖c1!

White threatens to drive away Black's knight from g4, so Black must concede a disadvantageous exchange.

19...cxd5 20.♖xc8 ♖xc8
21.♞xc8+ ♔e7 22.♞xh8 ♘xh8
23.♙xd5 ♞c7

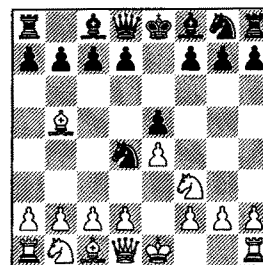


24.♔d2!±

Black escaped the mating threat, but the endgame which arised after a mass simplification, is difficult for him. We can conclude that the gambit variation, which we suggested, offers White excellent chances for a big advantage without long and laborious positional work. This is a rarity for such a solid opening as the Ruy Lopez. White's risky pawn sacrifice is amply rewarded with perfect attacking opportunities.

Chapter 16

1.e4 e5 2.♘f3 ♘c6 3.♙b5 ♘d4
Bird's Defence

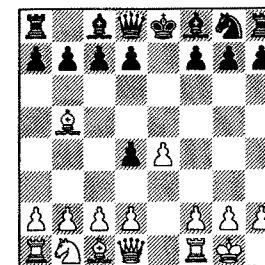


Using certain exposure of the Ruy-Lopez-like bishop on b5, Black tries to put up an immediate fight for the centre by this move. But, as practice shows, this thrust is somewhat early because Black is not prepared for such an active play. Also note the important fact that Black's pawn appearing on d4 is rather a weak point, and the subsequent struggle in this variation will prove this statement.

4.♘xd4 exd4 5.0-0

In case of the immediate transfer of the bishop to a more active position by 5.♙c4!? Black simply answers with 5...c6, stirring play into the main variations, but 5...♘f6!? deserves attention too, and after 6.0-0 ♘xe4 7.♙xf7+ ♔xf7 8.♖h5+ g6 9.♖d5+

♔g7 10.♖xe4 ♖f6 it's unclear how White could gain an advantage.



Black has two main continuations: a) 5...♙c5 and b) 5...c6. White meets 5...♘f6 with 6.e5.

Black has no time for 5...g6. White's best option in this case is to emphasise the sluggishness of Black's development by 6.c3 (but also the immediate advance on the kingside 6.f4!? ♙g7 7.f5 is possible), and after 6...♙g7 7.e5 ♘e7 (certainly not 7...♙xe5? because of 8.♞e1+-) 8.cxd4 0-0 (8...c6 9.♙c4 0-0 10.b3 d5 11.♙d3 ♖b6 12.♙b2± Rios – Moreno, Ciego de Avila 1996) 9.b3 c6 10.♙e2 ♘f5 11.♙b2 ♖b6 12.♘a3 ♘xd4 13.♘c4 ♘xe2+ 14.♖xe2

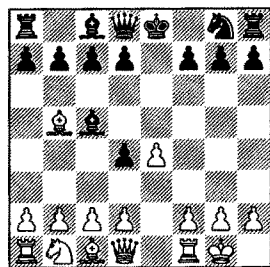
♟a6 15.d3± Black returned the missing pawn but lagged behind in development, and also the weakness of his dark squares was perceptible in Becerra Rivero – Moreno, San Juan 1995.

5...♘e7 is passive. Black prepares d7-d5 after c6, but he experiences difficulties with the kingside development, which allow White to proceed relatively quickly to active play: after 6.d3 c6 (the following attempt to complete the development did not solve Black's problems: 6...g6 7.♗g5 ♗g7 8.♘d2 0-0 9.f4 d6 10.♗c4 ♖h8 11.♞e2 ♞e8 12.♞ae1 ♗d7 13.♞f2 b5 14.♗b3 a5 15.a3 a4 16.♗a2 ♗e6 17.♗xe6 fxe6 18.♞h4± gave White good attacking prospects in the game Moroz – Vladimirov, Barnaul 1988; and no better was 6...♘c6 7.f4 g6 8.♞f3 ♗g7 9.♗xc6 dxc6 10.f5 with an attack in Van Riemsdijk – Trombetta, Mar del Plata 1992) 7.♗c4 d5 8.♗b3 ♗e6 9.f4 g6 10.♞e1 dxe4 11.♗xe6 fxe6 12.♞xe4 ♞d5 13.♞e1± Black did simplify the position, but obtained real pawn weaknesses instead in the game Prie – Anic, Narbonne 1997.

The idea of 5...h5 is quite interesting. (Black invites the opponent to demonstrate his intentions and provokes him to the next, quite consistent action. At the same time, Black maintains control over g4 and prepares a possible attack on the kingside by ♘f6-g4, ♞h4.) 6.c3 (Really

logically, White meets a flank attack with active play in the centre. In case of 6.d3 Black has 6...♘f6, and then 7.f4 ♘g4 with some unclear play). 6...♗c5 (in case of 6...c6 7.♗a4 the hampering 7...d3 is quite dubious because after 8.♞f3± White simply takes the pawn without any compensation for Black, Timman – Marmier, Zurich 1988) 7.cxd4 ♗xd4 8.♘c3 c6 9.♗c4 ♘f6 10.♘e2 ♗b6 11.e5 d5 12.♗b3 ♘g8 13.d4 ♗g4 14.f3 ♗e6 15.♗c2 ♘e7 16.♗g5 ♞d7 17.♗xe7 ♞xe7 18.♞d2 0-0-0 19.♞h1 ♖b8 20.f4 ♗g4 21.♘g1 f6 22.♞ae1± gave Black a fairly active position, yet White's advantage in the centre helped him refute the opponent's thrusts and prepare further improvements of his own position in the game Leko – Morozevich, Moscow 2002.

a) 5...♗c5



6.♗c4

White wants to play ♞h5 on occasion to increase then his pressure on the kingside.

6...d6 7.d3 ♘f6

As shown by practice, other

continuations don't save Black trouble:

7...♘e7 8.♗g5 0-0 9.♞h5 ♗e6 10.♞h4! ♞e8 11.♗xe6 fxe6 12.f4!? ♞d7 13.♞f3! ♘g6 14.♞h5 ♘f8 15.♘d2 a6 16.♞af1 d5 17.♞g3! allowed White to create real threats on the kingside despite certain rigidity of his play in Brenke – Binder, corr. 1996;

7...♞h4 8.♘d2 ♘f6 9.f4 ♗e6 10.♘f3± gave White a development advantage in Hamarat – Burger, corr 1990/93;

7...♗e6 neutralises White's dangerous bishop. But White made use of his development advantage to obtain other positional advantages. And after 8.♗xe6 fxe6 9.♞h5+ g6 10.♞e2 ♞e7 11.♘d2 ♘h6 12.♘b3 ♘f7 13.♘xc5 dxc5 14.♗d2± he stood really better due to his superior pawn structure and the bishop that was stronger than Black's knight in Moldovan – Martinkus, Hollabrunn 1998;

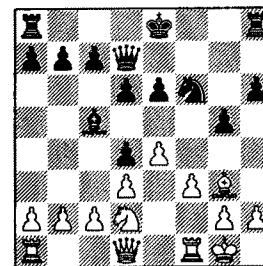
7...c6 8.♞h5 ♞e7 (the problems were not solved after the unnatural 8...♞d7 9.♗g5 h6 10.♘d2 g6 11.♞h4 ♞g4 12.f4 ♖f8 13.h3 ♞xh4 14.♗xh4 f5 15.a4 fxe4 16.♘xe4 b6 17.♗a2 d5 18.♘xc5 bxc5 19.c4 ♘e7 20.♞ac1± in Oll – Guseinov, USSR 1988, when Black did force exchanges but in a worse version) 9.♗g5 ♘f6 10.♞h4 h6 11.♘d2 ♞g8 12.♗xf6 ♞xf6 13.♞xf6 gxf6 14.f4 f5 15.♞ae1± leaves the initiative on White's side in the endgame.

3.♗b5 ♘d4 4.♘d4 ed 5.0-0

7...8.♗g5 h6 9.♗h4 g5 10.♗g3 ♗g4

10...♘g4 promotes White's initiative on the kingside: 11.h3 ♘e5 12.♗b3 ♗e6 13.♞h5 ♗xb3 14.axb3 ♞f6 15.f4±, Gelfand – Kupreichik, Sverdlovsk 1987.

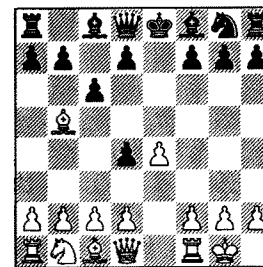
11.f3 ♗e6 12.♘d2 ♞d7 13.♗xe6 fxe6



14.f4±

White stands clearly better owing to his more active pieces and well-positioned pawns, Ghinda – Kotronias, Athens 1986.

b) 5...c6



6.♗c4

In case of 6.♗a4 ♘f6 7.c3 Black has already 7...d3, for example, after the principal 8.♞f3 d5 (worse is the alluring

8...♖a5 in view of 9.♙b3 ♗e5 10.♜xd3 ♘xe4 11.♗e2!, laying stress upon Black's underdevelopment, 11...♙d6 (11...d5 12.d3 ♙d6 13.f4+-) 12.f4 ♗e7 13.♞e1 ♘c5 14.♙xf7±) 9.e5 ♘e4 10.♜xd3 ♘c5 11.♜c2 d4!± Benjamin – Soltis, San Francisco 1998. Black managed to confuse the concord of White's pieces at the cost of a pawn.

6...d5

The fundamental continuation.

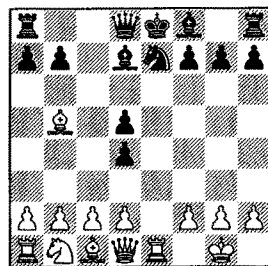
Black's problems do not disappear in the event of 6...♘f6: after 7.♞e1 (7.e5 looks tempting, but then Black has the standard 7...d5!±, and the same is in case of 7.d3 d5!?) 7...d6 8.c3 ♘g4 (8...♜b6 9.♜b3 ♜xb3 10.♙xb3 dxc3 11.bxc3 ♙e7 12.d4± Berczes – Zoltan, Budapest 2002; 8...dxc3 9.♘xc3 ♙e7 10.d4±) 9.h3 ♘e5 10.d3 ♘xc4 11.dxc4 dxc3 12.♘xc3 ♙e7 13.♙f4 0–0 14.♜d3 ♙e6 15.♞ad1± Matanovic – Glikisman, Kraljevo 1967, White left his opponent behind in development and was ready to launch some active operation, also Black's d6-pawn could become a source of trouble for him very soon.

6...d6 is passive, and the following line is the best argument for this estimation: 7.c3! dxc3 (7...b5 8.♙b3 ♗f6 9.a4↑ Kobe – Vucemilovic, Kranj 1995; 7...♘f6 8.♜b3!?) 8.♘xc3 ♙e6 (8...♘f6 9.♜b3 ♗c7 10.d4 b5 11.♙d3 ♞b8 12.♙g5 b4 13.♘e2 ♙e7 14.♞ac1 0–0 15.♜c2± Schneider – Sema-

koff, Gausdal 1981) 9.♙xe6 fxe6 10.d4 ♘f6 11.d5 cxd5 12.exd5 e5 13.♜b3 ♗d7 14.f4 exf4 15.♙xf4 ♙e7 16.♘b5 0–0 17.♘d4 ♙d8 18.♘e6± Panov – Trupan, Moscow 1949. White's active play gained him a substantial positional advantage.

7.exd5 cxd5 8.♙b5+ ♙d7 9.♞e1+ ♘e7

Bad is 9...♙e7? because of the simple 10.♜g4!.



10.c4!?

This way of developing the initiative is relatively new. White undermines Black's position in the centre right away and quite consistently in view of his development advantage.

10...a6

Black's unwillingness to open the position up is very natural, because otherwise in case of 10...♙xb5 11.cxb5 ♜b6 12.♘a3 or 10...dxc4 11.♙xc4 or 10...dxc3 11.♙xd7+ ♜xd7 12.dxc3 he faces great problems every time.

10...♞c8 occurred in the chess practice, but again after 11.d3 ♙xb5 12.cxb5 ♗d7 13.♘a3 f6 14.♘c2 ♜xb5 15.♘xd4 ♗d7 16.♜h5+ g6 17.♜h4 White had a

strong initiative in Luther – Klip, Pardubice 1999.

11.♙xd7 ♜xd7 12.d3 0–0–0

Not good is 12...g6 running into the simple 13.♙g5±.

The plan implying the immediate advance of the black d-pawn is of little use, too: after 12...dxc4 13.dxc4 0–0–0 14.b4 d3 15.♙b2 d2 16.♞e2± Black's retard in development leaves him no hope to take the initiative.

Also Black can't hide his king on the kingside with the help of 12...f6 followed by ♘f7 because of 13.♜h5+ g6 14.♜h4± with White's strong pressure.

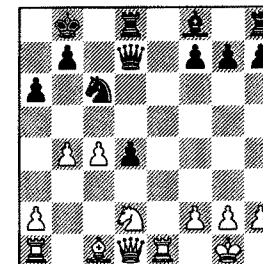
13.♘d2 ♘b8 14.b4 dxc4

It's already hard to refute b5

3.♙b5 ♘d4 4.♘d4 ed 5.0–0

with the unavoidable opening up of the queenside, for example after 14...♘f5 15.b5.

15.dxc4 ♘c6

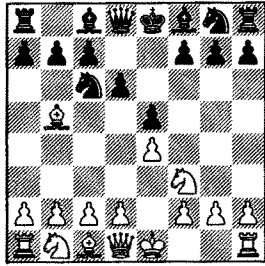


16.b5!±

It's very difficult for Black to oppose White's increasing activity on the queenside, Kasparov – Khalifman, Moscow 2002.

Chapter 17

1.e4 e5 2. ♘f3 ♘c6 3. ♖b5 d6 Old Steinitz Defence



This system used to be Black's main defensive weapon in the XIX century. For many years it has been keeping its reputation of a solid, but passive formation.

4.d4 ♗d7

The move 4... ♗g4?! is dubious 5. dxe5 dxe5 6. ♗xd8+ ♖xd8 7. ♗xc6+ bxc6 8. ♗e3. In the endgame White has an advantage thanks to his better pawn structure, Duras – Marshall, Nurnberg 1906.

In case of 4... exd4 the capture by the knight 5. ♗xd4 ♗d7 6. ♘c3 leads to positions which are considered below; 5. ♗xd4 can be reached from Philidor's Defence as well.

5. ♘c3

Black has two fundamentally

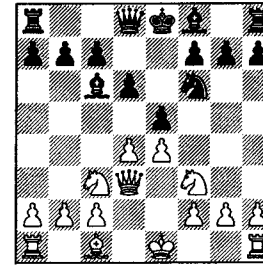
different options: one is to develop his pieces granting the opponent the right to make the important decisions a) 5... ♘f6, or immediately relieve the tension in the centre b) 5... exd4.

Steinitz's most favourite continuation 5... ♗ge7 does not yield an equality. 6. dxe5 (Em. Lasker played against Steinitz more than once 6. ♗c4 ♗xd4 7. ♗xd4 exd4 8. ♗xd4 ♗c6 9. ♗e3± with a minute advantage) 6... ♗xe5 (6... dxe5 7. ♗e3 ♗g6 8. ♗e2 ♗d6 9. 0-0-0 a6 10. ♗xc6 ♗xc6 11. h4↑. White has an initiative – the knight failed to find a comfortable stand, Av. Bykhovskiy – A. Ivanov, Lviv 1974) 7. ♗xe5 dxe5 (of course, not 7... ♗xb5 8. ♗xf7!) 8. ♗c4! ♗e6 (bad is 8... ♗g6? 9. ♗d5 ♗e6 10. ♗xb7! ♗xc4 11. ♗c6+) 9. ♗xe6 ♗xd1+ 10. ♗xd1 fxe6 11. f3±. White has a slight but lasting endgame advantage. Black's doubled pawns make the manoeuvring of his pieces more difficult, Rozentalis – I. Sokolov, Tilburg 1993.

a) 5... ♘f6 6. ♗xc6 ♗xc6 7.

♗d3

White prepares a long castling, leaving a choice for his bishop.



7... exd4

The best continuation.

Poor is 7... ♗e7 8. ♗g5 h6 9. ♗xf6 ♗xf6 10. dxe5 dxe5 11. ♗d5 ♗d6 12. 0-0-0± with the idea of ♗c3 and Black will have to play f7-f6 irreversibly weakening the kingside's light squares, Tatai – Calvo, Palma de Mallorca 1967.

The position after 7... ♗d7 occurred twice in Nimzowitsch's practice. In his game against Breyer he was tempted by the straightforward 8. d5, but after 8... ♗c5 9. ♗c4 ♗d7 10. b4 ♗a6 11. ♗e3 ♗e7 12. 0-0 0-0 13. a4 ♗h8 Black has a clear plan of counterplay, which is in f7-f5 and it compensates for the knight's awkward position, Nimzowitsch – Breyer, Gothenburg 1920. Seven years later Nimzowitsch got a chance to demonstrate an improvement: 8. ♗e3 exd4 9. ♗xd4! f6 10. ♗h4! ♗c5 11. ♗e2 ♗d7 12. ♗f5± and White has a clear advantage thanks to the

activity of his pieces' harmonious position, Nimzowitsch – L. Steiner, Bad Niendorf 1927.

8. ♗xd4 ♗e7

The idea of fianchettoing the dark-squared bishop is dubious: 8... g6?! 9. ♗g5 (White should not be allured by the pawn 9. ♗xc6?! bxc6 10. ♗a6 ♗d7 11. ♗b7 ♖c8 12. ♗xa7 ♗g7 13. 0-0 0-0, as shown by the famous game Nimzowitsch – Capablanca, St. Petersburg 1914) 9... ♗g7 10. 0-0-0 ♗d7 (10... 0-0? immediately loses to 11. ♗xc6 bxc6 12. e5 dxe5 13. ♗f3 and Black resigned in view of 13... ♗e7 14. ♗e4, Kutuzovic – Dobrovolsky, Harkany 1994) 11. h3! 0-0 12. ♖he1± with White's overwhelming position in the centre, Alekhine – Brinckmann, Kecskemet 1927.

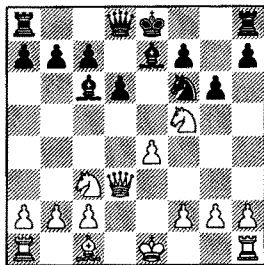
Almost the same assessment can be attributed to the continuation 8... ♗d7 9. ♗g5 ♗e7 10. 0-0-0 0-0 11. ♗f5 ♖fe8 12. ♖he1 ♗d8 13. f4±, White's onslaught unfolds with no hitches, Alekhine – Pedreira, Santa Cruz 1945.

Possible is 8... ♗d7 guarding the f5-square. After 9. ♗g5 ♗e7 10. 0-0-0 0-0 11. f4 ♗e8 12. ♗xe7 ♗xe7 13. ♗d5 ♗d8 14. g4! ♗f6 15. ♗f5± White's positional advantage is obvious, still the defence is not exhausted, Spielmann – Maroczy, Gothenburg 1920.

9. ♗f5 g6

With 9... 0-0 Black falls under a pin along the h4-d8 diagonal:

10.♔g5 ♕d7 11.♞xe7+ ♖xe7 12. 0-0-0 ♕c6 13.♗d4 ♞fe8 14.f3± and after the exchanges on f6 White acquires a comfortable endgame, Wedberg – Abramovic, New York 1990.

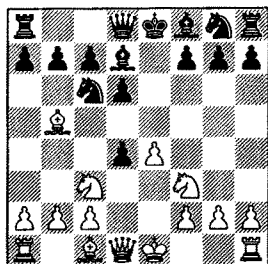


10.♞g7+!? (also possible is 10.♞d4 – the loss of tempo is irrelevant, and the weakening of g7-g6 will tell further) 10...♗f8 11.♕h6 ♖g8 12.♞f5! ♞g4 (With 12...♕f8 13.♕xf8 ♗xf8 14.♞e3 ♞e8 15.f3± White has a stable advantage: Black's major pieces have bad positions, his bishop is restrained by the enemy pawn chain. After the short castling and the move ♗d4, which weakens the queenside, White can expand on this flank with his pawns. There is a good d5-square in sight for his knights). 13. ♞xe7+ ♖xe7 14.♕f4 (Now if everything goes quietly White plays f2-f3 and gets a position which has a lot in common with the one which has been considered in the previous note, with the only difference that instead of the knight White has a dark-squared bishop left. This fact makes the plan with the long

castling and the onset on the kingside much promising. Black can complicate the play). 14... f5 15.f3 ♞e5 16.♗e3 fxe4 17. fxe4 ♞g4 18.♗d4±. Despite the isolation of the e4-pawn, White retains better chances, as Black has weakened the squares around his king and the h8-rook is still out of play.

Let us consider the immediate surrender of the centre.

b) 5...exd4



6.♞xd4 ♞f6

Other options are:

6...♞xd4 7.♗xd4 ♞f6 (or 7... ♕xb5 8.♞xb5 ♗d7 9.c4± and White has the upper hand – he controls the key squares) 8.0-0 ♕xb5 9.♞xb5 a6 10.♞c3 ♕e7 11. b3 0-0 12.♕b2±. The exchange of two pairs of minor pieces did not rid Black of all his problems. White has an annoying pressure along the long diagonal, the d5-square needs a watch while with the move c7-c6 Black weakens the d6-pawn, Euwe – Wiersma, Amsterdam 1920;

6...g6 7.♕e3 ♕g7 8.♗d2 ♞f6 (on 8...♞ge7 White can immedi-

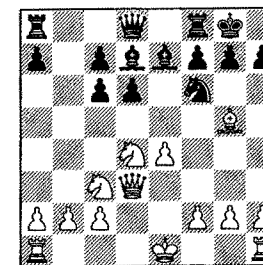
ately reveal his aggressive intentions on the kingside by 9.h4) 9.♕xc6! (The standard 9.f3 0-0 10.0-0-0 meets the tactical objection 10...♞xd4 11.♕xd4 ♞xe4! 12.♞xe4 – in case of capture by the pawn Black exchanges on d4 and checks on g5 by the queen – 12...♕xb5 13.♗c3!? ♕xd4 14.♗xd4 f5! 15.♗d5+ ♖g7 16.♞xd6 ♗g5+ 17.♞d2 ♕c6= with equalization, Minasian – Morozevich, Jurmala 1992) 9...bxc6 10.♕h6 0-0 11.♕xg7 ♖xg7 12. 0-0-0 ♞e8 13.f3 with a clear intention to advance the kingside's pawns. Black's counterplay is too sluggish. After the, say, 13... ♗b8 14.g4 ♗b4 15.a3 ♗b7 16.♞de1! ♞ab8 17.♞d1 c5 18.♞e2 ♞e5 19. ♞g3 ♕c6 20.h4± White's edge is tangible, Psakhis – Haik, Sochi 1985.

7.♕xc6 bxc6 8.♗d3

After the frequently seen 8.♗f3, depending on the situation, White makes his choice between invading f5 with the knight or pushing e4-e5, however tournament experience proves that Black's defensive potential is sufficient. Here comes the idea of preparing a long castle, leaving a freeway to the f-pawn.

8...♕e7 9.♕g5 0-0

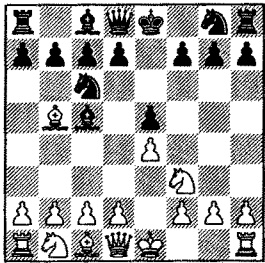
3.♕b5 d6 4.d4 ♕d7 5.♞c3



10.0-0-0↑

In comparison to the game Psakhis – Haik, White will find it difficult to develop his attack since the pawn shelter of the enemy king is still unharmed. However Black is deprived of real counterplay and will have to endure the lasting initiative of the opponent. 10...♞e8 (after 10... ♞g4 11.♕xe7 ♖xe7 12.♗g3 ♞f6 13.♞he1 ♞fe8 14.f4 the threat e4-e5 is hard to deflect, Hug – Moles, Stockholm 1969) 11.f3 ♗c8 12.h4 ♗b7 13.g4 ♞ab8 14. b3± ♖h8 (White meets the counter in the centre 14...d5 by 15.e5 ♕a3+ 16.♖b1 ♞xe5 17.♕xf6 gxf6 18.f4 ♞ee8 19.g5 with a dangerous attack). White has different ways to develop his offensive. In Velicka – Ramik, Brno 1995 White threw in a pawn 15.h5 ♞xg4 16.♕xe7 ♞e5 17.♗e3 ♞xe7 18.h6, obtaining a nice compensation in the form of open files on the kingside.

Chapter 18

1.e4 e5 2. ♖f3 ♗c6 3. ♘b5 ♙c5
Classical Defence

Black is not stopping d2-d4 for White with this development of the bishop; he has no resources to do that. On the contrary – the idea is much rather to provoke d4 in order to counterattack White's centre later.

4.c3

The most solid line for Black is 4... ♗f6 5.0–0 0–0 6.d4 ♘b6, and we are going to study it in Chapter 23 after the following move order 3... ♗f6 4.0–0 ♙c5.

Now there are two main lines: **a) 4...f5** and **b) 4...♗e7**. Let's have a look first at some other inferior variations for Black.

The move 4...d6? is not to be recommended. After 5.d4 exd4 6.cxd4 the natural 6... ♘b4+ is met with 7. ♖f1 and the pin of the knight becomes deadly for Black, because of the misplaced ♘b4. If

7... ♙d7 – 8. ♖a4 wins a piece, Em.Lasker – Richards, New York (simul) 1892. 7...d5 was played in another simul-game of an actual World Champion Alekhine – De Carvalho, Hong Kong (simul) 1933, and White could have achieved a decisive advantage with 8. ♖b3! dxe4 9. ♗e5. If Black plays 7...a6, after 8. ♙xc6+ bxc6 9. ♖a4 ♖b8 10.a3+, the bishop has no retreat squares. Black's best chance 6... ♘b6 7.d5 a6 8. ♙a4 ♙a5+ 9. ♙d2 ♙xd2+ 10. ♗bxd2 b5 11.dxc6 bxa4 12. ♖xa4+ leaves him with a pawn down without any compensation.

4...d5 is met with 5. ♗xe5 ♖g5 (Black loses a piece after 5... ♙xf2+ 6. ♖xf2 ♖f6+ 7. ♗f3 dxe4 8. ♖e1) 6.0–0 ♖xe5 7.d4 ♖e6 (7... ♖d6 8.dxc5 ♖xc5 9. ♖xd5+; 7... ♙xd4 8.cxd4 ♖d6 9.exd5 ♖xd5 10. ♗c3 ♖d6 11.d5 a6 12. ♖a4+) 8.dxc5 dxe4 9. ♙f4±. White has avoided some unnecessary complications with a temporary piece sacrifice and has a clear advantage due to the two bishops, better development and the possibility to attack the c7 and e4-pawns. After 9...a6 10. ♙a4 ♖e7

(10... ♖d7 11. ♗d2 f5 12. ♖e1 ♗f6 13.f3 winning the e4-pawn) 11. ♖e1 f5 12. ♖d5 ♖d7 (12... ♙d7 13. ♙xc7) 13. ♖c4 and Black has problems to castle.

After 4... ♖f6 White should still play 5.d4! (this is stronger than 5.0–0 ♗e7) despite the seemingly excellent central control by Black. 5...exd4 6.e5 ♖g6 (6... ♗xe5? 7. ♖e2 and White wins a piece) 7.cxd4 ♗xd4 (or 7... ♘b4+ 8. ♗c3 ♗ge7 9.0–0 d5 10. ♖b3 ♙xc3 11.bxc3± A.Sokolov – Khartitov, Lviv 1984 and the powerful centre provides White with a lasting advantage) 8. ♗xd4 ♖b6. Black wins a pawn tactically, but after 9. ♖g4! ♖f8 (9... ♙xd4 10. ♖xg7±) 10. ♙e3 ♙xd4 11. ♖xd4 ♖xb5 12. ♗a3± he remains hopelessly behind in development. White easily brings into action the rooks and Black will hardly be able to neutralize the threats with forces that lack coordination.

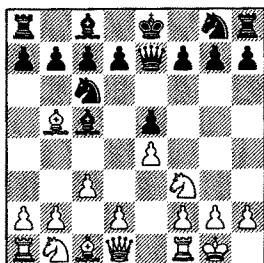
After 4... ♘b6 5.0–0 the development of the knight to e7 leads to a position that we are going to analyse later, while ♗f6 will be treated in the chapter devoted to the move order 3... ♗f6 4.0–0 ♙c5. If White plays 5.d4 Black must choose between 5... ♗f6 and 5...exd4. In the first line White should try with 6.0–0 0–0 to transpose to positions arising after 3... ♗f6 4.0–0 ♙c5, since 6. ♙xc6 dxc6 7. ♗xe5 does not yield White any advantage – 7...0–0 8. ♙g5 ♖e8! 9. ♖f3 ♗xe4

10. ♖xe4 f6 11. ♙f4 fxe5 12. ♙xe5 ♙f5 13. ♖e3 ♖e7. Black prepares c6-c5 with a sufficient compensation for the pawn Chandler – Gulko, Hastings 1989. The dubious 5...exd4 6.cxd4 ♗ce7 has been played numerous times by GM Hector. White managed to obtain a huge advantage in one of the latest games in this line: 7.d5 ♗f6 8. ♗c3 a6 9. ♙a4 0–0 10.d6! cxd6 11. ♙g5 ♗g4 (if 11... ♗c6 White should avoid the trap 12. ♗d5?! ♙xf2+! – the simple 12.0–0 emphasizes the annoying pin along the h4-d8 diagonal) 12.0–0 f6 13. ♙f4 ♗e5 14. ♖c1±. Black's pieces placement looks ugly and the bishops are without good prospects. White's knights can occupy the d5 and f5-squares, creating plenty of tactical motives around the weakened black king, Nijboer – Hector, Wijk aan Zee 2003.

After 4...a6 the retreat of the bishop 5. ♙a4 leads to positions analysed after the sequence 3...a6 4. ♙a4 ♙c5. The more principled line is 5. ♙xc6 dxc6 6. ♗xe5. After 6... ♖e7 White remains with an extra pawn: 7.d4 ♙d6 8.f4 ♙xe5 (8...f6 9.0–0 fxe5 10.fxe5 ♙xe5 11. ♖h5+ g6 12. ♖xe5 ♖xe5 13.dxe5±) 9.dxe5 ♖h4+ 10.g3 ♖h3 11. ♖f3 ♙g4 12. ♖f1 ♖h5 13. ♗d2 and Black's counterplay on the light squares is not sufficient to equalize. If 6... ♖g5, then 7.0–0 ♖xe5 8.d4 ♖e7 9.dxc5 ♖xc5 10. ♙f4. We have the pawn structure of the

Exchange Variation, but Black lacks the bishop's pair advantage to compensate for that. White can develop his pieces in the following scheme: ♟d2 , ♞c2 , ♞ae1 retreat the bishop and start pushing the e and f-pawns.

Black tries here often $4... \text{♞e7}$ $5.0-0$.



$5... \text{♟f6?}$ is bad after $6.d4 \text{ ♟b6}$ $7. \text{♟g5}$ and Black has to play $7... \text{h6}$ $8. \text{♟xf6}$ gxf6 in order to defend the e5-outpost. After $9.d5 \text{ ♟d8}$ $10. \text{♟h4}$ White obtained a huge positional advantage, P. Morphy – E. Morphy, New Orleans 1856.

Black tried some awkward looking moves in order to keep control over the centre in some old games like $5... \text{♟b6}$ $6.d4 \text{ f6}$ $7. \text{♟a3}$ ♟d8 $8. \text{♟c4}$ ♟f7 , P. Morphy – Boden, London 1858, but that line seems a bit ridiculous. White has the powerful $9. \text{♞a4!}$ with a nice edge – the threat is to capture on b6 and Black has to recapture with the c-pawn, while $9... \text{c6}$ is unplayable due to $10. \text{♟xc6+-}$.

After $5... \text{a6}$ $6. \text{♟a4}$ b5 $7. \text{♟b3}$ Black has two basic alternatives:

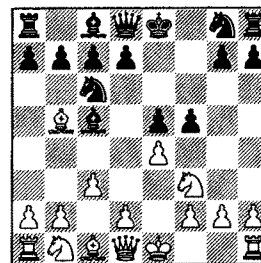
$7... \text{♟f6}$ and $7... \text{d6}$.

$7... \text{♟f6}$ $8.d4 \text{ ♟b6}$. White can pinpoint the weakness of the enemy centre with $9. \text{♟d5!?$ exd4 $10. \text{cxd4}$ and White is better both after $10...0-0$ $11. \text{♞e1}$ h6 (if $11... \text{♟b7}$ the pin after $12. \text{♟g5}$ is rather unpleasant) $12. \text{♟b3}$ d6 $13. \text{♟c3}$ with a space advantage and a powerful pawn centre, as well as in the line $10... \text{♟b7?!}$ $11. \text{♟c3}$ b4 $12. \text{e5!}$ bxc3 $13. \text{exf6}$ ♞xf6 $14. \text{♞e1+}$ ♟f8 $15. \text{bxc3±}$ Sax – Szurovszky, Hungary 1997 – and the mighty centre is restricting Black's pieces considerably, while the black king hinders the coordination of the rooks.

$7... \text{d6}$ $8.d4 \text{ ♟b6}$ $9. \text{♟g5}$ ♟f6 (after $9... \text{f6}$ $10. \text{♟e3}$ Black has problems with his king and the knight on g8, Acs – Szurovszky, Hungary 1998). The position on the board resembles the Arkhangel'sk Variation ($3... \text{a6}$ $4. \text{♟a4}$ ♟f6 $5.0-0$ b5 $6. \text{♟b3}$ ♟c5), but the placement of the queen on e7 enables White to have some additional possibilities, for example after the standard $10.a4 \text{ ♟b7}$ $11. \text{axb5}$ axb5 $12. \text{♞xa8+}$ ♟xa8 $13. \text{d5}$ ♟a5 White can start a kingside operation with $14. \text{♟h4}$ $0-0$ $15. \text{♟f5}$ ♞d8 $16. \text{♟c2}$ and Black has problems defending, because most of his pieces are stranded on the queenside (in case of $13... \text{♟a7}$ the knight manoeuvre is even stronger – $14. \text{♟h4}$ $0-0$ $15. \text{♟f5}$ ♞d8 $16. \text{♞f3}$).

We can start dealing with the main lines now.

a) $4... \text{f5}$



$5.d4 \text{ fxe4}$

After $5... \text{exd4}$ White occupies a lot of space in the centre with $6.e5!$ and after $6... \text{dxc3}$ $7. \text{♟xc3}$ ♟ge7 $8.0-0$ $0-0$ $9. \text{♟a4}$ ♟b6 $10. \text{♟xb6}$ axb6 $11. \text{♞e1}$. Black's weak king is more than sufficient compensation for White's lack of a pawn. Additionally Black has to consider the ♟c4+ and ♟g5 attack, and might encounter some problems developing his bishop, Kovalev – Y. Meister, Bela Crkva 1990.

$6. \text{♟xc6}$ dxc6

$6... \text{exf3}$ $7. \text{♟xf3}$ exd4 $8.0-0!$ ♟f6 $9. \text{♞e1+}$ ♟e7 $10. \text{♟g5±}$ Torre – Tatai, Haifa 1976. White has mobilized his pieces faster and Black has to face a lot of problems now. After $10...0-0$ White has the strong $11. \text{♞e2}$.

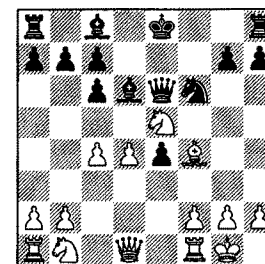
$7. \text{♟xe5}$ ♞d5

The natural $7... \text{♟d6}$ is met by $8. \text{♞h5+}$ g6 $9. \text{♞e2}$ with White's edge ($9. \text{♟xg6?}$ ♟f6 $10. \text{♞h4}$ ♞g8 $11. \text{♟e5}$ ♞xg2 $12. \text{♟g5?}$ ♟xe5 $13. \text{dxe5}$ ♟g4!+-). Black's e4-pawn is rather weak. Black has to defend it with the queen, bringing it to a vulnerable position – $9... \text{♞h4}$

$2. \text{♟f3}$ ♟c6 $3. \text{♟b5}$ ♟c5 $4. \text{c3}$

$10. \text{♟d2}$ ♟xe5 (if $10... \text{♟f6}$, then $11. \text{h3±}$ Boleslavsky – Tolush, Moscow 1944 followed by g2-g3 . After $10... \text{♟f5}$ White wins a pawn with the resolute $11. \text{g4±}$ Davies – Speelman, Hastings 1987) $11. \text{dxe5}$ ♟f5 $12.0-0$ $0-0$ $13. \text{f3!}$ exf3 $14. \text{♟xf3±}$. Black managed to avoid losing a pawn, but White's advantage is obvious. He has better development, strong passed central pawn and Black's queen has no good square where to retreat, Anand – Pulkkinen, Oakham 1986.

$8.0-0$ ♟f6 $9. \text{♟f4}$ ♟d6 $10. \text{c4}$ ♞e6



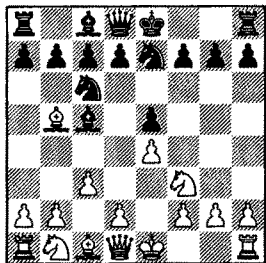
$11. \text{c5±}$

White is better, because of the prospective outpost on e5 and the weakness of the e4-pawn. After $11... \text{♟xe5}$ $12. \text{♟xe5}$ $\text{♟g4!?$ (in case of $12... \text{♟d5}$ $13. \text{♞h5+}$ ♞f7 $14. \text{♞xf7+}$ ♞xf7 $15. \text{♟d2}$ ♟f5 $16. \text{♞ae1}$ Black will be a pawn down in an endgame; the weakness on e4 is evident in the following lines too: $12... \text{♞e7}$ $13. \text{♞e1}$ or $12...0-0$ $13. \text{♟c3!?$) $13. \text{♟g3!}$ (It is premature for White to try $13. \text{♟xc7?}$ e3) $13...0-0$ (now after $13... \text{e3}$ White can play $14. \text{♞e1}$) $14. \text{♞e1}$ ♞f7

15. ♖b3 and White is going to win one of the two pawns – c7 or e4. If 11... ♗e7 12. ♘c3 0–0 13. ♗g3 b6, then 14. ♞e1! bxc5 15. dxc5 ♗xc5 16. ♘xe4 ♘xe4 17. ♞xe4 followed by ♖a4 and ♞ae1, and White's position in the centre is extremely powerful, so Black will hardly be able to defend his weak doubled pawns.

White is faced with a most difficult task after the subtle 11... 0–0! 12. cxd6 cxd6 (Black is recapturing his piece) 13. ♗g3 dxe5 14. dxe5 ♘d5 15. ♘d2. The sacrifice 15... e3 is not good enough to equalize completely – 16. fxe3 ♞xf1+ (It is weaker for Black to play 16... ♘xe3 17. ♞xf8+ ♖xf8 18. ♖f3+ ♘f5 19. ♘e4 ♖g8 20. ♞d1 and White has the initiative.) 17. ♘xf1, but it will not be easy for White to win with a doubled pawn and bishops of opposite colour. After 15... ♖g6, as in the game Hjartarson – Pirrtimaki, Oslo 1983, White can keep a slight advantage with 16. ♖a4 (while 16. ♞e1 is worse due to 17... e3! 17. fxe3 ♗e6 with the idea of ♘b4) 16... ♗f5 17. ♞ae1±.

b) 4... ♘ge7



5.0–0
White is threatening d2-d4 avoiding the check on b4 after e5xd4 and c3xd4.

5... ♗b6
5... a6 6. ♗a4 leads by transposition to the line 3... a6 4. ♗a4 ♗c5.

Black should not play 5... d5?, because after 6. ♘xe5 dxe4 7. ♘xf7 ♖xf7 8. ♖h5+ White wins a pawn.

If 5... ♘g6 6. d4 exd4 7. cxd4 ♗b6, as in the game Lasker – Steinitz, Moscow 1896, White can play the simple 8. ♗g5 f6 9. ♗e3 0–0 10. ♘c3 and White's centre is sound, while Black's king position has been compromised.

5... 0–0 allows White to advance the d-pawn forcefully – 6. d4 exd4 7. cxd4 ♗b6 8. d5 ♘b8 9. d6! ♘g6 (after 9... cxd6 White should better play 10. ♘c3!?, to be able after 10... d5 to take with a piece 11. ♘xd5, so that Black is left with weaknesses along the d-file). Black's position is quite cramped and that spells danger. The following miniature is illustrating that perfectly: 10. e5 (Most probably White's best move here is 10. ♘c3) 10... ♘c6 11. ♞e1 ♞e8? (11... cxd6) 12. ♗g5 f6 13. ♗c4+ ♖h8 14. exf6 ♞xe1+ 15. ♖xe1 gxf6? 16. ♖e8+! and White checkmates – Neumann – Schulten, Berlin 1865.

6. d4 exd4

After 6... ♘g6 7. ♗xc6 dxc6 8. ♘xe5 ♘xe5 9. dxe5 Black is los-

ing a pawn without sufficient compensation.

7. cxd4 d5

The insertion of the moves 7... a6 8. ♗a4 is not changing here anything at all.

8. exd5 ♘xd5

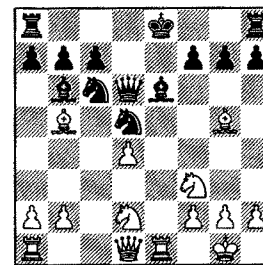
Black managed to prevent his opponent from having a total domination in the centre, but he is lagging behind in his development and castling, so White obtains a strong initiative.

9. ♞e1+ ♗e6 10. ♗g5 ♖d6

This is practically the only move. The retreats to d7 and c8 enable White to win a tempo with ♘e5.

10... ♘f6? is bad because of 11. ♘c3 0–0 12. d5! ♗xd5 13. ♗xf6 ♗xf3 14. ♖xd8 ♘xd8 15. ♗xd8 ♞axd8 16. gxf3 ♞d2 17. ♞e2 and White will have an extra piece in an endgame.

11. ♘bd2



11... 0–0

The dubious move 11... h6? has been refuted long, long ago, nevertheless some players keep on trying it nowadays too. White must know the right path: 12. ♘e4 ♖b4 13. ♗xc6+ bxc6 14. ♖c1!

After 14... hxg5 15. ♖xc6+ ♖e7 16. a3 ♖xb2 17. ♘exg5± White has a powerful attack for the piece. The game Bogdanovic – Damjanovic, Pecs 1964 continued 17... ♘f4 18. ♖e4 ♘e2+ 19. ♖xe2 ♖xe2 20. ♞xe2 ♞ad8 21. ♞ae1 ♞h6 22. ♘xf7 ♖xf7 23. ♘g5+ ♖g8 24. ♘xe6+- and White won after a few moves.

After 11... ♖b4?! 12. ♗xc6+ bxc6 13. ♖c2 Black will have to lose the c6-pawn. If 13... 0–0 14. ♖xc6 Black is lost after 14... h6? 15. ♞xe6! fxe6 16. ♖xe6+ ♖h8 17. ♖xd5 hxg5 18. ♖xg5 ♖xb2 19. ♖h5+ ♖g8 20. ♖d5+ ♖h8 21. ♞e1 ♞ad8 22. ♖h5+ ♖g8 23. ♘g5 1–0 Barbera – Jove, Mislata 1992, as well as after 14... ♖xb2?! 15. ♘c4 ♘b4 (The other line is even worse for Black 15... ♖c3 16. ♞ac1 ♖d3 17. ♞xe6 fxe6 18. ♖xe6 ♖h8 19. ♖xd5+- Kercher – Zarges, Dortmund 2001, or 17... ♘b4 18. ♞e3) 16. ♖xe6! ♖xa1 17. ♖e7! ♖c3 18. ♘xb6 axb6 19. ♗d2 and White remains with extra material after the tactical complications. Black must comply with some losses and try the stabilizing 14... ♞ae8 15. ♘b3.

White remains with a better endgame after 11... f6 12. ♘c4 ♖d7 13. ♖e2 0–0–0 (13... 0–0 14. ♖xe6+ ♖xe6 15. ♞xe6 ffg5 16. ♗xc6 bxc6 17. ♞d1) 14. ♖xe6 ♖xe6 15. ♞xe6 ffg5 16. ♗xc6 bxc6 17. ♘xb6+ axb6 (17... ♘xb6 18. h3) 18. ♘g5.

12. ♘c4

After 12. ♘e4 ♖b4 13. ♗xc6

bxc6 14.a3 Black has an only move 14...♖c4, Gomboc – Crepan, Ljubljana 1998. The other lines lead Black to the loss of the b6-bishop, for example: 14...♖xb2? 15.♞e2 ♖b5 16.a4+– Ulibin – Magem Badals, Santa Clara 1991

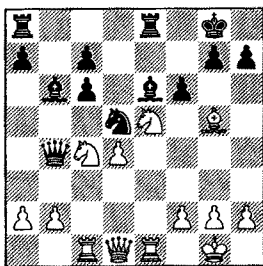
12...♖b4 13.♙xc6 bxc6

In case of 13...♖xc4 14.♙xb7 ♞ab8 15.b3± White manages to keep his light-squared bishop from being exchanged for the enemy's knight.

14.♞c1 ♞fe8

Black must ensure to his queen a possibility for retreat. After 14...h6? 15.a3 ♖b5 16.a4 ♖a6 (16...♖b4? 17.♙d2+–) 17.♙d2± White has a strong initiative, for example: 17...♙g4 (17...♙f6 18.♙ce5) 18.♙ce5 ♙xf3 19.♖xf3 ♙xd4 (19...♖xa4 20.♙xc6 ♙f6 21.b3 ♖b5 22.♞e5 ♖a6 23.♙xh6) 20.♞xc6 ♙b6 21.♙b4.

15.♙fe5! f6

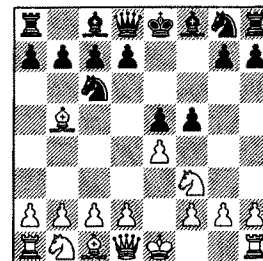


16.♙d2±

Black is losing now the c6-pawn, but has decent chances for a successful defence due to the powerful centralized knight on d5. White has to solve the problem of the knight on e5 that is a bit isolated from the rest of the forces. Let's see some of the possible lines: 16...♖f8 17.♙xc6 ♖f7 (After 17...♙d7, as in the game Sax – Crepan, Ljubljana 1998, the best for White is 18.♖b3 ♙xc6 19.♙xb6 axb6 20.♞xc6 ♖f7, relying on a passed a-pawn in distant future. If Black takes with the c-pawn on move 19 – the knight on d5 will be less stable.) 18.♖f3 (Weaker is 18.b3 ♙d7 19.♞xe8+ ♞xe8 20.♙xb6 axb6 21.♖f3 ♖e6 22.♙b4 ♙xb4 23.♙xb4, Supancic – Crepan, Bled 2000 and Black has good chances to draw, because of the bishops of opposite colour.) 18...♙d7 (If 18...♖d7, White manages to preserve his outpost on c6 with 19.♙xb6 axb6 20.a3; 19...cxb6 20.b4 b5 21.♞c5) 19.♙4a5 ♙xa5 20.♙xa5 ♞xe1+ 21.♞xe1 ♞e8 22.♞xe8+ ♙xe8 23.b3. The presence of the couple of knights on the board and the weaknesses on Black's queenside provide White with excellent winning chances.

Chapter 19

1.e4 e5 2.♙f3 ♙c6 3.♙b5 f5 Jaenisch Gambit



4.♙c3

In this chapter we will consider the variants without the capture 4...f5xe4, viz. a) 4...♙b4, b) 4...♙d4, and c) 4...♙f6. As a rule, White takes the f5-pawn. With the knight on c3 this capture is in White's favour. We stress it again – with the knight on c3! White should not take on f5 on the 4th move.

The other continuations are less popular.

4...d6. The move does not fit in the spirit of such a sharp opening as Jaenisch Gambit. It is no wonder that White quickly and easily achieves a very favourable position. 5.d4 exd4 (5...fxe4 6.♙xe4 a6 7.♙xc6+ bxc6 8.dxe5 ♖e7 9.♙g5 ♙f6 10.♙xf6+ 1–0 Dirr – Cornelison, corr. 1994;

6...exd4 7.♙xd4 ♙d7 8.♙g5 ♙e7 9.♙xe7 ♖xe7 10.0–0 ♙e5 11.f4 ♙xb5 12.♙xb5 ♙c6 13.♞e1 1–0 Novak – Havran, Slovakia 1997) 6.♙xd4 ♙d7 7.♙xf5 ♙xf5 8.exf5 ♙f6 9.0–0 ♙e7 10.♙c4 ♙e5 11.♙e6 c6 12.♞e1± Pierrot – Galli, Buenos Aires 1998;

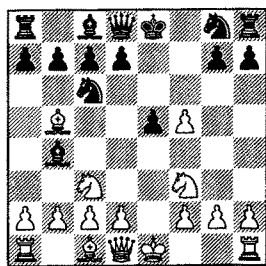
4...a6. A rare move which is not that bad at all. White wins a pawn, however his advantage is not decisive yet – Black gets quite an active play which somehow makes up for this loss. 5.♙xc6 dxc6 6.♙xe5 ♙f6 (6...♖f6 7.♙f3 fxe4 8.♙xe4 ♖g6 9.0–0±; 6...♖e7 7.♖h5+–) 7.d3 ♙b4 8.exf5 ♙xf5 9.0–0±;

4...♙c5, Geus – G. Breyer, Scheveningen 1913, 5.♙xe5! It is strange that this definitely the strongest move has not occurred in tournaments yet! Things look bad for Black: 5...♙xe5 (5...♙xf2+ 6.♙xf2 ♙xe5 7.d4 ♙g4+ 8.♙g1 ♖h4 9.g3+–) 6.d4±.

a) 4...♙b4 5.exf5 (diagram)

5...♙f6

A crucial point – Black's 4th



and 5th moves are used in different succession! Sometimes Black uses other moves which are more hazardous for him:

5...♗xc3?!, Shamkovich – Soloviev, Minsk 1957, 6.dxc3! A new idea. For some reason White players used only the less natural capture with the b-pawn. 6...d6 7.♗g5 ♘f6 (7...♘ge7?? 8.♘xe5! dxe5 9.♗h5+ ♗f8 10.f6 gxf6 11.♗h6+ ♗g8 12.♗c4+ ♘d5 13.♗xd5+ ♗xd5 14.♗e8#) 8.♗d3 0–0 (8...e4 9.♗xf6+-) 9.0–0–0 ♗e8 10.♞he1±;

5...♘ge7, Bartos – Babics, Hungary 2002, 6.g4! GM A.Bezgodov's idea – courageous and dangerous for Black. Great complications spring up which do not promise anything good for Black (he may be hopeless). 6...h5 (6...0–0?! 7.d4 exd4 8.♘xd4±) 7.d4! exd4 (7...hxg4 8.♘xe5 ♘xe5 9.dxe5 c6 10.♗d2 cxb5 11.♗xg4 ♗xc3 12.♗xc3 ♞g8 13.f6 gxf6 14.♗h5+ ♗f8 15.0–0–0 fxe5 16.♞hg1 d6 17.♗d2 ♘f5 18.♞xg8+ ♗xg8 19.♞g1+ ♘g7 20.♞xg7+ ♗xg7 21.♗h6+-) 8.♘xd4 ♘d5 9.0–0 ♘xc3 10.bxc3 ♗xc3 11.♗a3 ♘xd4 12.♗d3 hxg4 (12...♗xa1 13.♞xa1 ♗g5 14.♞e1+ ♗f7 15.♞e7+ ♗xe7

16.♗c4+ ♘e6 17.♗xe7 ♗xe7 18.fxe6 dxe6 19.♗d4 ♗f7 20.♗f4+ ♗e7 21.♗g5+ ♗f7 22.♗d3 ♞h6 23.♗f4+-) 13.♞ae1+ ♗f7 14.♗c4+ d5 15.♞e7+ ♗xe7 16.♗xd5+ ♗e8 17.♗xe7 ♗xe7 18.♞e1+ ♗xe1 19.♗xd4 ♞e8 20.♗xg7+ ♘d8 21.♗f7 ♗b4 (21...♞e2 22.♗f6+ ♘d7 23.♗e6+-) 22.♗xe8 ♗xe8 23.f6 ♗f8 (23...♗e6 24.♗g6+ ♘d7 25.♗h7+ ♗c6 26.♗e4+-) 24.♗g6+ ♘d8 25.♗f7 ♗d6 26.♗g8+ ♘d7 27.♗xg4+ ♗c6 28.♗g8 ♗c5 (28...b5 29.♗g2+) 29.f7+-.

6.0–0 0–0 7.d4

The timely counter-strike in the centre faces Black with difficulties – he fails to regain the pawn with benefit.

7...e4

This is the most principled line, of course – Black should try to complicate the play.

White has a good game after 7...♘xd4 8.♘xd4 exd4 9.♗xd4 ♗xc3 10.♗xc3 d5 11.♗d3 b6 12.b4 ♘e4 13.♗xe4 dxe4 14.♗b2 ♞f7 15.♞ad1 ♗g5 16.♗c6 ♞b8 17.♗e8+ ♞f8 18.♗e5 ♞f7 19.f4 ♗e7 20.♗xe7 ♞xe7 21.♞d8+ ♗f7 22.♞h8 ♞a8 23.♞xh7 ♗g8 24.f6+- Suetin – Zinn, Russia 1965

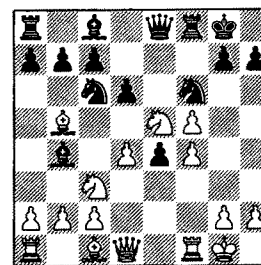
8.♘e5 ♗e8

8...♘e7 9.g4 ♗xc3 10.bxc3 d6 11.♗c4+ ♘fd5, Vuori – Wikman, corr. 1982, 12.♗g5! A find which refutes Black's dubious idea. 12...c6 (12...dxe5 13.dxe5 c6 14.f6+-) 13.f3 exf3 (13...♗h8 14.♘g6+ hxg6 15.♗e1!!+-) 14.♗xd5+ cxd5 15.♘d3+-.

8...♗e7 9.♗f4 ♗xc3 (The ex-

perimental idea 9...♗d6, Mitchell – Ljublinsky, corr. 1970, could offer White a decisive advantage in a neat way: 10.♞e1! ♘xe5 11.♘xe4!!+-) 10.bxc3 ♘a5 11.♘g4 a6 12.♘xf6+ ♗xf6 13.♗e2 d6 14.g4 g6 15.♗h1! GM Z.Lanka uses a typical approach against gambits – he gives the extra pawn back, intercepting the initiative. 15...gxf5 16.g5 Black managed to regain the pawn, but his king's shelter is very weak. White's attack achieves its goal: 16...♗e7 17.♞g1 ♞f7 18.g6 ♞g7 19.gxh7+ ♗h8 20.♞xg7 ♗xg7 21.♗d2 ♗e6 22.♞g1± Lanka – Meinsohn, Lyon 1993.

9.f4 d6

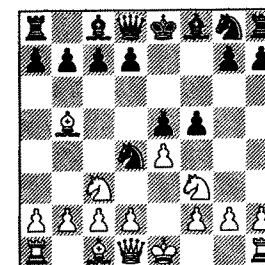


10.g4±

A nice positional sacrifice – White gets a very strong pawn centre as a compensation. 10...dxe5 11.fxe5 ♘d7 (11...♗xc3 12.bxc3 ♘d5 13.♗e1±) 12.♘xe4 ♘cxe5 13.dxe5 ♗xe5 14.♗d3 ♗a5 15.♗f4 ♗e7 16.c3 ♗b6+ 17.♗h1 h5 18.♞ae1 hxg4 19.♘d6 1–0 Klovans – Ljublinsky, corr. 1968.

b) 4...♘d4

2.♘f3 ♘c6 3.♗b5 f5 4.♘c3



5.exf5!

This is not a ceding of the centre! White perfectly uses his advantage in development and opens the play.

Let's consider b1) 5...♘xb5 and b2) 5...c6.

In case of 5...♘f6 there are the variants which are considered further: c) 4...♘f6 5.e4xf5 ♘d4.

Playing 5...♗f6, Black is ready to lose the castling right: 6.0–0 c6 7.♘xd4 exd4 8.♞e1+ ♘d8. The loss of the castling within the first ten moves is a common thing in the sharpest Jaenisch Gambit. The king in the middle is not easily reachable. 9.♘e4 ♗xf5 10.♗d3! The attack to the black queen explains the unusual position of the bishop on d3: 10...d5 11.♘d6 ♗f4 12.♘xc8 ♞xc8, H.Schmidt – Sulger, corr. 1986, White should strive here for opening up the play: 13.c4! ♘f6 14.g3 ♗d6 (14...♗g5 15.♗f3 ♞c7 16.♗f5±) 15.♗f5±.

b1) 5...♘xb5 6.♘xb5 d6

6...c6 7.♘c3 d6 8.d4 – see 6...d6 7.d4 c6 8.♘c3.

Black can show activity in the centre: 6...e4 7.♗e2 ♗e7. Rela-

tively the best move. (7...d5 8.d3 ♖xf5 9.♗fd4+- loses immediately; 8...♗f6, Feistenauer – Lanzani, Groningen 1981, 9.dxe4! dxe4 10.♙f4+-; 9...♗xe4 10.♗g5+-) 8.♗fd4! White should not take on c7 – he will lose two knights for a rook. 8...d5 9.c4 c6 10.♗c3 ♗f6 11.cxd5 cxd5 12.♖b5 ♖d7 13.d3 ♖xb5 14.♗dxb5. The queen swap clearly favours White. 14...♗f7 15.♗c7 ♖b8 16.♗7xd5 exd3 17.♙f4 ♖a8 18.♗c7 ♖b8 19.♗e6 ♖a8 20.0-0-0 ♙xe6 21.fxe6+ ♗xe6 22.♖xd3+- J.Horvath – Godena, Germany 1980. White has won a pawn.

7.d4 e4

7...c6 loses a pawn – 8.♗c3 ♖xf5 9.dxe5 dxe5 (9...♖d7 10.0-0 0-0-0 11.♙f4 ♗h6 12.exd6 ♗f7 13.♖d4 ♙xd6 14.♙xd6 ♗xd6 15.♖xa7 ♖hf8 16.♗a4 ♗c7 17.♗c5 ♖c8 18.♖fe1 ♖de8 19.♗e5 ♖e7 20.♖a5+ b6 21.♖a7+ 1-0 Humphries – Walters, corr. 1993) 10.♖e2 ♙g4 (10...♖c7 11.♙f4 0-0-0 12.♗xe5 ♗f6 13.♗g6 ♖b6 14.♗xh8 ♖xb2 15.0-0 ♖xc3 16.♗f7 ♖d7 17.♖e5 ♖xe5 18.♗xe5+- Aardvark – Zarkov, ICC 1996) 11.♖xe5+ ♖e7 12.♙g5 ♗f6 13.♖xe7+ ♙xe7 14.♗e5 ♙f5 15.0-0-0±.

8.♗g5 ♙xf5 9.f3!

After the fall of the a4-pawn the defence will be difficult for Black.

9...♖d7

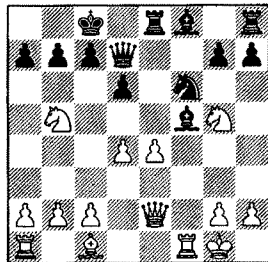
9...♖e7 is used in practice too. It leads Black to troubles as well. 10.fxe4 0-0-0. (10...♙xe4?? fails

to 11.0-0!+-) 11.0-0 ♙d7 12.♖d3 ♗f6 13.d5! h6 14.♗e6! It is not an offer of exchange, as it may seem; it is a sacrifice of two pieces! 14...♙xe6 15.♗xa7+! ♗b8 (equally hopeless is 15...♖d7 16.♖b5+ c6 17.♗xc6!+-) 16.♗c6+. A beautiful combination! 16...bxc6 17.dxc6 ♗d7 (17...♖e8 18.♖a6 ♙c8 19.♖b5+ ♗a8 20.♖a5+ ♗b8 21.♙e3+-) 18.♖a6 ♗c5 19.♖b5+ ♗c8 (19...♗a7 20.♖f3+-) 20.♖a5+- Bloessl – Kubler, corr. 1991. White checkmates by force – 20...♗b8 21.♖f3 ♖h4 22.♖b4+ ♗c8 23.♖a3 etc.

10.♖e2 0-0-0

10...♗f6, Perlstrom – Schulze, corr. 1987, 11.fxe4 ♙g4 12.♗f3±.

11.fxe4 ♖e8 12.0-0 ♗f6

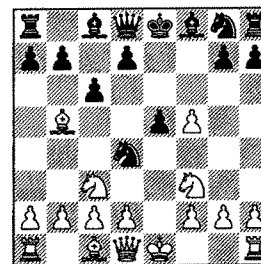


13.♖xf5!

A strong and spectacular sacrifice of the exchange. 13...♖xf5 14.♗xc7! ♖e7 (14...♗xc7?? 15.♖c4+-). This position happened in Haglund – Kazoks, corr. 1985, and now White could have set insoluble problems to Black: 15.♖c4! ♗xe4 16.♗d5+ ♗b8 (16...♗d8 17.♗xe4! Do not miss the check on f2! 17...♖xe4 (17...♖xe4 18.♙g5+-) 18.♙e3 ♗e8 19.♖f1

♖d7 20.♖d3 ♖e6 21.♙g5! h6 22.♖h3+-) 17.♙f4! ♖d7 18.♖e1 ♗f6 19.♗xf6 ♖xf6 20.♖e8+ ♖d8 21.♖xd8+ ♖xd8 22.♗f7 ♖f6 22.♙e3+-. What is important is that the black rook cannot go to g8 because of the capture on d6. The arisen endgame is hopeless for Black.

b2) 5...c6



6.♙a4!

The calm retreat of the bishop accentuates the complexity of the problems that Black faces. We find the a4-square quite suitable for the bishop in the positions considered in this chapter. It can be said that in all cases White remains with an extra pawn in a good position and gets superb attacking chances.

6...d6

6...♖a5 7.0-0 d6 – see 6...d6 7.0-0 ♖a5.

6...♗f6 7.0-0 ♙c5 (7...♗xf3+ 8.♖xf3 – see 6...♗f3 7.♖f3 ♗f6 8.0-0) 8.♗xe5 0-0 9.♗f3± see variant c).

Serious difficulties, connected mainly with the absence of a pawn are in store for Black after

6...♗xf3 7.♖xf3 ♗f6 8.0-0 d5 (8...♙c5 9.♖e1 d6 10.♙b3±; 8... ♙e7 9.♖e1 ♖c7 10.d4. White returns the pawn in the name of the attack and quickly achieves his goal. 10...exd4 11. ♙f4 d6 12.♗e4 0-0 13.♙b3+ ♗h8 14.♗g5 h6 15.♗f7 ♗h7 16.♖h3 ♗g8 17.♖h5 ♙xf5 18.♖xf5+ g6 19.♖h3 ♖xf7 20.♙xf7 ♖f8 21.♙xg8+ 1-0 Daamen – Berben, Netherlands 1986) 9.♖e1 e4 (9...♖d6 10.d3 ♙e7 11.♖g3 0-0 12.♖xe5 ♖xe5 13.♖xe5 ♙d6 14. ♖e2 ♙xf5 15. ♙d2± Sion Castro – Galiana, Palma de Mallorca 1991) 10.d3 ♙b4 11.dxe4 dxe4 12. ♙g5 0-0 13.♖xe4 ♙xc3 14.bxc3 ♖d6 15. ♙b3+ ♗h8 16.♖h4+- Tseshkovsky – Inkirov, Sochi 1983.

6...♖f6 7.0-0 d6, Castro Torres – Salcedo Mederos, corr. 2001, 8.♗xd4! exd4 9.♖e1+ ♗d8. Black's idea is to hide the king behind a pawn shield and then to complete the development. White must take energetic measures, first of all he should deprive Black of the d4-pawn. 10.♗e2! ♗h6 (10...♙xf5 11.c3! d3 12.♗d4 d5 13.b4! ♙d6 14.♙b2 ♗e7 15.c4! ♖h6 16.g3 ♙h3 17.c5 ♙f4 18.b5 ♙xd2 19.♖e5±) 11.c3 ♗xf5 12.♙c2 dxc3 13.dxc3 ♙e7 14.c4 ♖e8 15.♗c3±.

6...b5. No one has ever played it yet, however this move looks sound and players should be aware of it. 7.♗xd4 exd4 8.♖h5+ ♗e7 9.♙b3 d5 (9...♖e8 10.♖h4+ ♗f6 11.0-0+-; 9...dxc3 10.♙xg8 ♖e8 11.♖h4+ ♗d6+ 12.♗d1 ♖xg8

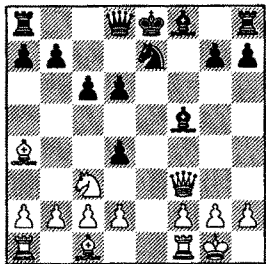
13. ♖e1+ 10. ♖h4+ ♗f6 11. ♖xd4
 ♙xf5 12. ♖e5+ ♙e6 13. 0-0±.

7.0-0 ♙xf5

In case of 7... ♖a5 White gets a huge advantage with the neat move 8. ♖b1! ♗f6 9. b4 ♖b6 10. ♗xd4 exd4 (10... ♖xd4 11. ♗e2) 11. b5 ♖c7?! (11... dxc3?? 12. dxc3; more stubborn is 11... c5 12. ♖e2+ ♗d8?! 13. ♗e4; 12... ♙e7 13. ♖e1 ♖d8 14. ♗d5! ♗xd5 15. ♖h5+ ♗d7?? 16. b6#; 15... g6? 16. fvg6; 15... ♗f8 16. ♙b3 ♖e8! 17. ♖xe8+ ♗xe8 18. ♙xd5 ♖b8 19. g4±) 12. bxc6 bxc6 13. ♖f3 ♙d7 (13... ♙b7? 14. ♖xb7) 14. ♖e1+ ♙e7 (14... ♗f7 15. ♙b3+ d5 16. ♗xd5!; 14... ♗d8 15. ♗e2) 15. ♗b5 ♖b8 (15... ♖a5 16. ♗xd6+ ♗f8 17. ♙xc6) 16. ♙a3 (16. ♗xd6+ ♖xd6 17. ♙a3) 16... cxb5 17. ♙xd6 ♖xd6 18. ♖xa8+ ♗f7 19. ♙b3+ 1-0 Santos – Gudjev, corr. 1984.

8. ♗xd4 exd4 9. ♖f3!? ♗e7

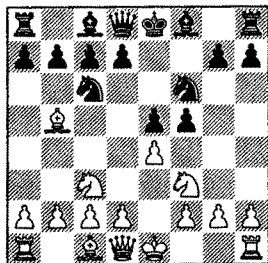
After 9... ♖d7 10. ♗e2 Black immediately loses the extremely important d4-pawn. Also dangerous is 9... g6 10. ♖e1+ ♗d7 11. ♗e2 ♖e7 12. d3 h5 13. h3 ♙g7 14. b4 ♗c7 15. ♙b2 ♖h4 16. b5 cxb5 17. ♙xb5 ♙e5 18. c3 ♗f6 19. cxd4+ Morovic Fernandez – Gamarra, Corrientes 1985.



10. ♗e2±

Now White's task is simple – to get at the enemy king. He must open up the position for this. 10... ♖b6 (10... d3 11. ♗d4 ♖d7 12. ♖e1 0-0-0 13. ♖xe7 ♙xe7 14. ♖xf5 ♙f6 15. ♖xd7+ ♖xd7 16. ♗f3 b5 17. ♙b3 ♖e8 18. cxd3+– Vaisman – Lanka, corr. 1984) 11. c3 dxc3 12. bxc3 0-0-0 13. d4 d5 14. ♗g3 ♙g6 15. ♖e1±. The black king feels rather uncomfortable with all these pieces on the board.

c) 4... ♗f6



5. exf5 ♗d4

In case of 5... ♙b4 see variant a).

The timid move 5... d6 leaves little chances for survival if White plays energetically. 6. d4 e4 7. d5! a6 8. ♙a4 b5 9. dxc6 exf3 10. ♙b3 fvg2 11. ♖g1 ♙xf5 12. ♖f3 ♖e7+ 13. ♙e3 ♙e6 14. 0-0-0 b4 15. ♖de1 ♙xb3 16. axb3 ♖f7 17. ♙g5+ ♗d8 18. ♗d5 h6 19. ♙h4 ♗c8 20. ♗xf6 gxf6 21. ♖g4+ ♗d8 22. ♙xf6+ 1-0 Cvetkovic – Rujevic, Dravograd 1963.

5... ♙e7 6. 0-0 0-0 (Black has managed to finish the develop-

ment successfully, and after the evident next move d7-d6 it will be not easy for White to defend the f5-pawn. Taking this fact into account, White is better not to seek for a huge advantage, but to stick to the win of the e5-pawn). 7. ♙xc6 dxc6 8. ♗xe5 ♙xf5, Hofmann – Eschenbrenner, corr. 1993, 9. d4 c5 (9... ♙d6 10. ♙g5 c5 11. ♖e1±; 9... ♖d6 10. ♖e1 ♖ad8 11. ♖e2 ♖fe8 12. ♙e3±) 10. d5±.

5... ♙c5 6. 0-0 0-0 7. ♗xe5 ♗xe5 (7... ♗d4 – see 5... ♗d4 6. ♗xe5 ♙c5 7. 0-0 0-0) 8. d4 ♙xd4 (8... ♙d6 9. dxe5 ♙xe5 10. ♖e1± Korkkila – Vaatainen, Finland 1993. The witty lunge 8... ♗fg4 also results in a bad position: 9. dxc5 ♖xf5 10. f3 ♗xh2. A sacrifice of despair as early as on move 10! 11. ♖xh2 ♖h4+ 12. ♗g1 ♖h5 13. ♖d5+ ♗h8 14. ♖e4 ♖h2+ 15. ♗f2 ♖h4 16. ♖h1 ♖xh1 17. ♖xe5 1-0 Pachman – Santa Cruz, Havana 1964, the mate is inescapable, or 9... ♖h4 10. ♙f4 ♖xf5 11. ♙g3 ♖h6 12. ♙e2 ♗f6 13. ♗d5 ♗xd5 14. ♖xd5+ ♖e6 15. ♖ad1+– Zimmermann – Kuehnel, corr. 1971) 9. ♖xd4 d6 10. ♙d3 c5 11. ♖e3 ♗fg4 12. ♖g3 ♗xd3 13. ♖xd3± Neale – Gardner, corr. 1989.

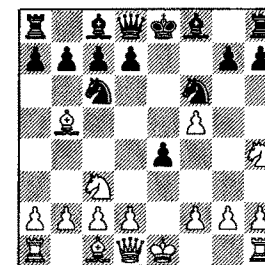
The move 5... e4 is often played but with no particular success. 6. ♗h4.

(diagram)

In this position Black tried a lot of continuations:

6... ♙c5 7. d3 ♗d4 8. 0-0 c6 9. ♙a4 0-0 10. dxe4 b5 11. ♙e3

2. ♗f3 ♗c6 3. ♙b5 f5 4. ♗c3



6. ♗e5 (An interesting move which has been used only once in Hommeles – Jonkman, Netherlands 1995. The black knight is about to take a comfortable post on f7, so the white bishop loses the target for attack.) 7. ♖e2! (The precious a4-pawn cannot be defended!) 7... ♙e7 (The best move which gives Black hopes for a favourable outcome of the game. Hopeless is 7... ♗fg4 8. g3 g5 9. fvg6+; 8... c6 9. h3 ♗f6 10. d4 ♗f7 11. ♗xe4 ♗xe4 12. ♖xe4+ ♙e7 13. f6! The decisive weakening of the kingside 13... gxf6 14. ♙d3+–. Or 7... c6 8. d4! A nice counter-blow which demonstrates the power of White's position. 8... ♗f7 9. ♗xe4 ♗xe4 10. ♖xe4+ ♙e7 11. f6! gxf6 12. ♙d3 d5 13. ♖f3+–) 8. ♗xe4 0-0 9. 0-0±;

6... d5 7. d3 ♙e7 (a venture-some 7... d4 brought success to Black in the classic game Janowski – Marshall, Paris 1905, but in case of the decisive 8. ♗xe4! Black would have been in the pots: 8... ♗xe4 9. ♖h5+ g6 10. fvg6

♗f6 11.g7+ ♗xh5 12.gxh8 ♖
 ♖xh4 13.♖xh7±) 8.dxe4 dxe4
 9.♖xd8+ ♘xd8 10.♙g5 0-0 11.
 0-0-0. The endgame is bad so
 Black players have been avoid-
 ing this position for many years
 already. 11...♗e5 12.h3 a6 13.
 ♙a4 c5 14.♙f4 ♗fd7 15.♙xd7
 ♗xd7 16.♙g3 ♙g5+ (16...♙xh4
 17.♙xh4 ♖xf5 18.♖he1 ♗f8 19.
 ♗xe4 ♙e6 20.♙e7 ♗d5 21.♗c5+-
 Capablanca – Marshall, New
 York 1909) 17.♖b1 ♗f6 18.f4 exf3
 19.♗xf3 ♙h6 20.♙d6 ♖e8 21.g4
 b6 22.♖he1 ♙b7 23.♗e5 ♙g5
 24.a4 ♙g2 25.♖g1 ♙b7 26.♗c4+-
 Duras – Duz-Khotimirsky, St.
 Petersburg 1909.

6...♙e7 The bishop is eyeing
 the white knight on h4, but Black
 does not have time to benefit
 from its unstable position. 7.d3
 exd3 8.♙xd3 d5 9.0-0 0-0 10.
 ♙g5 ♗e5 11.♖e1 ♗f7 12.♗f3 c6
 13.♙h4 ♗h6 14.♗d4 ♖f7 15.♗e6
 ♖d6 16.♙g3 ♖b4 17.a3 ♖g4
 18.♖xg4 ♗fxg4 19.♗c7 ♖b8 20.
 ♗7xd5 cxd5 21.♙xb8 ♙c5 22.♙g3
 ♗xf5 23.♖e8+ ♖f8 24.♖xc8 1-0
 Koehnlein – Duz-Khotimirsky,
 Hamburg 1910.

6...♗d4 7.♙a4 ♙c5 8.d3±.
 Black's attack fizzles out not hav-
 ing started yet. 8...b5 (After
 8...♖e7 9.0-0 0-0 10.♙g5 ♖e5,
 Sandhoefner – Diermair, Austria
 2002, Black even went on to
 score, but White overlooked the
 strongest continuation 11.dxe4!
 ♗xe4 12.♗xe4 ♖xe4 13.♖e1+-)
 9.♙b3 exd3 10.♖xd3 ♖e7+ 11.
 ♙e3 ♗g4 12.f6 gxf6 13.♗d5 ♗e5

14.♖d1 1-0 Ki. Georgiev – Rodri-
 guez Vargas, Tarrassa 1990.

6. ♗xe5 ♙c5

6...c6 7.♙a4 ♙c5 8.0-0 0-0
 9.♗f3 – see the main line. Bad
 for Black is 6...♗xb5 7.♗xb5 d6
 8.♗g4 ♙xf5 9.♗xf6+ gxf6 10.♖f3
 ♙xc2 11.0-0 c6 12.♖e1+ ♙e7 13.
 ♖xf6 cxb5 14.♖xh8+- O'Hara –
 Moeckel, TGT 1998.

7.0-0 0-0

7...c6 8.♙a4 0-0 9.♗f3 – see
 7...0-0 8.♗f3 c6 9.♙a4.

8. ♗f3 c6

8...d5 9.♗xd4 ♙xd4 10.♗e2
 ♙e5 (10...♙b6 11.d4 ♙xf5 12.♙f4
 c6 13.♙d3 ♙g4 14.f3 ♙h5 15.c3
 ♗d7 16.♖d2 ♖e7 17.♖ae1 ♖f7
 18.♙d6 ♖fe8 19.♗f4 ♖f6 20.♗xh5
 ♖xd6 21.♖g5 g6 22.♙f5 ♖e5
 23.♖h6 ♖e7 24.♙e6+ ♖h8 25.
 ♗f4 1-0 Boey – Schober, Ger-
 many 1996) 11.d4 ♙d6 12.♙f4
 ♙xf5 13.♙xd6 ♖xd6 14.♗g3
 ♗e4!? (14...♙e6 15.♙d3±) 15.
 ♗xf5 ♖xf5 16.♙d3 ♖af8 17.♙xe4
 (17.f3?? ♖h5) 17...dxe4 18.c3±
 Clayton – Reeman, corr. 1995.

8...♗xf5 9.d4 ♙b6 10.♗a4!
 White is better off annihilating
 right away the potentially dan-
 gerous bishop. 10...d5 (10...♗e4
 11.♗xb6 axb6 12.♖e1 d5 13.♙d3
 ♗h4 14.♙xe4 dxe4 15.♗g5 ♖f6
 16.♗xe4 ♖g6 17.♗g3+- Bernad
 – Canal, corr. 1995) 11.♗xb6
 axb6 12.♙g5 h6 13.♙xf6 ♖xf6
 14.c3 ♗h4 15.♗xh4 ♖xh4 16.♖e2
 ♙f5 17.a3 c6 18.♙d3 ♖ae8 19.
 ♖d2 ♙xd3 20.♖xd3 ♖e6 21.♖d2
 ♖fe8 22.♖fe1± Margulis – Ha-
 milton, Philadelphia 1995.

8...♗xb5 9.♗xb5 d5 10.♗bd4!
 Not an obvious move, but the
 strongest one – White not only
 retains his extra pawn, but also
 forces favourable simplification.
 10...♗g4 (10...♗e4 11.d3 ♗d6
 12.♗e6 ♙xe6 13.fxe6 ♖f6 14.♖e1
 ♗f5 15.♙g5 ♖xb2 16.e7 ♖fe8
 17.♖e2 ♗d4 18.♗xd4 ♙xd4 19.
 ♖e6+ ♖h8 20.♖xd5+- Tombette
 – Borniche corr. 1986. 10...♖d6
 11.d3 ♗g4 12.h3 ♗h2 13.♗b5!
 Thus White manages to keep two
 extra pawns. 13...♗xf3+ 14.♖xf3
 ♖d7 15.g4± Vasiukov – Egorov,
 USSR 1959, and in case of 15...
 ♖xb5 16. ♖xd5+ ♖h8 there is the
 move 17.♙e3±) 11.h3 ♗e5, Aseev
 – S.Soloviov, Leningrad 1986.
 White could have retained the
 extra pawn with active position:
 12.♖e1! ♗xf3+ 13.♗xf3 ♙xf5 14.
 d4 ♙d6 (14...♙b6 15.♙g5±) 15.
 ♙g5 ♖d7 16.♗e5 ♖b5 17.b3±.

9. ♙a4

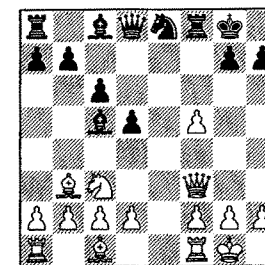
Black has not got sufficient
 compensation for the sacrificed
 pawn, however the play along
 the f-file offers some tactical
 chances. Therefore White must
 be careful to parry threats on
 time.

9...♗xf3+

9...♗xf5 10.d4 ♙b4 11.♗e2 d5
 12.c3 ♙d6 13.♙f4 This bishop

must be exchanged! 13...♗e4 14.
 ♙xd6 ♗fxd6 15.♗e5 ♖h4 16.f3
 ♗g5 17.♙c2 ♖f6 18.♖e1 ♖h6 19.
 ♖d1 ♙e6 20.h4 ♗g7 21.g4 g5 22.
 h5± T.Horvath – Briem, Reykja-
 vik 1982. 9...d5 10.♗xd4 ♙xd4
 11.♗e2 ♙b6 12.d4 ♙xf5 13.♙f4.
 The best square for the bishop –
 sooner or later it will be ex-
 changed for the black b6-bishop
 and it will make White's task
 easier. 13...♗h5 14.♙e5 ♖h4 15.
 ♗g3 ♙g4 16.♖d2 ♖ae8 17. ♖ae1
 ♖xe5 18.♖xe5± Unzicker – Nie-
 vergelt, Zurich 1959.

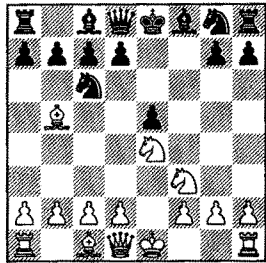
10. ♖xf3 d5 11. ♙b3 ♗e8



This position happened in
 Prandstetter – Jonkman, Decin
 1996. White could have played
 the decisive 12.g4! g6 13.d3
 gxf5 14.g5 ♗c7 15.♖h1 ♗e6 16.
 ♗e2 f4 17.♖g1± Besides the ex-
 tra pawn White got good chances
 to attack the black king while the
 white king is absolutely safe.

*In general we can conclude that up-to-date chess theory hardly
 lets Black to set hopes for a good play in Jaenisch Gambit if he does
 not venture into 4...fxe4. He could count only on the effect of surprise
 and insufficient preparation of the opponent. We believe that after
 having read this chapter you are well armoured against such sur-
 prise.*

Chapter 20

1.e4 e5 2. ♗f3 ♘c6 3. ♖b5 f5 4. ♘c3
fxe4 5. ♗xe4
Jaenisch Gambit

5... ♗f6

It's impossible to say which of the variants is better for Black – the text-move or 5...d5 which is considered as the main line. In the system under consideration White's advantage is lasting, but converting it is not an easy task at all. Besides the extra pawn which is obtained by force, the total absence of risk is another important boon of White's position.

No clear refutation of the strange move 5...a6?! has been presented in practice. Here it is, simple and convincing: 6. ♖xc6 bxc6, Gurgenidze – Lein, USSR 1962, 7. ♗xe5! The pawn can be and must be taken! Black is defenceless. 7... ♗e7 8. ♗h5+ g6 9. ♗e2 c5 (9... ♗xe5?? 10. ♗f6+-; 9...

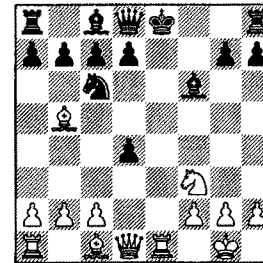
♗g7 10.d4+-) 10.d4!! (10...cxd4 11. ♗g5 ♗e6 12. 0-0-0!! ♗xa2 (12... ♗e7 13. ♖he1 ♗xa2 14. ♗xe7+-) 13. ♗xg6 ♗a1+ 14. ♗d2 ♗a5+ 15.c3 dxc3+ 16. ♗xc3+-.

Let's consider the rare continuation 5... ♗e7 6.d4! exd4 7. 0-0! We did not discover any serious drawing chances for Black. It may seem strange – only seven moves have been played. The readers can check for themselves how bad is Black's position:

7...d5 8. ♗eg5 h6 (8... ♗d6 9. ♗xd4 ♗f6 10. ♗f4 ♗d7 11. ♖xc6 ♗xc6 12. ♖fe1 ♗f8 13. ♖xe7 ♗xe7 14. ♗b4+-; 10... ♗d7 11. ♖xc6 ♗xc6 12. ♖fe1 h6 13. ♖xe7+ ♗xe7 14. ♗b4+ ♗e8 15. ♖e1+ ♗e4 16. ♗xe4 dxe4 17. ♖xe4+ ♗e6 18. ♗e1+-; 9... ♗f6, Milic – Dueckstein, Zagreb 1955, 10. ♗f4! ♗xd4 11. ♖xd6 ♗xf2+ 12. ♖xf2 cxd6 13. ♖e1+ ♗f8 14. ♗xh7+ ♖xh7 15. ♗g5+-; 11...cxd6 12. ♗xd4 ♗ge7 13. ♖fe1 0-0 14. ♖xc6 ♗xc6 15. ♖ad1±) 9. ♖xc6+ bxc6 10. ♗f7 ♗xf7 11. ♗e5+ ♗f6 12. ♗xd4 c5 (12... ♗e8 13. ♖e1 ♗f5 14.b4 h5 15.h4 ♗e4 16.f3 ♗d6 17. ♗g5+ ♗e6 18.fxe4 ♗xe5 19.exd5+ ♗d6

20. ♖xe5 ♗xe5 21. ♗f4+- Czar – Zalan, corr. 1961; 12... ♗e6 13. ♖e1 ♗f6 14. ♗g4 ♗e7 15. ♗b4+-) 13. ♗d7+!! Up to this move we have been following the games Voloshin – S.Savchenko (1970), Kondratiev – Bykov (1963), Voloshin – Nadezhdin (1979), all of them won by White after Black missed good opportunities. The check by the knight quickly leads to victory. 13... ♗e6 14. ♗g4+ ♗d6 15. ♗f4+ ♗c6 16. ♗e6+ ♗d6 17. ♗e5+ ♗b6 18. ♗xd5 ♗xe5 19. ♗xd8 ♗xf4 20. ♗d5 c6 21. ♗b3+ ♗c7 22. ♗f7+-;

7... ♗f6 8. ♗xf6+ ♗xf6 9. ♖e1+



Against the check Black tried to move the king and to cover it but all of the variants are bad:

9... ♗e7 (9... ♗e7?? 10. ♖xc6 dxc6 11. ♗g5+-) 10. ♗g5 0-0. White has embarked upon a well founded and decisive attack: 11. ♗xh7! ♗xh7 12. ♗h5+ ♗g8 13. ♗d3 ♖e8 14.g4! d6 15.g5 ♗e5 16. ♗h7+ ♗f8 17. ♗f3+ ♗f5 18. ♗xf5 ♗g8 19. ♗d2 g6 20. ♗xg6 ♖e7 21. ♗h5 ♗d7 22.f4 ♗h8 23.f5 ♗e8 24.f6 ♖f7 25. ♖xe8+ ♗xe8 26. ♖e1 ♗d7 27. ♗xf7+ ♗xf7 28.g6 ♗xf6 29. ♗h7+ ♗f8 30. ♗h6+ ♗g7

31. ♗h8# 1-0 Trifunovic – Kostic, Yugoslavia 1937;

9... ♗f7 10.c3 d5 (10...dxc3?? 11. ♗d5+ ♗f8 12. ♖c4+-; 10...a6 11. ♗b3+ ♗f8 12. ♖xc6 dxc6 13. ♗f4 ♗d5 14. ♗a3+ ♗f7 15. ♗e5+ ♗g8 16. ♖ad1 ♗e6 17.b3 c5 18.c4 ♗d6 19. ♗d3+-; 11...d5 12. ♖xc6 bxc6 13.cxd4±) 11.cxd4 ♗e6 12. ♖xc6 bxc6 13. ♗e5+ ♗xe5 14. ♗h5+ g6 15. ♗xe5 ♗d6 16. ♗g5 h6 17. ♗h4 g5 18. ♗h5+ ♗g7 19.f4+ ♗f7 20. ♗g4 ♖he8 21. ♗d2 ♖xe1+ 22. ♖e1 ♖e8 23. ♖xe8 ♗xe8 24.fxg5 h5 25. ♗f3 1-0 Martiniuk – Razvaliaev, corr. 1994;

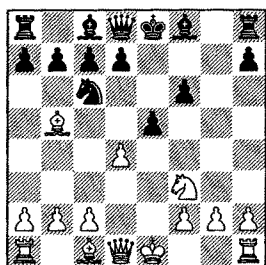
9... ♗f8, Zinn – Boey, Varna 1962, and now the best move (as well as in the previous variant) is the decisive 10.c3!, e.g.: 10...d6 11. ♗xd4±; or 10...d5 11. ♖xc6 bxc6 12.cxd4 ♗g4 13. ♗d3 ♗xf3 14. ♗xf3±; or 10...dxc3 11.bxc3 ♖xc3 12. ♖xc6 bxc6 (12... ♖xa1 13. ♖a3+ d6 14. ♖e8+-; 12... ♖xe1 13. ♗g5 ♗e8 14. ♗d5 c6 15. ♖b3 ♗xf2+ 16. ♗xf2 d5 17. ♗d4+-) 13. ♗d4 ♗f6 14. ♗g5 ♗xg5 15. ♗f3+ ♗f6 16. ♗xc3 h6 17. ♖e3 ♗g8 18. ♖f3 ♗g5 19. ♖e1 ♖a6 20. ♗f5 ♖h7 21. ♗e7+ ♗h8 22. ♖f5 ♗g4 23.h3 ♗a4 24. ♗f3+-.

6. ♗xf6+ ♗xf6

The main move which has a good reputation. Now White is a pawn up. Black in his turn retains good drawing chances thanks to the bishops of opposite colour.

The capture by the pawn 6...gxf6?! is much more danger-

ous for Black. After 7.d4 White obtains perfect chances to get a huge advantage, e.g.:



7...♖e7? 8.0-0 e4 9.♗c4±;

7...♞g8? 8.dxe5 ♞xg2 (8...♖e7 9.0-0 ♖g7 10.g3 ♚xe5 11.♚xe5±) 9.♚h4 ♞g7 10.♖h5+ ♞f7 11.♗c4 1-0 Neumann – Cherner, IECC 1998;

It has been known for several decades that the obvious attack against the knight 7...e4? is in White's favour in view of the decisive answer 8.♚g5! ♗b4+ (8...fxg5 9.♖h5+; 8...d5 9.♖h5+ ♚d7 10.♚f7+; to put up with the loss of the pawn is relatively the best: e4: 8...h5 9.♚xe4 d5 10.♚c5 ♗xc5 11.dxc5 ♖e7+ 12.♗e3±) 9.c3 fxg5 10.♖h5+ ♚f8 11.♗xg5 ♚e7 12.♗c4 d5 13.♗xd5! 1-0 Brinckmann – Kieninger, Ludwigshafen 1932;

7...d5 8.dxe5 ♗g7 (8...♗c5 9.exf6 0-0 10.♗g5+) 9.♚d4! Black suffers fatal losses. 9...0-0 (9...♖d7 10.e6+) 10.♚xc6 bxc6 11.♗xc6 ♗e6 12.♗xa8 ♖xa8 13.exf6 ♞xf6 14.0-0+ Ryan – Webb, Dublin 1991;

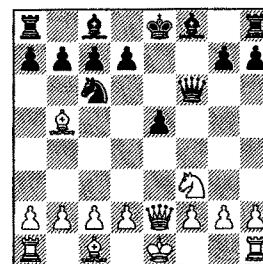
7...d6 8.♚g5! This typical knight sacrifice drives Black into

a corner. 8...fxg5 9.♖h5+ ♚d7 10.d5 ♖f6 (10...h6 11.h4±) 11.♗xg5 ♖f5 12.dxc6+ bxc6 13.♗d3 e4 14.♗e2 ♖g6 15.♖h3+ ♚e8 16.♖c3±; 8...h5 9.♖d3 fxg5 10.♖g6+ ♚d7 11.d5 ♞h6 12.♖e4+; 9...♚e7 10.♗xc6 bxc6 11.dxe5 fxe5 12.f4 ♗h6 13.fxe5 dxe5 14.♖g6 ♖e8 15.♖e4 ♗a6 16.c4 ♚d8 17.0-0 ♗xg5 18.♗xg5 ♚c8 19.♞f5 ♞g8 20.♞e1 ♖g6 21. b4 ♖e6 22.b5 ♗b7 23.♞ef1 1-0 Gutsche – Hidalgo, ICCF 1999; 8...♗f5 9.♖f3 fxg5 10.♖xf5 exd4 11.0-0 ♗e7 12.♞e1 ♖d7 13.♖xg5 ♚d8 14.♖g7 ♞e8 15.♖xh7+; 12...h6 13.♖f6 ♚d7 14.♖f5+ ♚e8 15.h4 ♖d7 16.♖f6 ♞f8 17.♖xh6 ♖f5 18.♗xc6+ bxc6 19.♗xg5 ♖xf2+ 20.♚h1 ♞f7 21.♖h8+ ♚d7 22.♖xa8 ♗xg5 23.♖e8# Predojevic – Dimovski, Halkidiki 2001; 8...a6 9.♗xc6+ bxc6 White forcedly wins in this position 10.dxe5!! fxg5 (10...fxe5 11.♖h5+ ♚d7 12.♚f7 ♖e8 13.♖f5+) 11.♖h5+ ♚d7 12.e6+!! ♚xe6 13.0-0! Black cannot defend his king against the straightforward assault. 13...♗g7 (13...♞g8 14.♞e1+ ♚f6 15.♞e8 ♖d7 16.b4 d5 17.♗b2+ d4 18.♞d1+) 14.♗xg5 ♖e8 15.♞ae1+ ♗e5 16.♖h4 ♚f7 17.f4 ♗d4+ 18.♚h1+;

7...♗g7 8.dxe5 0-0 (The best continuation – Black gets a kind of activity for the pawn. 8...fxe5?! 9.♗g5 ♗f6 10.♗xf6 ♖xf6 11.♖d5±; 8...♖e7 9.♗xc6 bxc6 10.0-0 fxe5 11.♚xe5! 0-0 12.♚d3 d6 13.♗f4 ♗a6 14.♗g3 ♞ab8 15.♞b1 c5 16.♞e1 ♖f7 17.b3 ♗b7 18.♚f4

♗d4 19.♖d2 ♞be8 20.♞xe8 ♖xe8 21.c4± Mukhametov – Wilke, Krumbach 1991; 11...♗xe5 12.♖h5+ ♚d8 13.♞e1 ♗xh2+ 14.♚xh2+; 12...♚f8 13.♞e1 d6 14.♗h6+ ♚g8 15.f4 ♗d4+ 16.♚h1 ♗e6 17.f5+) 9.♖d5+ ♚h8 10.exf6 ♖xf6 11.0-0 a6 12.♗a4 b5 13. ♗b3 ♗b7, Ziffer – Leisebein VCC 2002, 14.♚g5! h6 15.♚e4 ♖g6 16.♚g3± The g3-knight deprives Black of attacking chances. 11...d6, Findlay – Ochkoos, Toronto 1997, 12.c3! ♗g4 (12...♗f5 13.♞e1 ♞ae8 14.♞xe8 ♞xe8 15.♗e3 ♗e4 16.♖h5±). White should play energetically, otherwise Black can get a dangerous compensation. 13.♚g5! ♞ae8 14.f4! h6 15.♚e4 ♖g6 16.♚g3±.

7.♖e2



7...♗e7

A pawn sacrifice is the best decision, Black should not clutch at material balance, e.g.:

7...d6?! 8.d4 ♗d7 (8...♗g4 9.d5 ♗xf3 10.gxf3 a6 11.dxc6 axb5 12.cxb7 ♞b8 13.♖xb5+ ♚d8 14.♖c6+ Vohnout – Zitek, Plzen 1996) 9.0-0 ♖g6 (9...0-0 10.d5 ♚e7 11.♗xd7+ ♞xd7 12.c4+)

10.dxe5 0-0-0 11.♗d3 ♗f5 12.♗xf5+ ♖xf5 13.exd6 ♗xd6 14.♗e3± Vamos – Herman, Paks 1996;

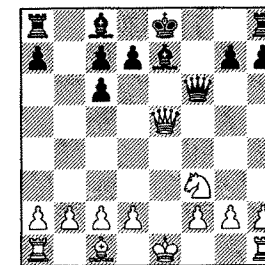
7...♗d6 8.d4 0-0 9.♗xc6 bxc6 10.dxe5 ♗xe5 (10...♖g6? 11.♚h4 ♖f7 12.exd6 ♗a6 13.♖xa6 ♖xf2+ 14.♚d1 ♖xh4 15.dxc7+ Hinks – Oral, Bratislava 1993) 11.♚xe5 ♞e8 12.f4 d6 13.0-0 dxe5 14.fxe5 ♖xe5 15.♖xe5 ♞xe5 16.♗f4 ♞e7 17.♞ae1 ♞xe1 18.♞xe1 ♗f5 19.♞e7 ♗xc2 20.♗e5± Duarte – Sepulveda, Santiago 1994;

7...♗c5?! Le Du – Foucaud, Fouesnant 1999, this provoking move is better to be addressed with the simple 8.0-0! ♚d4 (8...0-0?? 9.♖c4+; 8...d6?? 9.d4+) 9.♚xd4 ♗xd4 10.c3 ♗b6 11.d4±.

8.♗xc6 dxc6

8...♖xc6 9.♖xe5 ♖f6. Unconvincing play – with the extra pawn Black offers his opponent extra tempi. 10.♖xf6 (taking on c7 was also possible.) 10...♗xf6 11.d4± A.Fernandes – Rocha, Lisboa 1997.

The move 8...bxc6 occurs very rarely but it is quite playable and after 9.♖xe5 Black tried lots of continuations:



9... ♖g6 10.0-0 0-0 11. ♗xe7 ♜xf3 12.d3 ♜f8 13. ♖g5 ♗f7 (The endgame after 13... ♖xg5 14. ♙xg5± is very comfortable for White. White retains his extra pawn and has prospects of using the weakness of the whole black queenside. Therefore the bishops of opposite colour do not spell a draw here.) 14.b3± Chura – Semenova, Pardubice 1992;

9... ♗xe5+ 10. ♘xe5 ♙f6 11.d4 c5 12. ♙e3 ♜b8 13.0-0-0 0-0 14.c3 cxd4 15.cxd4 c5 16. ♞d2 cxd4 17. ♙xd4 ♙g5 18. ♙e3 ♙xe3 19.fxe3 ♞e8 20. ♘xd7, Nawrocki – Deptuch, corr 1980, White has a great advantage in the endgame. 20... ♞b7 21. ♘c5 ♞c7 22.b4±;

9...0-0 10.0-0 d6 11. ♗xf6 ♙xf6 12.d3 – see 9...d6;

9... ♗f7 10. ♗xc7! The move has not gained popularity yet – it was played once in an old mail game, although White won it. On the other hand we did not find any chances for Black to get sufficient compensation and yet White has grabbed a second pawn already! 10...0-0 11.d3 ♗e6+ (11... ♙d8 12. ♖g3 ♞e8+ 13. ♙e3 ♙f6 14.0-0 ♙xb2 15. ♞ab1 ♗xa2? 16. ♞xb2 ♗xb2 17. ♙d4+–; 15... ♙f6 16. ♞b3±) 12. ♗e5 ♙b4+ Rittner – Hunter, corr. 1973, now the simplest was 13.c3±;

9...d6 10. ♗xf6 ♙xf6 11.d3 0-0 (11... ♙f5 12.0-0 ♘d7 13. ♞b1 ♞hb8 14.b3 a5 15.a4 c5 16. ♙d2 ♞e8 17. ♞fe1 d5 18. ♞xe8 ♞xe8 19. ♞e1 c4 20. ♞xe8 ♗xe8 21. ♙xa5 cxb3 22.cxb3 ♙xd3 23. ♙xc7 ♙c2

24. ♙e5 ♙xb3 25. ♙xf6 gxf6 26.a5 ♙c4 27. ♘d4 ♗d7 28.f4 ♗d6 29. ♗f2 ♗c5 30. ♗e3 ♗b4 31.g4 h6 32.h4 1-0 A.Rodriguez – Antunes, Cienfuegos 1989; 11... ♞b8 12. ♞b1 ♙e6 13.b3 ♙d5 14. ♗e2±

What is important is that if White allows doubling of the pawns along the f-file he will lose almost all his winning chances.) 12.0-0 ♙g4, Leow – Weemaes, Thessaloniki 1984, 13. ♘d2! ♞ab8 (13... ♞ae8 14. ♘e4 ♙e5 15. ♞b1 d5 16. ♘g3 ♙xg3 17.hxg3 ♞e2 18. ♙e3 ♞b8 19. ♞fc1 a5 20. ♙f4 ♞c8 21. ♗f1±) 14. ♞b1±;

9...c5, Herrera – Antunes, Bayamo 1990, 10.0-0 ♙b7 (10... ♗xe5 11. ♘xe5 d6 12. ♘c4 ♙a6 13.d3±) 11. ♞e1 ♙xf3 12. ♗xf6 gxf6 13.gxf3 ♞g8+ 14. ♗h1 ♗f7 15.d3 ♞g6 16. ♙f4±.

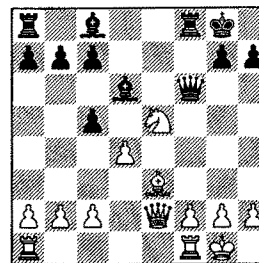
9. ♘xe5 ♙f5

They also play 9...0-0 10.0-0 when 10... ♙f5 transposes to the main line.

If Black hinders the move d2-d4, White (as an exception!) can favourably fianchetto his bishop: 10...c5 11.b3 ♙f5 12. ♙b2 ♞ae8 13. ♞ae1 ♙d6 14.f4 ♗h4 15.d3 ♙e6 16. ♗f2 ♗h6 17. ♖g3 b6 18. ♞e3 ♞f5 19. ♞e4 ♞h5 20. ♞fe1 ♞f8 21. ♘g4 ♙xg4 22. ♗xg4 ♙xf4 23. ♞xf4 ♞xf4 24. ♞e8+ 1-0 Cutillas – A. Lopez, corr. 1995;

10... ♙e6 11.d4 ♞ae8 12. ♙d2 ♙d6 13. ♙c3. A good post for the bishop. 13... ♙d5 14.f4 ♞e6 15. ♗d3 ♗h4 16. ♙e1 ♗e7 17.c4 ♙xe5 18.cxd5 ♙xd4+ 19. ♗xd4 ♞e4 20. ♗d3 ♞e3 21. ♗c4 cxd5

22. ♗xd5+ ♗h8 23. ♙c3 c6 24. ♖g5 1-0 B.Nagy – H.Nagy, Gyor 1997; 10... ♙d6 11.d4 c5 (for 11... ♙f5 see the main line. 11... ♙e6 12.f4 ♞ae8 13. ♙e3 c5 14. ♞ae1 ♗f5 15. dxc5 ♙xe5 16.fxe5 ♗xe5 17. ♞xf8+ ♞xf8 18.c6 bxc6 19. ♙xa7 ♗xe2 20. ♞xe2 ♙c4 21. ♞e1 ♞a8 22. ♙c5 ♞xa2 23. ♙a3± Pierrot – Mahia, Buenos Aires 1998. An ingenious trap for the rook!) 12. ♙e3.



This position occurred more than once:

12... ♙xe5 13.dxe5 ♗xe5 14. ♗c4+ ♙e6 15. ♗xc5 ♗xc5 16. ♙xc5 ♞fe8± Vivo – Lanzani, Bratto 1994, White can continue his fight for the whole point;

12... ♙e6 13.f4. The knight must be bolstered up. 13... ♗f5 (13... cxd4 14. ♙xd4 ♗h6 15. ♗e4 c6 16.c4 a6 17. ♞ad1 ♞ae8 18.b3± Schiller – Hitchens, ICCF 1996) 14.a3 ♞ae8 (14... ♗e4 15. ♗d3 ♗xd3 16. ♘xd3 cxd4 17. ♙xd4 ♙c4 18. ♙e5±) 15. ♞ae1 ♙d5 16.c4 ♙e6 17.d5± 1-0 Sperhake – Wamplar, ICCF 1998.

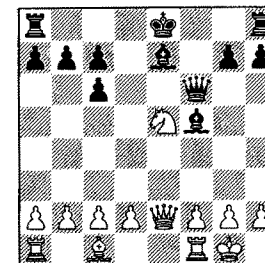
12...b6 13.f4 cxd4 (13... ♗f5 14. ♞ae1 ♙b7 15. ♗c4+ ♗h8 16. dxc5 ♙xe5 17.fxe5 ♗xe5 18. ♙f4

3. ♙b5 f5 4. ♘c3 fxe4 5. ♘xe4

♗xc5+ 19. ♗xc5 bxc5 20. ♙xc7 ♞xf1+ 21. ♗xf1 ♞f8+ 22. ♗g1 h6 23.c4 ♞f7 24. ♙a5 ♗g8 25. ♞e5 ♞d7 26. ♞xc5 ♞d1+ 27. ♗f2 ♞c1 28. ♙c3 ♞c2+ 29. ♗e3 ♙xg2 30. ♞c7 g5 31. ♞g7+ ♗f8 32. ♞g6 h5 33. ♞xg5 h4 34. ♞a5 h3 35. ♞xa7+– Kotronias – Seitaj, Ankara 1995) 14. ♙xd4 ♙b7 (14... ♗f5 15. ♞ae1 ♙b7 16. ♗c4+ ♗h8 17. ♞e3 ♞ad8 18. ♞g3 ♞f6 19. ♗c3 ♞df8 20. ♘d3+– A.Kovacevic – Dinic, Kladovo 1992) 15. ♗g4 ♞ae8 16. ♞ad1 ♗h6 17. ♞de1 ♙d5 18.f5 ♙c5 19. ♙xc5 bxc5 20. ♗g3 ♗d6 21. ♗c3 ♙a8 22. ♗g3 ♞e7, Bieganski – Wierzbicki, corr. 1994, 23.f6 ♞xf6 24. ♗b3+ ♞ee6 25. ♞xf6 gxf6 26. ♘c6+–.

10.0-0!

Actually, the f2-pawn is untouchable! White should determine the position of the d-pawn only after Black's castling. If he castles short the pawn goes on d4, if long – on d3. That's a key moment!

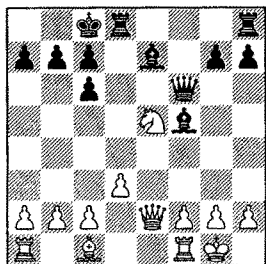


10...0-0

The c2-pawn cannot be taken! 10... ♙xc2 11.d3 ♙a4 (11...0-0 12. ♘f3 ♖g6 13. ♘e1!+–; 11...0-0-0 12. ♞e1 ♙d6 13. ♖g4+ ♗b8 14.

♘d7+. The win of the exchange is more advantageous here than the win of the queen – 14. ♖g5?! Zude – Brehm, Germany 1988, 14... ♖xe5 15. ♖xf6 ♖xf6 with a sudden compensation – 14... ♗xd7 15. ♗xd7 ♗g6 16. b3 ♖xd3 17. ♖b2 ♗h5 18. h3 ♗f8 19. g4! ♗g6 20. ♗e6 ♖f5 21. ♗xg6 ♖xd7 22. ♗xg7+–) 12. ♗e1! ♗e6 (12... 0–0 13. ♘d7+–; 12... 0–0 13. ♗g4 ♖b8 14. ♗xa4+–) 13. ♖g5!! ♖xg5 (13... 0–0 14. ♖xe7 ♗xe7 15. ♗g4 ♖b5 16. ♘d7+–; 13... 0–0 14. ♖xe7 ♗xe7 15. ♗g4+–) 14. ♗h5+ ♖f8 15. ♗xg5 ♖g8 16. ♗e4 ♖b5 17. ♗ae1 ♗f8 (17... ♗xa2 18. ♘g4 h6 19. ♗e8+ ♗xe8 20. ♗xe8+ ♖h7 21. ♘f6+ gxf6 22. ♗e7+ ♗f7 23. ♗xf7#; 17... h6 18. ♗g6 ♗e8 19. ♗h5 ♗f8 20. ♘g6 ♗f7 21. ♗f4 ♗e8 22. ♗xe8+ ♗xe8 23. ♗e4 ♗f7 24. ♗e7+–) 18. ♘xc6 ♗xc6 19. ♗e7 g6 20. ♗1e6 ♗f5 21. ♗h6+–;

10... 0–0–0. As practice shows, the long castling is hazardous for Black. 11. d3! Now this is the good move – White often creates threats to the black king along the free g1–a7 diagonal.



It can be said for sure that White's advantage is stable

against any defence of Black:

11... ♗hf8, Walther – Leisebein, corr. 1987, 12. ♖d2 ♖d6 13. ♖c3±;

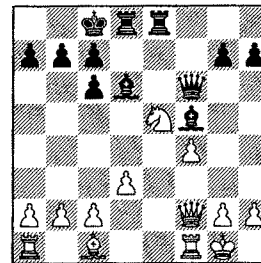
11... ♖d6 12. f4 h5 (12... ♗de8 13. ♗f2 ♗e7 14. ♗e1 ♖e6, Bon – Panman, corr. 1991, 15. ♘c4! ♖c5 16. ♖e3+–; 12... ♖xe5 13. fxe5 ♗g6, Pereira – Roose, corr. 1987, 14. ♗f2 ♖h3 15. ♖f4 ♗hf8 16. ♗d2 ♗de8 17. ♖g3±) 13. ♗f2! (A standard move which one must know – the queen is perfect on f2.) ♖b8 (13... ♗hf8 14. ♗xa7 ♖xe5 15. fxe5 ♗xe5 16. ♖g5 ♗de8 17. ♖f4 ♖b5 18. ♗ae1 c5 19. ♖e3 ♘d7 20. ♗xc5 1–0 Pauw – Wolferink, corr. 1993) 14. ♖e3 a6 15. ♖d4±;

11... ♖c5 12. ♖d2 ♗he8 13. ♖c3 ♗e6 14. ♖h1 ♗de8 15. f4 h6 16. b4 ♖d6 17. ♗f2 b6 18. ♖d4 ♖xe5 19. fxe5 ♗d8 20. ♖c3 ♖g6 21. a4± Canela – Hoiberg, Tuzla 1987, White is a pawn up and has a powerful attack;

11... g5 12. ♖d2! ♖d6 13. ♖c3 ♗he8 14. ♗ae1 ♗e7?? (14... ♗h6 15. ♗e3 ♖b8 16. f4±) 15. ♘xc6!! A marvellous blow! 15... ♖xh2+ 16. ♖h1 ♗xc6 17. ♗xe7 ♗h6 18. ♗f6 ♖g6 19. ♗e6+ ♖b8 20. ♗h3 ♗xh3 21. gxf3 1–0 Fournell – Dankelmann, corr. 1991;

11... ♗he8 12. f4 ♖d6 (12... ♖b8 13. ♖e3 a6 14. ♗f2 g5 15. ♖d4 ♗d6 16. fxf5 ♗xd4 17. ♗xd4 ♗xd4 18. ♗xf5 ♗d5 19. ♗e1 ♖c8 20. g4 ♖c5+ 21. ♖f1+– Butze – Padros, corr. 1987; 12... g5 13. ♗f2 ♖b8, Husted – Christensen, Denmark 1994, 14. ♖e3±; 13... b6 14. fxf5 ♗xe5 15. ♗xf5+ ♗xf5 16. ♗xf5

♖c5+ 17. ♖f1 ♗f8 18. ♗f3 ♗xf3+ 19. gxf3 ♗f8 20. f4 ♖d6 21. ♖f2 ♖xf4 22. ♖xf4 ♗xf4+ 23. ♖g3+– Bashkov – Oral, Mlada Boleslav 1993) 13. ♗f2!



Black has tried here various moves – no equality found:

13... c5 14. ♖e3 g5 15. ♘c4 ♖xf4 16. ♖xf4 gxf4 17. ♗xf4 1–0 Neumarker – Leisebein, corr. 1990;

13... a6 14. ♖d2 ♗e7 15. ♖h1 ♖b8 16. ♗fe1 ♗f8 17. b4 ♗e6 18. ♗ab1 h5 19. a4 g5 20. b5 axb5 21. axb5 c5 22. ♘c6+ bxc6 23. bxc6+ ♖a7 24. ♗b7+ 1–0 Devereaux – Wittmann, Oxford 1998;

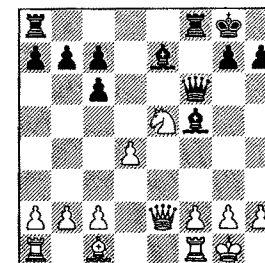
13... g5 14. ♘c4 ♖g4 15. ♖e3 ♖xf4 16. ♖xf4 gxf4 17. ♗xf4 ♗xf4 18. ♗xf4 ♖h5 19. ♗af1 ♗e2 20. ♗4f2 ♗de8 21. h3± A. Belov – Kondrashov, Kolontaevo 1998;

13... ♖xe5 14. fxe5 ♗xe5 15. d4 ♗a5 16. ♖d2 ♗ad5 17. c4 ♗xd4 (17... ♗5d7 18. ♗xf5 ♗xf5 19. ♗xf5 g6 20. ♗f4 c5 21. d5 c6 22. ♖e3 cxd5 23. ♖xc5 1–0 Wikman – Teo, corr. 1989) 18. ♖c3 g6 19. ♗ad1 c5 20. ♖xd4 cxd4 21. g4 ♗g5 22. ♗xd4 ♖xg4 23. h4 ♗h5 24. ♗xd8+ ♖xd8 25. ♗f8+ ♖d7 26. ♗f7+ ♖c6 27. ♗f6+ ♖d7 28. ♗g7+ 1–0 Glek – Yandemirov, USSR 1985;

13... b6 14. ♖d2 ♖c5 15. ♖e3! ♖f8 (15... ♖xe3 16. ♗xe3 g5 17. ♗ae1 g4 18. b4 h5 19. ♗d2 h4 20. ♗e3 ♗f8 21. a4 ♗h6 22. b5 cxb5 23. axb5 ♗d4 24. ♘c6 ♗a4 25. c4+– Videki – Zelic, Split 2001) 16. ♗ae1 ♖b8 17. ♗f3 ♖b7 18. ♖d2 a5 19. a3 ♗e7 20. b4 axb4 21. axb4 ♗d6 22. b5 ♖d7 23. c4 g6 24. ♗a1 ♗e6 25. ♖e3 ♗f6 26. c5+– Palciauskas – Brilla, corr. 1987;

13... ♖b8 14. ♖e3 a6 15. ♖d4 ♗f8 16. ♘c4 ♖c8 (16... ♗e6 17. ♘xd6 cxd6 18. ♗ae1 ♗de8 19. ♗xe6 ♖xe6 20. ♗e1 ♗xe1+ 21. ♗xe1 ♗f7 22. a4 g6 23. b3 ♗e6, Hrdina – Schwarz, corr. 1990, 24. ♖e3±; 16... ♗d7 17. a3 g6 18. b4 ♖e6 19. ♘e5 ♖xe5 20. ♖xe5 h5 21. ♗fb1 ♗f7 22. a4± Smekalin – Gorbunov, corr. 1996; 16... ♗f7 17. ♖e5 ♗e6 18. ♖xd6 cxd6 19. ♗ae1 ♗de8 20. ♗xe6 ♗xe6 21. ♗e1 ♗g6 22. ♗e3 ♖c8 23. h3 ♗e6 24. ♗xe6 ♗xe6 25. ♗d4 d5 26. ♗e5+ ♗xe5 27. ♘xe5± Trubitsyn – Gorbunov, corr. 1996) 17. a3 g6 18. b4 ♗h6 19. ♖c5 ♖e6 20. ♖xd6 cxd6 21. ♘a5± Glek – Arbakov, corr. 1985.

11. d4



11... ♖d6

11... ♗ad8 12. ♖e3 c5 13. ♗ad1

♔h8 14. ♔h1 cxd4 15. ♖xd4 ♖e6
16. ♗fe1 ♖d6 17. a3 h6 18. c4 c5
19. ♖c3 ♗de8 20. ♗xd6 ♖xd6 21.
♘f7+ ♗xf7 22. ♖xe8+ ♖f8 23.
♖xf8+ ♗xf8 24. ♗e7+- Sorsa –
Lardot, Naantali 1998;

11... ♗ae8 12. f4 c5 (12... ♖d6 –
see 11... ♖d6 12. f4 ♗ae8) 13. ♖e3
♖d6 14. ♗ae1. White has finished
the development harmoniously.
14... ♔h8 15. ♖f2 c6 16. dxc5
♖xe5 17. fxe5 ♖xe5 18. ♖d4 ♖d5,
Brinck-Claussen – Vistisen,
Copenhagen 1999. The poor po-
sition of the black pieces should
have been used in a neat and
decisive way: 19. g4!! 19... ♗d8
(19... ♗xe1 20. ♗xe1+-; 19... ♔g8
20. c4 ♖xc4 21. gxf5+-) 20. c3 ♖e6
21. ♖xf8+ ♗xf8 22. ♗xf8+ ♖g8
23. ♗ee8+-.

12. f4 ♖xe5

12... c5 13. ♖e3 ♗ae8 – see
11... ♗ae8 12. f4 c5 13. ♖e3 ♖d6.

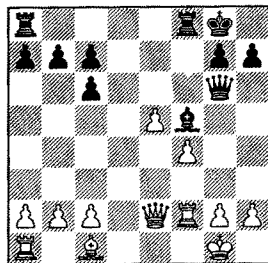
12... ♗ad8 13. ♗f2 ♖xe5 14.
d4xe5 ♖g6 – see the main line.

12... ♗ae8 13. ♖e3 c5 (13...
♖xe5 14. dxe5 ♖g6 15. ♗f2 h5
(Black's move 15... ♗d8 is a kind
of "loss" or "sacrifice" of tempo,
Zidu – Rybak, corr. 1999. The
fine point is that this position
happened a lot of times after
9... ♖f5 10. d3 and the pawn was
arriving to d4 in two steps.
Therefore Black was achieving
this position with his turn to
play! However even then he had
problems. 16. a4!?±) 16. ♔h1 ♗d8
17. h3 ♗d5 18. ♔h2 h4. The pawn
has cancelled the move g2-g4,
but very soon it could become a

mark itself. 19. ♗c1 ♗fd8 20. ♖f3
♔f7 21. ♗e2 a6 22. ♖f2+ Videki –
Bozanic, Split 1998.

13. dxe5 ♖g6 14. ♗f2

White's advantage is out of
question, but Black keeps prac-
tical chances to maintain the
balance.



14... ♗ad8

14... h5 15. ♔h1 ♖g4 16. ♖e1
♗ad8 17. ♖d2 b6 18. ♗c1 ♗d5 19.
h3 ♖e6 20. ♗e2 ♗fd8 21. ♔h2 ♖f5
22. ♖e3 ♗5d7 23. ♖h4 ♖c4 24. ♗f2
♖d5 25. ♗g1 ♖e4 26. ♗f3 ♖xc2 27.
♗g3. As far as Black is stubborn
in hindering the g2-g4 advance
(and that is a correct approach),
White has to use another possi-
bility – via the g3-square his rook
breaks into the play. 27... ♖f5 28.
♗g5 ♖e4 29. ♗xh5 ♖xe3 30. ♗h8+
♔f7 31. ♖h5+ ♔e7 32. ♖g5+ ♔f7
33. ♗xd8 ♗xd8 34. ♖xd8± V. Kuz-
netsov – Stjzhkina, St. Peters-
burg 2002.

14... a5 15. ♖e3 b6 16. ♖c4+
♔h8 17. ♗d1 ♗fe8 18. ♖c3 ♖e6 19.
a3 ♖g6 20. ♗fd2 h5 21. ♖f2 ♖g4
22. ♗e1 ♗ad8 23. ♖h4 ♗xd2 24.
♖xd2 ♖e6 25. ♖g5 ♖f7 26. h3 ♖f5
27. c3 b5 28. ♖f2 ♔g8 29. ♖h4 c5
30. g4. White came to the right

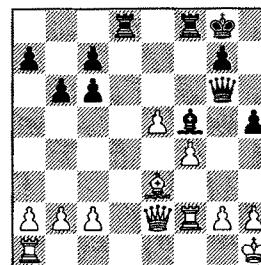
plan much later than in the pre-
vious game, but the position al-
lows it – Black is passive and has
nothing better than waiting. 30...
hxg4 31. hxg4 ♖c8 32. f5 ♖c4 33.
♖h5 ♖d7 34. e6 ♖c6 35. ♗e3 1–0
Ptacnikova – Cejkova, Nymburk
1994.

15. ♖e3 b6

15... ♗d5 16. ♗af1 h5 17. ♔h1
♔h7 18. h3 ♗fd8 19. ♗f3 ♔g8
20. ♔h2 ♖h7, Wolff – Dawidow,
Philadelphia 1991, 21. ♗g3 ♖xc2
22. ♖f2 ♖d3 23. ♗e1 b6 24. ♗g5±.

15... a5 16. ♔h1 b6, Moroz –
Mi. Tseitlin, corr. 1985, 17. h3 h5
18. ♔h2±.

16. ♔h1 h5



17. h3±

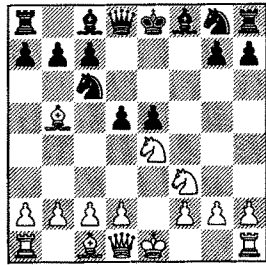
White regularly applies this
scheme, preparing the g2-g4 ad-
vance. It is understandable –
White has a clear pawn majority
on the kingside (four pawns
against two – double superior-
ity); if White's pawns start roll-
ing, there will be no rescue for
Black. 17... ♖g3 18. ♗f3 ♖g6 19.
♗f2 ♖g3 20. ♗f3 ♖g6 21. ♔h2
♖xc2 (The loss of ♖2-pawn in this
sort of positions must not disturb
White, yet it would be good to
snatch something in return – like
the c6, a7, or h4-pawn. In this
game White accomplished every-
thing skilfully.) 22. ♗g3 ♖f5 (Oth-
erwise the important h5-pawn is
lost.) 23. ♖c4+ ♗f7 24. ♖xc6 ♖e4
25. ♖c4 ♗d3 26. ♗e1 ♖d5 27. ♖a4
♖e6 28. ♖xa7 ♔h7 29. ♖a4 ♖xa2
30. ♗g5 g6 31. ♖e4 ♗b3 32. ♖c1
♗f5 33. ♗xf5 gxf5 34. ♖b7 ♖e7
35. ♖c8 ♖b1 36. ♗d1 ♖g7 37. ♗d7
♗g3 38. ♗xg7+ ♗xg7 39. g4 (Hav-
ing won the queen for a rook,
White undertakes g2-g4!) 39...
fxg4 40. hxg4 1–0 Schlosser –
Baumgartner, Finkenstein 1990.

Conclusion

*In the 5... ♘f6 variation White's edge is significant, however press-
ing it home is a hard work which demands accuracy. The great ex-
pectations of White are based on the centralised position of the ♖5-
knight. Black often prefers to exchange this strong piece, but then
White obtains big pawn superiority on the kingside and arranges
the dreadful g2-g4 advance. Black is saddled with long and
prospectless defence.*

Chapter 21

1.e4 e5 2. ♘f3 ♘c6 3. ♖b5 f5 4. ♘c3 fxe4 5. ♘xe4 d5 Jaenisch Gambit



6. ♘xe5

Definitely the best move – White should not avoid complications.

6...dxe4

The only move. The moves 6... ♖e7? 7.d4 and 6... ♖h4? 7. ♘g3 lead to unpleasant consequences for Black.

7. ♘xc6

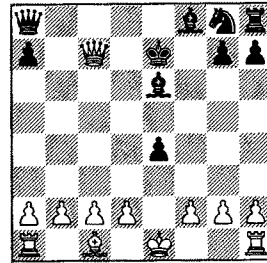
In this chapter we will study two continuations for Black on the 7th move 7... ♖d5 and 7... bxc6. They are thoroughly studied, though not the most popular.

7... ♖d5

After this move White steers the game by force into a sharp ending, keeping the initiative.

It is proved that Black has practically no chances for a good play after 7... bxc6?! 8. ♖xc6+ ♖d7

9. ♖h5+ ♖e7 (9...g6? 10. ♖e5+–)
10. ♖e5+ ♖e6 11. ♖xa8 ♖xa8
12. ♖xc7+.



White has already achieved material advantage and the black king is awkwardly placed.

12... ♖f6 13.0–0 ♖g6 14.d3. The simplest way to play for White. His pieces win freedom and White's material advantage attains paramount significance. 14... ♘f6 15. ♖e1 h5 16. ♖g3+ ♖f7 17.dxe4 h4 18. ♖c7+ ♖e7 19. ♖e3 ♖c8 20. ♖xa7 ♖c6 21.h3 ♘xe4 22.a4 ♘f6 23.a5± 1–0 Smejkal – Duckstein, Raach 1969;

12... ♖d7 13.d3 ♘f6 (13...exd3 14.0–0±) 14.0–0 h6 (14...exd3 15.cxd3 h6 16. ♖d2 ♖f7 17. ♖fe1 ♖c6 18. ♖ac1± Estrada – Domingo, Spain 1993) 15.dxe4 ♘e8

16. ♖a5 ♖e6 17. ♖e3 a6 18. ♖ae1 ♖f7 19. ♖a4 ♖e7 20.f4 ♘d6 21.f5 ♖c4 22. ♖c5 ♖xf1 23. ♖xd6 ♖c8 24. ♖d7 ♖e8 25. ♖e6+ ♖f8 26. ♖xf1 ♖xd6 1–0 Adamski – Nilsson, corr. 1962;

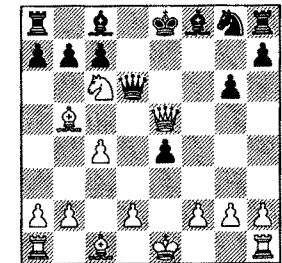
12... ♖e8 13.0–0 ♘f6 (13... ♖d5 14.d3 exd3 15. ♖e1+ ♖e7 16. ♖g5 ♖d8 17. ♖e5+–; 13... ♖e7 14.d3 ♖f7 15. ♖e3 ♘f6 16.dxe4 ♖c8 17. ♖xa7 ♖xe4 18.c3± Evans – Dueckstein, Lugano 1968; 14... exd3 15.cxd3 ♘f6 16. ♖e1 ♖f7 17. ♖e3 ♖c8 18. ♖xa7 ♖xa7 19. ♖xa7± Sio – Tanin, corr. 1974; 13... ♖c8 14. ♖xc8+ ♖xc8 15. ♖e1 ♖f7 16. ♖xe4 ♘f6 17. ♖e1 ♖d6 18.d3 ♖f5 19. ♖d2 ♖e8 20. ♖xe8 ♖xe8 21.a4+– Kudrin – Crafty, ICC 1995. An example from Michael Adams's career who played as White of course: 13... ♖d5 14.d3 ♖d6 15. ♖xg7 ♖e5 16. ♖xa7 exd3 17. ♖e1 ♘e7 18. ♖a4+ ♖f7 19. ♖e4 ♖xe4 20. ♖xe4 ♖f6 21.cxd3 ♖d8 22. ♖f4 ♖xd3 23. ♖e5 ♖xa2 24. ♖xf6 ♖xf6 25.h3 ♖d5 26. ♖a6+ ♘c6 27. ♖h4 ♖g7 28.b4 ♖b3 29. ♖b6+– Adams – Ferron Garcia, London 1993) 14. d3 ♖e7 15. ♖g5 ♖f7 (15...h6 16. ♖xf6 gxf6 17. ♖ae1 ♖g8 18.f3 ♖f7 19. ♖xe4 ♖c8 20. ♖a5 ♖d5 21. ♖e2 ♖c5+ 22. ♖h1 ♖b6 23. ♖a4 ♖b7 24. ♖h4+– Coenen – Schuermans, Belgium 2001) 16.dxe4 ♖c8 17. ♖f4 ♖xc2 18. ♖ac1 ♖xb2 19. ♖c7± Hennings – Lanc, DDR 1971.

8.c4 ♖d6

8... ♖g5?? 9.d4 ♖xg2 (9... ♖f6 10. ♖h5+–) 10. ♖h5+ g6 (10... ♖g6

11. ♘e5+–; 10... ♖d7 11. ♘e5+ ♖d6 12.c5+ ♖d5 13. ♖c4+ ♖xd4 14. ♖e3#) 11. ♖e5+ ♘e7 12. ♘xe7+ ♖f7 13. ♖e8+ ♖xe8 14. ♘d5+ ♖f7 15. ♖xc7+ ♖e6 16. ♘f4+–.

8... ♖c5, Stroe – Tzannetakis, corr. 1994, 9.d4! exd3 10. ♖e3 ♖d6 11.c5! d2+ 12. ♖f1 ♖f6 13. ♖h5+ g6 14. ♖e2, and White wins at least the exchange: 14...bxc6 15. ♖g5+ ♖e6 16. ♖xc6+ ♖f7 17. ♖xe6+ ♖xe6 18. ♖xa8 ♖c4+ 19. ♖g1 ♖xc5 (19... ♖h6 20.h4!+–) 20. ♖xd2 ♘f6 21. ♖c1 ♖d8 22. ♖e1+–
9. ♖h5+ g6 10. ♖e5+



10... ♖e5

The attempt 10... ♖f7 is punished by 11.c5! (the capture on h8 is much weaker) 11... ♖xe5 (11... ♖xc5?? 12. ♘d8#) 12. ♘xe5+ ♖g7 (12... ♖e7 13.d4 ♖g7 14. ♖g5+ ♘f6 15.0–0–0 c6 16. ♖c4 ♖f5 17.g4 ♖e6 18. ♖he1 ♖xc4 19. ♘xc4 ♖e6 20.f3+– Stets – Fedorovsky, Bydgoszcz 1999) 13.b4 ♖e7 14. ♖b2 ♖f6 15.0–0 ♖e6 16. ♖fe1 ♖d5 17. ♖c4 ♖d8 18. ♖ad1 ♖xc4 19. ♘xc4 ♖xb2 20. ♘xb2 ♘f6 21.f3 ♖d4 22.a3 ♖e8 23.fxe4 ♖dxe4 24. ♖xe4 ♖xe4 25.d3 ♖e2 26. ♘c4 ♘d5 27. ♖f1 ♖e6 28. ♖d2± Gibbons – Gill,

Auckland 1996.

11. ♘xe5+ c6

Worse is 11... ♖e7?! 12.d4 ♖g7 13. ♖f4 ♘f6 14.0-0± Svec – Weidel, Boeblingen 1985.

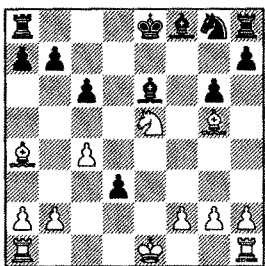
12. ♖a4

White must not take on c6, otherwise he would lose a piece!

12... ♖g7

12... ♖d6 13.d4! exd3 14.0-0! ♖f5 15. ♖e1 ♘e7, Anat – Verlager, ICC 1996, White could use a very strong sacrifice of the exchange: 16.g4! ♖b4 (16... ♖xe5? 17. ♖xe5 ♖xg4 18. ♖g5+-) 17. ♖g5! ♖xe1 (17... d2 18. ♖e3 ♖d7 19. ♘xd7 ♖xd7 20. ♖b3!+-) 18. ♖xe1 d2 19. ♖xd2 ♖e6 20. ♖b4 a5 21. ♖c5 ♘c8 22. ♘xc6 ♖f7 23. ♘e5+ ♖f6 24. ♖d4 ♖d8 25. ♖c3 ♖e7 26.c5 ♘a7 27. ♘f3 ♖d5 28. ♖b3+-.

12... ♖e6 13.d4! (White gets rid of the backward d2-pawn) 13... exd3 14. ♖g5! An important move which determines White's initiative.



The idea of distracting the white bishop from the active g5-square is worth studying: 14... ♖b4+ (14... ♖e7, Wolff – I.Gurevich, USA 1986, 15.h4! 0-0-0 16. 0-0-0 ♘f6 17. ♖he1 ♖b4 18. ♘xc6

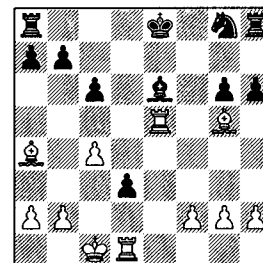
♖xe1 19. ♖xe1 ♖xc4 20. ♘xd8 ♖xd8 21. ♖e5+-) 15. ♖d2 ♖d6, Daamen – Becx, Bostel 1989, (15... ♖xd2+ 16. ♖xd2 0-0-0 17. ♖he1±) 16. ♘xc6! ♖d7 17.c5! ♖xc5 18. ♖c1 ♖b6 19.0-0! h6 (A similar endgame with the favourable for White material proportion (a rook and two pawns against black knight and bishop) arises also after 19... h5 20. ♖fe1+ ♖f8 21. ♖b4+ ♖g7 22. ♖cd1 ♖xc6 23. ♖c3+ ♖h7 24. ♖xc6 bxc6 25. ♖xd3 ♖d8 26. ♖xd8 ♖xd8 27. ♖xh8 ♖xh8 28. ♖e8 ♖f6 29.b4±) 20. ♖fe1+ ♖f8 21. ♖b4+ ♖g7 22. ♖cd1 ♖xc6 23. ♖c3+ ♖h7 24. ♖xc6 bxc6 25. ♖xd3 ♖d8 26. ♖xd8 ♖xd8 27. ♖xh8 ♖xh8 28. ♖e8 ♖f6 (28... ♖b6 29. ♖e6 ♖g7 30. ♖xc6 ♘e7 31. ♖c4±) 29.b4 ♖g7 30. ♖c8 ♘e7 31. ♖c7 ♖f7 32. ♖xa7 ♖e6 33. ♖a6 ♖d6 34.b5 ♖c7 35. bxc6 ♘xc6 36. ♖f1 ♖b7 37. ♖a3±.

14... ♖g7 15.0-0-0! A key position, determining the assessment of the whole variation. White's main trump is the advantage in development.

15... h6 16. ♖f4 g5 17. ♖g3 0-0-0 18. ♖he1 ♖xe5. The capture on e5 happened to be forced anyway. 19. ♖xe5 ♖h7 20.b3 ♖f5 (20... ♖hd7 21. ♖d2 ♖f7 22.f3±) 21. b4 ♖e7 22. ♖c3 ♖de8 23. ♖xe7 ♖xe7 24. ♖e1 ♖xe1+ 25. ♖xe1 ♘f6 26.f3 ♖e6 27. ♖b3 b5 28. cxb5 ♖xb3 29. axb3 cxb5 30. ♖c3 ♘d5 31. ♖d2 ♖d7 32.g3 ♖e6 33. ♖d3±;

15... ♖xe5. Now White gets a tangible advantage, i.e. the bishop pair. The question is if

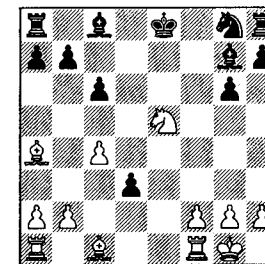
Black had something better. 16. ♖he1 h6 (Black had a possibility to remain with two extra pawns: 16... ♖f7 17. ♖xe5 ♖xc4 18. ♖de1! ♖xa2, but things look bad for him after 19. ♖d2! h6 20. ♖c3 ♖h7 21. ♖5e3 ♖f8 22. ♖b4+ ♖g7 23. ♖xd3 ♖d5 24. ♖c2! ♘f6 25. ♖g3 ♖f7 26. ♖c3 ♖e8 27. ♖xe8 ♖xe8 28. ♖f3+-; 21... ♖d5 22. ♖b3! 23. ♖f3+ ♘f6 24. ♖xf6+ ♖g8 25. ♖xg6+ ♖f7 26. ♖f6+ ♖g8 27. ♖e3. Black is hopeless. 27... h5 28. h4+-; 27... ♖g7 28. ♖xh6 ♖d8 29. ♖d2+-) 17. ♖xe5:



17... ♖f7 18. ♖d2! The retreat to e3 is worse – White needs the open e-file. 18... ♘f6 (18... ♖xc4 19. ♖e4 ♖xa2 20. ♖c3+- – White's attack quickly decides the outcome; 19... ♖d5 20. ♖f4+ ♖e6 21. ♖c3 ♖h7 22. ♖xd3±; 21... g5 22. ♖e1 ♖d7 23. ♖d4 ♘e7 24. ♖b4!+-; 23... ♘f6 24. ♖xd3 b5 25. ♖xf6+-; 22... ♖d6 23. ♖d4 ♘f6 24. ♖xd3 ♖hf8 25. ♖b4+! c5 26. ♖c3 c4 27. ♖b4+ ♖c7 28. ♖d4 ♖f7 29. ♖e7+ ♖xe7 30. ♖xe7+-; 29... ♖c8 30. ♖c2!+-; 24... ♖he8 25. ♖xe8 ♘xe8 26. ♖h3±) 19. ♖b3 ♖he8 20. ♖de1 20... ♘d7 (Black's position is bad – defending his unprotected king

Black has to allow exchanges and then the d3-pawn becomes very weak. This is the pay off of Black's early opening aggression. 20... ♘g4 21. ♖xe6 ♖xe6 22.c5 ♖ae8 23.f3 ♘f6 – 23... ♘xh2? 24. ♖f4+- – 24. ♖xe6 ♖xe6 25. ♖xe6+ ♖xe6 26. ♖xh6 ♖d5 27. ♖e3 ♘d7 28. ♖d2+-; 20... g5 21.f4. The weaknesses on the kingside are disclosed and this is where the black king is! 21... gxf4 22. ♖xf4 a5 23. ♖xh6 a4 24. ♖d1 ♖xc4 25. ♖xe8 ♖xe8 26. ♖xe8 ♖xe8 27. ♖d2 ♖xa2 28. ♖xd3 b5 29. ♖d4±) 21. ♖5e4 ♘c5 22. ♖f4+ ♖f5 23. ♖xe8 ♘xb3+ 24. axb3 ♖xe8 25. g4 ♖e6 26. ♖f6 ♖f7 27. ♖xh6+-;

17... hxg5 18. ♖xe6+ ♖f7 19. ♖d6! ♘f6 20. ♖1xd3 g4 (20... ♖xh2? 21. ♖f3+-; 20... ♖h4 21. ♖b3! c5 22. ♖f3 ♖f4 23. ♖xf4 gxf4 24. ♖d1±) 21.f3! ♖xh2 22.fxg4 ♘e4 (22... ♖e8 23.g5! ♘e4 24. ♖f3+-; 22... ♘xg4 23. ♖d7+ ♖f6 24. ♖xb7±) 23. ♖f3+ ♖g7 24. ♖d7+ ♖h6 25. ♖e3! ♘c5?! (25... ♘g5 26. ♖xb7 ♖xg2 27. ♖xc6 ♖xg4 28. ♖d5+-) 26.g5+! 1-0 Timman – Piket, Wijk aan Zee 1995, 26... ♖xg5 27. ♖e5+; 26... ♖h5 27. ♖d1+ ♖xg5 28. ♖e5+.

13.d4 exd3 14.0-0!

14... ♖xe5

14... ♗e7 15. ♖e1 0–0 16. ♖g5 ♗f5 17. ♖ad1 ♖e8 18. ♗xd3 ♖e6, Fragger – Contedini, Reggio Emilia 1961, White could have retained his material advantage in a favourable situation: 19. ♗c5 ♖xc4 20. ♗xb7 ♖xe1+ 21. ♖xe1 ♖d5 22. b3 h6 23. ♖f4 ♗h4 24. ♖g3 ♗xg2 25. ♖c1 ♖c8 26. ♗d6 ♖c7 27. ♗f5±.

14... ♖e6 15. ♖e1 0–0–0, Tuovinen – Auvinen, Helsinki 1998, there is a bag of tricks in this position and White's advantage is not easy to be found! The following line is better: 16. ♖g5! d2 (16... ♖e8 17. ♗xd3 ♗f6 18. ♖ac1±) 17. ♖e2 ♖f6 (17... ♖e8 18. ♗xc6 bxc6 19. ♖xc6 ♗f6 20. ♖xe8 ♖xe8 21. ♖xd2+- – White must not take on c4 because of the rooks exchange and the following pin along the c-file) 18. h4!! Perfect! ♖xg5 (18... h6 19. ♖xd2 ♖xe5 20. ♖xe5 ♖xd2 21. ♖xe6 ♖xb2 22. ♖e8+ ♗d7 23. ♖a8+-; 19... ♖xd2 20. ♖xd2 ♖xe5 21. ♖e1 ♖f4 22. ♖d4+-) 19. hxg5 b5 20. cxb5 cxb5 21. ♖c2±.

The move 14... ♖f5 which looks quite sound has not been tested yet. GM A. Bezgodov has found an interesting combination which call in question this move. 15. ♗xc6!! ♖d7 16. ♖e1+ ♗f8 17. ♗d4 ♖xa4 (17... d2? 18. ♖xd2 ♖xa4 19. ♗e6+ ♗f7 20. ♗xg7+-) 18. ♗e6+ ♗f7 19. ♗xg7! There is no need to draw with the check on g5. 19... ♗xg7 20. b3 ♖e8 (20... ♖e8 21. ♖b2+ ♗f6 22. bxa4±)

21. ♖b2+ ♗f6 22. ♖e7+ ♖f7 23. g4 g5 (23... ♖he8 24. g5 ♖xe7 25. gxf6+ ♗f8 26. ♖a3+-) 24. f4! ♗g6 (24... h6 25. ♖f1+-) 25. fxc5 ♗xg4 26. ♖xh8 ♖xh8 27. h3 ♖e8 28. ♖xe8 ♖xe8 29. hxg4+-.

15. ♖e1 ♖e6

The reversed move-order is possible: 15... ♗f6 16. ♖xe5 ♗f7 17. ♖g5 – see 15... ♗f7 16. ♖xe5 ♗f6 17. ♖g5.

15... ♗f7 16. ♖xe5 ♗f6 (16... ♖e6 – see 15... ♖e6) 17. ♖g5 h6 (17... ♖e6 18. ♖ae1 ♖ae8 19. ♖b3 ♗d7 20. ♖5e3 ♗c5 21. ♖d1 h6 22. ♖f3+ ♖f5 23. ♖e3 h5 24. h3 h4 25. g4 hxg3 26. fxc3 ♖xh3 27. ♗g2 d2 28. ♖e2 ♗d3) 18. ♖d2 ♗g4 19. ♖ee1 ♖e6 20. ♖ac1 ♖ad8 21. ♖c3 h5 22. f3 ♗f6 23. ♗f2 ♖he8, Kr. Georgiev – Moehring, Zambardi 1978, 24. ♖d1 c5 25. ♖e3 ♖f5 26. ♖a3! a6 27. ♖xe8 ♖xe8 28. ♖e3 ♗d7 29. h3 h4 30. ♖g5 ♖h8 31. ♖b3 b6 32. ♗e1! ♖e8+ 33. ♗d2±.

16. ♖xe5 ♗f7 17. ♖b3 ♗f6 18. ♖g5 ♗d7

It is hard to say which of the moves is better here for Black. White wants to consolidate his position retaining the bishop pair advantage and gradually closing the ring round the d3-pawn. Black strives for a favourable ending with bishops of the opposite colour and a knight versus bishop. His main chance is White's vulnerable c4-pawn.

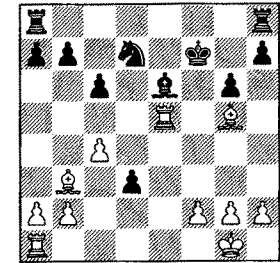
18... ♖ad8 19. h3. In the present situation White prefers to leave the f3-square free and

hopes to utilise it for his rook – now the f6-knight is pinned! 19... h6 (19... ♖he8 20. ♖e3 h5 21. ♖d1 ♖f5 22. ♗f1 c5 23. f3 ♗h7 24. ♖xd8 ♖xe3 25. ♖e1±) 20. ♖d2 ♗d7 21. ♖e3 ♗c5 22. ♖f3+ ♗g8 23. ♖e1 ♖f7 24. h4 b5 25. ♖a5± ♖c8 (25... ♖d7 26. cxb5+-) 26. ♖c1 ♗b7 27. ♖c3 ♖h7 28. cxb5 ♖xb3 29. axb3 ♖d7 30. ♖d1 cxb5 31. ♖fxd3+- Volchok – Peleshev, corr. 1984.

18... ♖he8 19. ♖e3 ♖f5, De Klerk – Vlugt, corr. 1983, 20. f3! A useful move indeed. It tunes up the co-ordination of the white pieces – the king gains access via f2 to the annoying d3-pawn. An additional and important consequence of this excellent move is the possibility of quick mobilisation of the white kingside's pawns (the pawn majority is there – it is to be remembered!) 20... ♖xe3 (20... ♖ad8 21. ♗f2±) 21. ♖xe3 a5 22. ♗f2 ♖e6 23. ♖c1! The ♖4-pawn must not be lost! 23... a4 (23... b5 24. cxb5 ♖xb3 25. axb3 cxb5 26. ♖c7+! ♗e6 27. ♖c6+ ♗f7 28. ♖g5±) 24. ♖d1 a3 25. b3±.

18... a5 19. ♖ae1 ♖he8 20. ♖d1 d2 (20... ♖ad8 21. b3 b6 22. f3 c5 23. g4 a4 24. ♗f2 axb3 25. axb3 ♖d4 26. h3 h5 27. ♖d2±) 21. ♖1e3.

(Now White neatly “rounds up” the f2-pawn.) 21... ♖ad8 22. f3 b6 23. b3 c5 24. ♖e2 ♖d6 25. ♗f2 ♖ed8 26. ♖5e3 ♖8d7 27. ♖f4 ♖c6 28. ♖c3 ♗h5 (28... ♖f5 29. ♖xd2 ♖xd2+ 30. ♖xd2 ♖d6 31. ♗e2 ♖b1 32. a3+-) 29. ♖g5 ♖cd6 30. g4 ♗f6 31. ♖f4 ♖d4 32. ♖e5 ♖xg4 33. ♖xf6 ♖f5 34. ♖e5+- Stern – Mallee, corr. 1991.

**19. ♖e3±**

White's advantage is in the activity of his pieces, the possibility to attack the unprotected black king, and, important, in the weakness of the black d3-pawn which will fall off itself soon. The material advantage will become one more plus for White. 19... h6 20. ♖f3+ ♗g7 21. ♖d2 ♖he8 22. ♖xd3 ♗c5 23. ♖c3+ ♗h7 24. ♖e3 ♗xb3 25. axb3± Szalanczy – Polajzer, Hungary 1981.

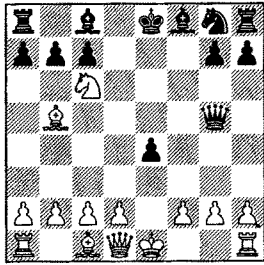
Conclusion

In this chapter we have scrutinised two Black's possibilities on the 7th move – they are interesting and not so popular in tournament practice. The 7... bxc6 move can be labelled as losing because of the big material advantage for White. This cannot be said of the second possibility, i.e. 7... ♗d5. Playing at his best White gets “only” a bit more favourable endgame in which both sides are possibly yet to say their final word.

Chapter 22

1. e4 e5 2. ♘f3 ♘c6 3. ♖b5 f5 4. ♘c3
fxe4 5. ♘xe4 d5 6. ♘xe5 dxe4
7. ♘xc6 ♖g5
Jaenisch Gambit

The strongest move which leads to the main variation of Jaenisch Gambit. White's play must be accurate and energetic. It must be based on certain knowledge, too.



8. ♖e2

The queen has secured the b5-bishop and attacked the important e4-pawn. It is noteworthy that Black loses by force in case of the obvious capture on g2.

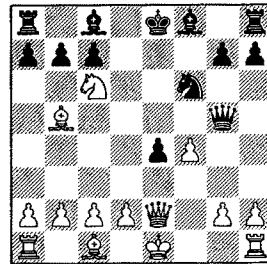
8... ♘f6

Let us explain why 8... ♖xg2? is bad. Because of the 9. ♖h5+! ♘d7 (9... g6 10. ♖e5+ ♖e7 11. ♘xe7+ ♘f8 12. ♖f1 ♖g4 13. ♘g8 ♘xg8 14. ♖c4+ ♘f8 15. d4 h6 16. ♖xh8+ ♘e7 17. ♖e5+ ♘d7 18. ♖f4 1-0 Bordonada – Hsu, Manila 1977) 10. ♘e5+ ♘e6, Ballan –

Boons, corr. 1991, 11. ♖f7+ ♘xe5 12. d4+ exd3 13. ♖f4+ ♘e4 14. ♖xd3+ ♘f3 15. ♖e2+ ♘e4 16. f3+–
The move 8... ♖f5? won't do as well, 9. ♖c4! ♖d7 (9... ♖xg2 10. ♘e5+ c6 11. ♖f7+ ♘d8 12. ♖f1 ♖xh1 13. ♖xf8+ ♘c7 14. ♖xg7+ ♘b6 15. ♘c4+ ♘a6 16. ♖c3+–) 10. ♖xe4+–.

9. f4!

The long experience proves White should immediately return the extra pawn in order to avoid trouble. In this way he eliminates the need of protecting the weakness on g2. White often manages to take advantage of the f-file (which is opened in case of capture on f4).



Black usually chooses one the two answers: a) 9... ♖h4?! and b) 9... ♖xf4.

Other (significantly weaker) retreats of the black queen almost never occur in tournaments: 9... ♖h5 10. ♘e5+ c6 11. ♖c4+; 9... ♖c5 10. d4 ♖d6 11. ♘e5+ c6 12. ♖c4 ♖xd4 (12... ♖e6 13. ♖e3+–) 13. c3 ♖b6 (13... ♖c5 14. ♖e3 ♖e7 15. ♖f7+ ♘d8 16. 0-0-0+–) 14. ♖f7+ ♘d8 15. ♖e3 ♖c7 (15... ♖c5 16. ♖d1+ ♘c7 17. ♘c4 ♖b5 18. a4 ♖xa4 19. ♖xc5+– Balcar – Rerabkova, Plzen 1998) 16. 0-0-0+ ♖d7 17. ♘xd7 ♘xd7 18. ♖e6 ♖d6 19. ♖xd7+– Abbassova – Prokopenko, Bratislava 1993.

a) 9... ♖h4?!

Black often declined the capture, however without much success in the last years.

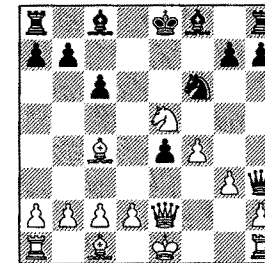
10. g3 ♖h3

10... ♖h6 11. ♘e5+ c6 12. ♖c4 ♖c5 13. d3 ♖f8 14. ♖e3 ♖b6 15. 0-0-0 ♖h3 16. ♖xb6 axb6 17. dxe4 ♘d7 18. ♖d2 ♘e7 19. ♘xd7 ♖xd7 20. ♖d6+ ♘e8 21. ♖e5+ 1-0 Gonzalez – Luque, corr. 1983.

11. ♘e5+ c6

11... ♖d7?? 12. ♘xd7 ♘xd7 13. ♖xe4+–.

12. ♖c4



Sacrificing a pawn Black hopes to use his advantage in development and the fact that the white king is still in the middle. Nevertheless things are not so serene for Black. First, his lead in development is contestable. Second, the white king can escape to the queenside. (Do not take on c6 – you'll lose a piece! 12. ♘xc6?? a6 13. ♖a4 ♖d7)

12... ♖c5

Other alternatives were tried too:

12... h5 13. d3! White should immediately take care of his development ignoring dubious raids to f7. If White waists time Black can get good prospects, indeed. 13... h4 (13... ♖f5 14. dxe4 ♖xe4 15. ♘f7 ♖c5 16. ♖f1 ♖f8 17. ♘g5 ♖g2 18. ♘e6 1-0 Geemen – Blijlevens, corr. 1972) 14. ♖d2 hxg3 15. ♖f7+ ♘d8 16. 0-0-0! The white king left the hot zone on time and Black's position immediately became dubious. 16... g2, Van der Zwan – Den Hamer, corr. 1980, 17. ♖hg1 e3 18. ♖a5+ b6 19. ♖c3 c5 20. ♖xg2 ♖b7 21. ♖g3 ♖xh2 22. ♖xe3+–;

12... ♖e6. A solid move, though it presents no immediate danger for White. He can favourably complete the development retaining his extra pawn. 13. b3! ♖c5 14. ♖b2 0-0-0 15. 0-0-0 ♖he8 16. ♖xe6+ ♖xe6 17. ♖he1 h5 18. ♖c4 ♖d5 19. ♖f1 ♖f5 20. d3± Adorjan – Rigo, Budapest 1976;

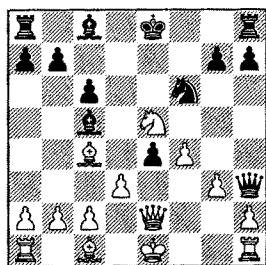
12... ♖b4. A strange move.

Black gambles on surprise, but White does not need anything supernatural to counter this move. 13. c3 ♖a5 14. d3 exd3 15. ♘xd3+ ♗d8 16. ♖e5 ♗c7 17. f5 ♗b8 18. ♖f4 ♖c7 19. 0-0-0 ♖xf5 20. ♘d3 ♖e8 21. ♗f2± Andersson – Llobart, corr. 1979;

12... ♖f5, Nemeč – Zitek, Klavov 1999, 13. b3! 0-0-0 14. ♖b2 ♖b4 15. 0-0-0 ♖he8 16. ♗e3. White retained his extra pawn and seized the initiative. Black's major pieces – the king and the queen – are uncomfortable.

16... ♗b8 17. ♖f1 ♗h5 18. ♖e2±.

13.d3



13... ♘g4

Black used various means to set troubles to the opponent but the practice proved White's big advantage:

13... ♖g4 14. ♘g4 ♘g4, W. Schneider – Rost, corr. 1987, the easiest winning move was 15. ♖e6+;

13... h5 14. ♖e3 ♖xe3 15. ♖f7+ ♗d8 16. ♗xe3± Rotter – Hucks, corr. 1984;

13... exd3, Kane – Behrmann, corr. 1997, 14. cxd3! ♖e7 (14... ♖b4+ 15. ♖d2±) 15. ♖d2±;

13... ♖e6, Lehmann – Niwold, corr. 1991, 14. ♖d2! The development is important – after a long castle White has perfect chances. 14... ♖xc4 (14... ♖d4 15. 0-0-0 ♖xe5 16. fxe5 ♖g4 17. ♗f1+–) 15. dxc4! 0-0-0 16. 0-0-0 ♖he8 17. ♖a5 ♖xd1+ 18. ♖xd1 h5 19. ♗d2 b6 20. ♖c3 e3 21. ♗e2±;

13... ♖f5 14. ♖e3 exd3 (14... ♖xe3 15. ♗xe3± T. Schneider – Knies, corr. 1986; 14... ♖d6 15. ♘f7 ♖b4+, Hodova – Umancova, Svetla nad Sazavou 1999, 16. ♖d2 ♖g4 17. ♗f2 ♖xd2+ 18. ♗xd2 ♖f8 19. ♘d6+–; 14... ♖b6, Gromotka – E. Nagy, corr. 1991, 15. 0-0-0±; 14... ♖b4+ 15. c3 ♖e7 16. dxe4 ♖xe4 17. ♖f7+ ♗f8 18. ♖f1 ♖f5 19. 0-0-0± Goedhart – Kuhlmann, corr. 1994) 15. ♖xd3 ♖xe3 (15... ♖xd3 16. ♘xd3 ♖xe3 17. ♗xe3+ ♗d8 18. 0-0-0+– Oesterle – Knies, corr. 1987) 16. ♗xe3 ♘d5 17. ♖xf5 ♗xf5 18. ♗d3± W. Browne – D. Minic, Mannheim 1975;

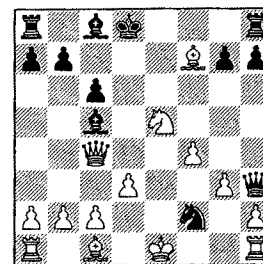
13... ♖d4, Kosa – Bobak, Debrezen 1998. A very interesting move which requires a sharp and concrete response. 14. ♖f7+! The beginning of White's counter-attack. The more calm continuations would have lost the advantage. 14... ♗e7 (14... ♗d8 15. dxe4 ♗c7 16. ♘f3 ♖g4 17. c3 ♖c5 18. f5 ♖hf8 19. ♖f4+ ♗b6 20. b4+–; 14... ♗f8 15. ♖b3 ♖f5 16. ♖e3 ♖xb2 17. ♖d1 ♖c3+ 18. ♖d2 ♖xd2+ 19. ♗xd2 a5 20. ♗c3 ♖e8 21. ♗c5+ ♖e7 22. dxe4+–; 15... exd3 16. ♗xd3 ♗g2 17. ♖f1 ♖h3 18. ♖e3!

The exchange sacrifice is necessary. It gives White a decisive advantage. 18... ♖xe3?? 19. ♗d6+ ♗e8 20. ♖f7#; 18... ♖xe5 19. fxe5 ♗xf1+ 20. ♗xf1 ♖xf1 21. ♖c5+ ♗e8 22. exf6+–; 18... ♗xf1 19. ♗xf1 ♖xf1 20. ♖xd4 ♖h3 21. ♖c5+ ♗e8 22. 0-0-0 ♘d5 23. ♖e1+–) 15. ♖b3! ♖g4 (15... ♖d8 16. ♖e3 exd3 17. cxd3 ♗f8 18. 0-0-0±; 15... ♖e8 16. dxe4±) 16. ♘g4 ♗xg4 17. dxe4 ♗xe2+ 18. ♗xe2 ♘xe4 19. ♗d3 ♘f2+ 20. ♗xd4 ♘h1 (20... ♖ad8+ 21. ♗c3 ♘h1 22. ♖e3+–) 21. ♖e3+–.

14. ♗xe4! ♘f2 15. ♖f7+ ♗d8

15... ♗e7 16. ♗c4 ♖b6 17. ♖f1 ♗xh2 18. ♗b4+ c5 19. ♗d2 ♘g4 20. ♗xh2 ♘h2 21. ♖f2 ♘g4 22. ♖e2 ♘xe5 23. ♖c4 ♖g4 24. ♖xe5± Green – Furmston, corr. 1996.

16. ♗c4



A popular position in the recent past. Nowadays Black makes sure to avoid it.

16... ♖b6

16... ♘h1 17. ♗xc5 ♗c7 18. ♗e7+ ♖d7 19. f5 ♗xf5 20. ♖f4+–; 16... ♗g2 17. ♗xc5+–.

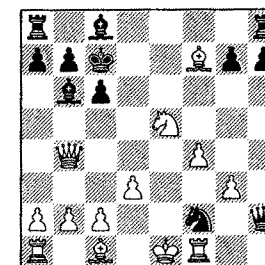
17. ♖f1 ♗xh2

17... ♘g4 18. ♘g4 ♗xg4 19. f5 ♗xc4 (19... ♖xf5 20. ♖f4 ♗h3

21. ♖h4 ♗g2 22. ♖g5+ ♗d7 23. 0-0-0+–) 20. ♖g5+ ♗c7 21. ♖xc4 ♖d4 22. ♖f4+ ♗b6 23. c3 ♖e8+ 24. ♗d2 ♖f6 25. g4+– Heemsoth – Konstantinopolski, corr. 1975;

18. ♗b4 ♗c7

18... c5 19. ♗d2 ♘g4 (19... c4 20. dxc4+–) 20. ♗xh2 ♘h2 21. ♖h1 ♘g4 22. ♘g6+– Konikowski – Hawelko, Augustow 1974; 18... ♖f5 19. ♗d6+ ♗c8 20. ♖e6+ ♖xe6 21. ♗xe6+ ♗b8 22. ♗e7 a5 (22... ♘h1 23. ♘d7+ ♗c8 24. ♘b6 axb6 25. ♖e3 ♖a6 26. 0-0-0 ♘g3 27. ♗xg7 ♘e2+ 28. ♗d2!+–) 23. ♖e3 ♖xe3 24. ♘d7+ ♗c8 25. ♗xe3 ♘g4 26. ♘b6+ ♗b8 27. ♗e2 ♗xe2+ 28. ♗xe2± Redolfi – Anglada, corr. 1983.



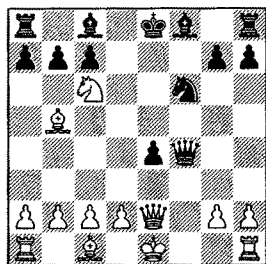
19. ♖e3!→

Black's attack has lost his momentum and White's threats are obviously prevailing. It often happens to unfounded attempts for siezing the initiative in the opening. 19... ♘g4 (19... ♖xe3 20. ♗e7+ ♗b8? 21. ♗d6#; 20... ♗b6 21. ♘c4+–; 19... ♖h3 20. ♖xb6+ axb6 21. ♗e7+ ♗b8 22. ♗d6+ ♗a7 23. ♘xc6+! bxc6 24. ♗c7+ ♗a6 25. ♖c4+ ♗a5 26. ♗e5+ b5 27. ♗c7+–; 19... ♘d3+ 20. cxd3

♖xg3+ 21. ♖f2 ♖xf2+ 22. ♗xf2 ♗e3+ 23. ♗e2 ♖g3+ 24. ♘d2 1-0 Goedhart – Martin Cervignon, corr. 1994) 20. ♖xb6+ axb6 21. ♗e7+ ♘b8 22. 0-0-0 ♖xg3 (22... ♗a5 23. ♗h1 ♗f2 24. ♘g6 hxg6 25. ♗xh8 ♘e3 26. ♖b3 ♘d1 27. ♗d8 ♗e3+ 28. ♘b1+- Boucqueau – Starace, IECG 2001) 23. ♗d6+ ♘a7 24. ♗f3 ♖g2 25. d4 b5 26. ♘xc6+! 1-0 Konikowski – Roose, corr. 1974.

b) 9... ♖xf4

The strongest move – Black simply regains a pawn.



10. ♘e5+!

White does not let the enemy queen on the good d6-square.

10...c6

The only move actually. Evidently worse is 10... ♖d7? 11. d4 ♖h4+ 12. g3 ♖h3 13. ♘d7 ♘d7 14. ♗xe4+ ♖e7 15. ♖g5 0-0-0 16. ♖xe7 ♗he8 17. 0-0-0+- Plaskett – Cast, Birmingham 2001.

Stupid is 10... ♘e7? 11. d4 ♖h4+ 12. g3± Ross – Confente, corr. 1992.

11. d4 ♖h4+

The queen is heading for the good h3-square. The capture en

passant 11...exd3?? results in great troubles for Black 12. ♖xd3 ♖b4+ (to the same tragic consequences leads 12... ♖h4+ 13. g3 ♖b4+ 14. ♖d2 ♗e7 15. 0-0-0 ♖h3 16. ♖b4 ♗e6 17. ♖c4 ♘d5 18. ♖xd5 cxd5 19. ♖b5+ ♘d8 20. ♗xd5+ ♘c7 21. ♖c4+ ♖c5 22. ♗xc5 ♘d8 23. ♗d5+ 1-0 Kuhlmann – Hallila, corr. 1994) 13. ♖d2 ♗e7 14. 0-0-0 ♖e6 15. ♗he1 0-0-0 16. ♘xc6 bxc6 17. ♖a6+ ♘b8 18. ♖f4+ ♘a8 19. ♗xe6 ♗xd1+ 20. ♗xd1 ♗xe6 21. ♗d8+ 1-0 Schmidt – Markus, the Hague 1961.

The move 11... ♗f5? looks also unconvincing 12. ♖c4 ♖e6 13. ♗f1 ♖xc4 14. ♖xc4 ♖h5 15. ♗e6+ ♖e7 16. ♖e3 ♗d8 17. g4+- Van Eijk – Boons, corr. 1991.

12. g3 ♖h3

The queens trade is weaker 12... ♖h5 13. ♖xh5+ ♘xh5 14. ♖c4 ♘f6 15. ♖f7+ ♘e7 16. ♖b3 ♖e6 17. ♖g5 ♖xb3 18. axb3 ♘e6 19. ♘c4 ♘d5 20. 0-0 h6 21. ♖f4 g5 22. ♖e5 ♗g8 23. ♗ae1± Milu – Savic, Borovo 2001. Black is bad, as his ♖4-pawn is weak.

13. ♖c4

From here the bishop holds a number of important squares under control.

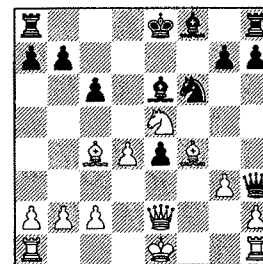
13... ♖e6

13... ♖g4? An unsuitable idea – after the exchanges the e4-pawn becomes weak. 14. ♘g4 ♖xg4 15. ♖xg4 ♘g4 16. 0-0 b5 17. ♖e6 ♘f6 18. ♖g5 ♖e7 19. ♗ae1 ♗d8 20. c3± Semenuk – Loysha, Rostov 1972.

Possible is 13... ♖d6 14. ♖f4!

♖xe5 (Black should better switch to the main line by 14... ♖e6 – see 13... ♖e6 14. ♖f4 ♖d6) 15. ♖xe5 ♖g4 16. ♗f1 ♖h6 17. ♗f4! an important resource! White forces a transfer to endgame with his clear edge thanks to the bishop pair advantage. 17... ♗xf4 18. gxf4 b5 19. ♖b3 a5 20. a4 ♗a7 21. ♘d2! b4 22. ♗hg1 h5 23. ♗ae1 ♗e7 24. c3 bxc3+ 25. bxc3 ♘d7 26. ♖c2 ♖f3 27. ♗b1 ♘e8 28. ♗b7+ ♘d8 29. ♗b8+ ♘d7 30. ♗gb1 ♘e6 31. ♖b3+ ♘f5 32. ♗g1+- Loechner – Rubesov, corr. 1960.

14. ♖f4



14... ♖d6

14... 0-0-0 15. 0-0-0 ♖b4? (better is to return to the main line with 15... ♖d6 – see 14... ♖d6 15. 0-0-0 0-0-0) 16. c3 ♖a5?? 17. ♘xc6! This move should be remembered – it is always on the agenda after a long castle. 17... bxc6 18. ♖xe6+ ♗xe6 19. ♖a6+ ♘d7 20. ♖xa5+-.

The idea of delaying the castle is dubious – 14... ♗d8 15. 0-0-0 ♖d6 16. ♖g5! ♗f5 (in case of 16... 0-0? 17. ♗f1± Black loses the exchange) 17. ♖xf6 gxf6 18. ♗hf1 ♖g5+ 19. ♘b1 ♖xe5 20. ♖xe6

♗xd4, Bologan – Chandler, Germany 1994, 21. ♗xd4 ♖xd4 22. ♗xe4 ♗e5 23. ♗d3 ♗xe6 24. ♗xd4 0-0 25. ♖xa7 ♗e2 26. ♗f2±.

14... ♖e7 15. 0-0-0 0-0 16. ♖g5 ♗ae8 17. ♘b1 ♖xc4 18. ♖xc4+ ♘d5 19. ♖xe7 ♗xe7 20. ♗e2 e3 21. ♗hf1 ♖e6 22. ♗xf8+ ♘xf8 23. c4 ♘b4 24. g4± Balenovic – Zelic, Medulin 1997.

14... ♖b4 15. c3 ♖e7 16. 0-0-0 0-0, Diez Fraile – Ramon Perez, Barcelona 2000, White keeps his stable initiative with 17. ♖g5 b5 (17... ♗ae8, Holmov – Ageichenko, Moscow 1997, 18. ♖xf6 ♖xf6 19. ♘d7 ♖h6+ 20. ♘b1 ♗f7 21. ♖xe6 ♗xe6 22. ♖c4 ♖d8 23. ♘e5 ♗fe7 24. ♗he1 ♖xh2 25. ♗xe4+-). You can check for yourself that Black quickly suffers heavy casualties) 18. ♖xe6+ ♗xe6 19. ♗he1±.

15. 0-0-0 0-0-0

After 15... ♗d8 a transfer to the above-considered positions is possible (see 14... ♗d8 15. 0-0-0 ♖d6), which are unfavourable for Black.

15... ♖g4?! 16. ♘g4! ♖xf4+ 17. gxf4 ♖xg4 18. ♖xg4 ♘g4 19. ♗de1 ♘f6 20. ♗hg1 g6 21. f5! gxf5 22. ♗ef1±.

The sharp move 15...b5 is not easy to refute, Kane – Manker, Compuserve 1997, 16. ♖xe6 ♗xe6 17. d5! ♘xd5 (17...cxd5 18. ♖xb5+ ♘f8 19. ♘c6 ♖xf4+ 20. gxf4 ♗d6 21. ♘b1 ♗c8 22. ♘d4! ♗b8 23. ♗e2 ♘f7 24. ♗hg1 ♖b4 25. b3 ♗hc8 26. ♖g2 ♗f8 27. f5±. White definitely outstrips his

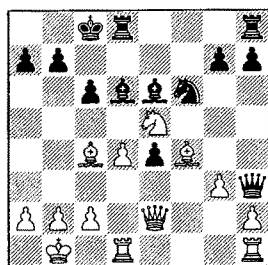
opponent in creating dangerous threats.) 18. ♖h5+ g6 19. ♘xg6 ♖xg6 20. ♖xg6+ hxg6 21. ♗xd6 0-0-0 22. ♗c5 a5 23. h4±. The possibility of creating a separate passed pawn on the kingside and the strong bishop provide White with the edge in the endgame.

An interesting play arises after Black's short castling 15... 0-0 16. ♘g6! ♖fd8 (16... hxg6 17. ♗xd6 ♖fe8 18. ♗e5±. White's bishops looks good, while the e4-pawn is weak.) 17. ♗xd6 ♖xd6 18. ♘f4 ♖h6 19. ♗xe6+ ♖xe6 20. ♖b1. An important position for the assessment of the variant with Black's short castling. According to our analyses White retains some edge. 20... ♖d6 (20... ♖e7 21. c4! ♖d8 22. d5 cxd5 23. cxd5. A remarkable position – both sides have passed pawns! However the d5-pawn is stronger than the e4, White's pieces are more active and the king feels safer. That constitutes White's advantage. 23... ♖d6 24. h4 ♖e5 25. ♖e3 ♘xd5 26. ♖c5 ♖c6 27. ♖d4+; 24... ♖e8 25. ♖d4 g5 26. ♘g2 g4 27. ♘e3±) 21. h4! The black queen cannot jump back into play quickly. It makes easier for White to carry out his plans. 21... ♖e8 (21... b5 22. ♖he1 ♖ad8 23. c4 ♖xd4 24. ♖xd4 ♖xd4 25. ♖d1 ♖xd1+ 26. ♖xd1 g5 27. hxg5 ♖xg5 28. ♖d8+ ♖f7 29. ♖c7+ ♖g8 30. ♖xc6 bxc4 31. ♖a8+ ♖f7 32. ♖xa7+ ♖g8 33. ♖d4+; 25... c5 26. cxb5±; 23... bxc4 24. ♖xc4+ ♖h8 25. ♖c5 ♘g4 26. ♖f5

♘f2 27. ♖d2+; 26... ♘f6 27. ♘e6 ♖8d7 28. ♖xe4 ♖d5 29. ♖e5±; 25... a6 26. h5±) 22. c4! b6 23. ♖he1 ♖ed8 24. ♖e3 ♘g4 25. ♖b3 ♖xd4 26. c5+ ♖h8 27. ♖xd4 ♖xd4 28. ♖f7 ♘f6 29. ♖xa7 b5 30. ♖f7 ♘g8 31. ♘e6 ♖d2 32. ♘g5 ♖f6 33. ♖xf6 ♘xf6 34. ♘e4 ♖d5 35. ♖f1 ♘d7 36. ♖c2± A. Bezgodov – Fritz 8, Perm 2003.

16. ♖b1!

A useful prophylactic and multipurpose move. The practice has proved its power.



16... ♖he8

The most popular move. Black also often plays 16... ♖hf8 17. ♖hf1! Here Black has a wide choice:

17... ♖fe8?! A mere loss of tempo. 18. a4±;

17... ♗d5 18. ♗g5 ♖de8 19. ♗xd5 cxd5 20. ♗xf6 ♖xf6 21. ♖xf6 gxf6 22. ♘g4 ♖h5 23. ♖e1 ♖g6 24. ♘e3 ♖g5 25. ♖f1 ♖g6 26. ♖b5+– Wegener – Daub, Hamburg 2001;

17... g5?! 18. ♗xe6+! An important find which puts 17... g5 under question. 18... ♖xe6 19. ♗xg5 ♗xe5 20. dxe5 ♖xd1+ 21. ♖xd1 ♖xe5 22. h4±. The threats along

the f-file, Black's unprotected king, the weakness of the e4-pawn and White's pawn majority on the kingside – all that forms White's huge and, possibly, decisive advantage;

17... ♗c7 18. a4 ♖de8 (18... ♗xc4, Lallee – J. Campos, Villa Ballester 2001, 19. ♘xc4! ♗xf4 20. ♖xf4 ♖fe8 21. a5 ♖e6 22. a6! ♘d5 23. axb7+ ♖xb7 24. ♖g4 g6 25. ♘e5 e3 26. ♖d3±; 22... bxa6 23. ♘a5 c5 24. dxc5 ♖xd1+ 25. ♖xd1 ♖d8 26. ♖e2±; 25... ♘d5 26. ♖h4±) 19. a5 ♗xa5 20. ♘xc6! ♗g4 21. ♘xa7+ ♖d8 22. ♖e3 ♗xd1 23. ♖xd1 ♖h5 24. ♗e2 ♖f7 (24... ♖d5 25. ♘b5 ♗b6 26. ♖a3 e3 27. ♘d6 ♖e6 28. ♗c4 e2 29. ♖e1+–) 25. d5 h6 26. ♖c5 ♖d7 27. ♖xa5+ ♖e7 28. ♗b5 ♖g4 29. ♖c7+ ♘d7 30. ♖d6+ ♖f7 31. ♖xd7+ 1-0 Bobras – Sciborowski, Glogow 2001;

17... ♖b8 18. a4! White's plan is simple – to attack the enemy king! The distant black queen cannot help much the defence. 18... ♖a8 (18... ♗xc4 19. ♖xc4 ♘d5? 20. ♘xc6!+; 19... ♗c7, Jakubowski – Barglowski, Poland 2001, 20. g4 h6 21. ♖de1. There is a threat to catch the black queen. 21... g5 22. ♗g3+; 18... ♗d5 19. a5 a6 20. ♗xa6 bxa6 21. c4±. White profitably regains the sacrificed pawn retaining his powerful attack.) 19. a5 ♗xc4 (19... ♗d5 20. a6 b6 21. ♗xd5 cxd5 22. ♖b5→) 20. ♖xc4 ♗xe5 (20... a6 21. ♘f7+–) 21. dxe5 ♘d5 22. a6 (22. ♖xe4? g5) 22... h6 (22... e3 23. ♗g5±) 23. axb7+ ♖xb7 24. ♖fe1 g5, Lutz –

Jagupov, Groningen 1995, 25. ♖xd5! White forces a transition to winning endgame. 25... cxd5 (25... ♖xd5 26. ♖b4+–) 26. ♖b5+ ♖a8 (26... ♗c7 27. ♖e3+–) 27. ♖c6+ ♖b8 28. ♖e3 ♖f1+ 29. ♖a2 ♖c4+ 30. ♖b3+ ♖xb3+ 31. ♖xb3 gxf4 32. e6 ♖fe8 (32... ♖c8 33. ♖d6+ ♖b7 34. e7 ♖fe8 35. ♖d7+) 33. gxf4 ♖e7 34. f5 ♖c7 (34... ♖b7+ 35. ♖a2 e3 36. f6 e2 37. e7+–) 35. ♖a6 ♖b7+ 36. ♖a2 ♖b6 37. ♖a4+–.

17. ♖hf1

Black is faced again with a difficult choice.

17... ♗c7

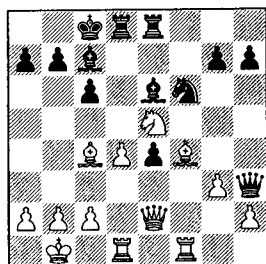
17... ♗xc4 18. ♖xc4±. The threats of knight's intrusion to f7 or c6 are dangerous.

17... ♗xe5? 18. ♗xe6+! ♖xe6 19. ♗xe5! ♖d7 (19... ♖g4 Strohmeyer – Reijnen, corr. 1991, 20. ♖de1±) 20. ♖f4±.

17... h6 18. a4 ♗xe5 19. ♗xe6+ ♖xe6, Michalczyk – Goessling, Recklinghausen 2002, 20. ♗xe5± The white bishop is strong. The defence is not easy for Black.

17... ♖e7 18. a4 ♗c7, Toman – Vesely, Ostrava 2002, 19. a5! ♗xa5 (19... ♗xe5 20. dxe5 ♘d5 21. ♖xe4±; 19... a6 20. ♗xa6±) 20. ♘xc6! bxc6 21. ♗xe6+ ♖xe6 (21... ♖xe6 22. ♖a6+ ♖d7 23. ♖xa7+ ♖e8 24. ♖xa5±) 22. ♖a6+ ♖b7 23. ♖xa5 ♖d5 24. ♖a2 ♖d7 (24... e3 25. ♖fe1 e2 26. ♖d2 ♘e4 27. ♖d3 ♖e8 28. ♖xe2 ♖xd4 29. ♖c1!!+–) 25. ♗e5 ♖db5 26. d5 cxd5 27. c4 ♖b4 28. ♖xd5 ♖e7 29. ♖a5 ♘xd5 30. ♖xd5 ♖d8 31. ♖e6+ ♖d7 32. c5+–.

17...♖b8 18.a4! ♕c7 19.a5
♕xc4 20.♗xc4 ♕xf4 21.♞xf4 a6
22.c3±.



This position happened in Trofimova – Krupkova, Zanka 1995 and now White could start the attack.

18.a4!±

White has only one, but good enough plan – to smash the black king. 18...a5 (18...♞e7 19.a5! c5 – capturing the pawn leads to position with material equality, but with White's positional advantage: 19...♕xa5 20.♗xc6! bxc6 21.♕xe6+ ♖xe6 22.♖a6+ ♞b7 23.♖xa5 ♞d5 24.♖a3! ♞db5 25.♕c1±

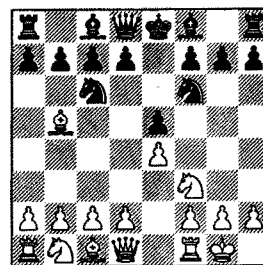
– 20.a6!! ♞xd4 21.axb7+ ♖xb7 22.♕a6+ ♖a8 23.♖b5+-; 20...cxd4 21.axb7+ ♖xb7 22.♕a6+ ♖a8 23.♖b5 ♕c8 24.♗c6 ♕xa6 25.♖xa6 ♕xf4 26.♗xd8 ♕e5 27.♖c6+ ♖b8 28.♖c5+-) 19.♕xe6+ ♖xe6 20.c4 (A deep move. White should be careful about the safety of his knight.) 20...c5 (20...h6 21.h4 c5 22.d5 ♖a6 23.♗f7 ♞d7 24.♕xc7 ♞xc7 25.♗xh6 ♞d7 26.d6 ♞xd6 27.♗f5 ♞xd1+ 28.♞xd1 ♞e6 29.♗xg7 ♞e5 30.♖d2 ♖b6 31.♖f4 ♖b3 32.♞d6 ♗d7 33.♖g4 ♖xa4 34.♗e6 ♖b8 35.♖g8+ ♖a7 36.♗c7+-; 24...♖xc7 25.d6+ ♖b8 26.♗xh6 ♞xd6 27.♗f5 ♞xd1+ 28.♞xd1±) 21.d5 ♖a6 22.♗f7 ♞d7 23.♗g5 ♕xf4 24.♞xf4 ♞e5 25.♗e6 ♞exd5 26.♞xd5 ♞xd5 27.♗xg7 ♞d7 28.♗f5 ♖c6 29.♗e3 ♖b8 30.♖f1 ♞d6 31.♞f5± Such positions are in White's favour – he can calmly activate his pawn majority on the kingside, while his opponent is doomed to lingering.

Conclusion

We have studied the main variation of Jaenisch Gambit. Black's chances are much better here than in other systems of this opening. White must be super accurate to achieve even a small edge. Nowadays the play with long castling is the main line of Black's defence. White should ram the enemy castle with the a-pawn. Even if White does not checkmate the enemy, he obtains some positional advantage.

Chapter 23

1.e4 e5 2.♗f3 ♗c6 3.♕b5 ♗f6 4.0-0 Berlin Defence



4...♕c5

This position is often reached after a different move order – 3...♕c5 4.0-0 ♗f6.

The most popular move 4...♗xe4 (after 3...♗f6 4.0-0) will be considered in the next chapters.

Black has also tried various inferior moves here:

4...h6? 5.d4±; 4...♗g4? 5.h3±; 4...b6? 5.♕xc6 dxc6 6.♗xe5 ♗xe4 7.♞e1 ♖d5 (7...♖d4 8.d3 ♖xf2+ 9.♖h1+-) 8.d3 ♗f6 9.♗c3 ♖d6 10.♗c4+- Ayman – Howard, IECG 2000;

4...d5? 5.exd5 ♗xd5 (5...♖xd5 6.♗c3 ♖e6 7.♗xe5+-) 6.♗xe5+- Holmberg – Halvorsen, corr. 1962;

4...♗e7? 5.♗xe5, Krueger – Lach, Marburg 2000, 5...♗xe4 6.♞e1 ♗d6 7.♕d3 b6 8.♗c3 ♕b7 9.♗b5+-;

4...g6? This is an ill-founded sacrifice of the central pawn 5.♕xc6 dxc6 (5...bxc6 6.♗xe5 ♕g7 7.♞e1±) 6.♗xe5 ♕d6 (6...♕e6 7.♗c3±) 7.♗f3± Jansa – Hirn, Nurnberg 1987;

4...♗d4? This idea brings Black only hardship and suffering – he is losing too much time. 5.♗xd4 exd4 6.e5 ♗d5 (6...a6 7.exf6+-; 6...♗e4 7.♖g4 ♗g5 8.♖xd4+-; 6...c6 7.exf6+-) 7.♖g4 ♗b4 (7...c6 8.♖xd4+-) 8.a3! ♗xc2 (8...♗c6 9.d3 ♗xe5 10.♞e1 ♖e7 11.♖d1! c6 12.f4+-) 9.♞a2 c6 10.♕d3+-;

4...♖e7?! 5.♞e1 g6, B.Hansen – Bonde, Hold 1977, 6.d4 exd4 7.♕xc6! dxc6 8.♕g5 h6 9.e5+-;

4...a6? This is blundering the important central pawn and Black is doomed to lose after it: 5.♕xc6 bxc6 (5...dxc6 6.♗xe5+-) 6.♗xe5 ♗xe4 (6...♕b7 7.♗c3+-; 6...♕c5 7.d4+- Vitis – Lobos, Santiago 1992; 6...♕e7 7.♗c3+- Rogalewicz – Wojtalik, Warsaw 1994; 6...♖e7 7.d4 ♗xe4 8.♞e1 d5 9.f3+-; 6...♕d6 7.♗f3+-) 7.♞e1 d5 (7...f5 8.d3+-) 8.d3 ♗c5 (8...♗xf2 9.♖f3+-) 9.♗xc6+- Delivre – Mignard, France 2000;

4...a6 5. ♜xc6 dxc6 6. ♜xe5 ♜d6 7. ♜f3±;

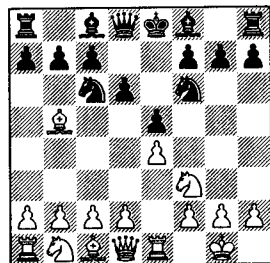
4...♜b4 5. c3 ♜e7 (5...♜c5 6. d4±; 5...♜d6 6. d4 exd4 7. ♜xc6+- Asenjo – Menendez Lopez, Asturias 1999; 5...♜a5 6. ♜xc6 bxc6 7. ♜xe5 0-0, Ostwald – Weichhold, Ronneburg 1996, 8. d3±; 7...♜xe4 8. ♜xf7 ♜xf7 9. ♜h5+ g6 10. ♜xa5+- Guichaoua – Olier, France 1999) 6. ♜e1 d6 (6...0-0, Rossi – Zarzur, Humberto Primo 2002, 7. ♜xc6 dxc6 8. ♜xe5±; 6...a6 7. ♜xc6 dxc6 8. ♜xe5± Wind – Gorissen, Hengelo 1998) 7. d4 a6, Araya Toro – Garcia Gonzalez, Argentine 2002, 8. ♜xc6+ bxc6 9. dxe5±;

4...♜d6?! This seems unnatural and is rather dubious. 5. d4 ♜xe4 (This is the most stubborn move. The other tries are weaker: 5...a6? 6. ♜xc6 dxc6 7. dxe5+-; 5...♜xd4? 6. ♜xd4 exd4 7. e5+- S. Berg – E. Johansson, Stockholm 1972; 5...exd4? 6. ♜xc6 bxc6 7. e5+-; 6...♜xh2+ 7. ♜xh2 dxc6 8. ♜xd4+- Usachyi – Franz, Bad Woerishofen 1991; 5...0-0 6. ♜xc6 bxc6 7. dxe5+-; 6...dxc6 7. dxe5+-) 6. dxe5 ♜e7 (The best move. 6...♜c5 7. ♜d5+-; 6...♜xe5 7. ♜xe5 ♜xe5, Hames – Haigh, IECC 2001, is losing a piece after the simple 8. ♜e1! ♜xh2+ 9. ♜f1 ♜h4 10. ♜f3+-; 8...♜e7 9. ♜f3 ♜d6 10. ♜h5 ♜xh2+ 11. ♜f1+-; 9...♜c5 10. ♜h5 ♜xh2+ 11. ♜f1 ♜e6 12. ♜xh2; 9...♜g5 10. ♜xg5 ♜xg5 11. ♜e4 f6 12. f4+-) 7. ♜e1 ♜c5 8. ♜c3 0-0 9. ♜d5±;

4...♜e7 5. ♜e1 d6 (5...♜d6 6. d4

♜xd4 7. ♜xd4+-; 5...♜d4? 6. ♜xd4 exd4 7. e5 ♜d5 8. ♜g4±; 5...h6? 6. ♜xc6 dxc6 7. ♜xe5±; 5...♜g4? 6. h3 ♜f6 7. ♜xc6 dxc6 8. ♜xe5±; 5...♜c5? 6. c3 0-0 7. d4 exd4 8. cxd4 ♜b4 9. ♜d2 ♜e7 10. e5 ♜d5 11. ♜c3±; 5...0-0? 6. ♜xc6 bxc6 7. ♜xe5±; 6...dxc6 7. ♜xe5 ♜d4 8. ♜f3±; 7...♜d6 8. ♜f3±; 7...♜d6 8. d4±; 7...♜c5 8. c3 ♜e8 9. d4 ♜d6 10. ♜f4 ♜g4 11. h3 ♜xe5 12. dxe5 ♜xd1 13. ♜xd1 g5 14. ♜xg5 ♜xe5 15. ♜a3± Benischek – Putz, Bayern 1999; 8...♜e7 9. d4 h6 10. ♜f4 ♜b6 11. ♜d2 a5 12. ♜g3± Felser – Berenstein, Bad Segeberg 2000) 6. c3 0-0 7. d4 exd4 (7...♜g4 8. ♜xc6 bxc6 9. dxe5 ♜xf3 10. ♜xf3 dxe5 11. ♜d2±; 7...♜d7 8. d5 ♜b8 9. ♜xd7 ♜bxd7 10. c4±) 8. ♜xd4 ♜xd4 9. cxd4 c6 10. ♜d3± Fokin – Tabunshikov, Russia 1901;

4...d6. This solid move used to be popular at the end of the 19th and the beginning of the 20th century. 5. ♜e1.



Black has a choice now:

5...g6?! looks too slow – 6. d4! a6? (6...♜d7 7. ♜c3±) 7. ♜xc6+ bxc6 8. dxe5+- Djapanovic – Eix, Hassloch 1997;

5...a6, Em. Lasker – Croney, USA 1926, 6. ♜xc6+ bxc6 7. d4 ♜d7 8. ♜a3! This manoeuvre for the knight is typical for the variation. 8...♜e7 9. ♜c4 f6 10. ♜a5 ♜b8 11. ♜e3±;

5...♜g4 6. c3 a6 (6...♜d7 7. d4 a6 8. ♜a4 b5 9. ♜c2 d5? Dillon – Costales, Asturia 1997, 10. exd5 ♜xd5 11. dxe5 ♜xd1 12. ♜xd1 ♜d7 13. a4±; 9...♜e7 10. a4±) 7. ♜xc6+ bxc6 8. d4 ♜d7 (8...exd4 9. cxd4 ♜e7 10. h3 ♜h5 11. ♜c2 ♜d7 12. ♜bd2 0-0 13. b3 ♜fe8 14. ♜b2± Zapata – Ibanez, Brazil 1999) 9. ♜bd2 ♜e7 10. ♜a4 ♜b6 11. ♜c2 ♜f6 12. dxe5 dxe5 13. b3 0-0 14. ♜a3 ♜e8 15. h3 ♜h5 16. g4 ♜g6 17. ♜f1± Ries – Brunner, Bad Wiessee 1997;

5...♜d7 6. c3 a6 (6...d5?? is just a blunder 7. exd5 ♜xd5 8. ♜xc6 ♜xc6 9. ♜xe5+- Jones – Barker, IECC 1998; 6...♜e7 7. d4 0-0 8. d5 ♜b8, Fleischer – Walda, Forchtenberg 2003, 9. c4± and White's attack must prevail; 6...♜e7 7. ♜xd7+ ♜xd7 8. d4 ♜g6 9. c4 0-0 10. ♜c3± Atienza – Pinto, Almoradi 1998; 6...♜e7 7. d4 0-0 8. d5 ♜b8 9. ♜xd7 ♜bxd7 10. c4 ♜c5 11. ♜c3±; 6...g6 7. d4 ♜g7, Creath – J. Brown, Bognor Regis 1965, 8. ♜xc6! That amusing exchange operation, quite routine in these lines for many years, gives White better chances. 8...♜xc6 9. dxe5 dxe5 10. ♜xd8+ ♜xd8 11. ♜xe5 ♜xe4?! 12. f3+-; 11...♜b5 12. ♜a3±; 9...♜xe4 10. exd6 0-0 11. dxc7 ♜xc7 12. ♜e3 ♜ad8 13. ♜d4 ♜c5 14. ♜bd2±;

10...♜xd6 leads to a sharp end-game favourable for White – 11. ♜xd6 cxd6 12. ♜fd2 0-0 13. ♜xe4 ♜xe4 14. ♜xe4 ♜fe8 15. ♜bd2 f5 16. ♜g3 ♜e1+ 17. ♜gfl ♜ae8 18. ♜b3 ♜8e2 19. ♜d2 ♜xa1 20. ♜xa1 a5 21. ♜b3 a4 22. ♜c1±) 7. ♜a4 b5 (7...♜e7 8. d4±) 8. ♜c2 ♜g4, Sagadin – Radtke, Voelklingen 1970, 9. d4 ♜e7 (9...exd4 10. cxd4 ♜xf3 11. gxf3±) 10. d5 ♜a5 11. ♜bd2 0-0 12. b4 ♜b7 13. a4 ♜d7 14. ♜f1±; 8...♜e7, Mangini – Lambert, Helsinki 1952, 9. d4 0-0 10. ♜bd2±; 8...g6 9. d4 ♜g7, Giam Choo Kwee – Nashed, Skopje 1972, 10. a4 0-0 11. d5 ♜e7 12. ♜a3±;

5...♜e7 6. c3 0-0 (6...♜d7 7. d4 0-0 8. ♜bd2 ♜f6 9. ♜f1 ♜e7, Schories – Gregory, Hamburg 1921, 10. ♜e3 c6 11. ♜a4±; 6...a6 7. ♜a4 b5 8. ♜c2 ♜g4 9. h3 ♜h5 10. d4 ♜xf3 11. gxf3 0-0, Menendez – Macias Diaz, Asturias 1992, 12. d5 ♜a5 13. f4±; 6...♜d7 7. d4 0-0 8. d5 ♜b8 9. ♜xd7 ♜bxd7 10. c4±; 9...♜xd7 10. c4±. Pawn structures of this type are advantageous for White, because White's bishop is stronger than its counterpart, which is stranded behind its own pawns. White can plan a successful queenside pawn expansion; 6...♜g4 7. d4 ♜xf3 8. ♜xf3 exd4 9. cxd4 0-0 10. ♜d1 a6 11. ♜a4 b5 12. ♜c2 ♜a5, Willemze – Van Deurzen, Hengelo 1998, 13. ♜c3±; 7...♜d7 8. ♜e2! This move now forces Black to trade off on f3. 8...♜xf3 – 8...0-0? fails to the

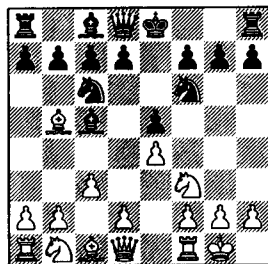
interesting trick 9. ♗xe5! ♙xe2 10. ♗xc6 ♙xd1 11. ♗xd8± - 9. ♙xf3 ♙g5 10. ♗a3 ♙xc1 11. ♙xc1 0-0 12. ♖d2 ♗b6 13. ♗c2 a5 14. ♗e3 ♙e8 15. ♙cd1 a4 16. ♖c2± Timman - Straeter, Germany 1999) 7.d4 exd4 (7...a6? 8. ♙xc6 bxc6 9.dxe5±; 7...♙d7 8.d5 ♗b8 9. ♙xd7 ♗bxd7 10.c4±. Notice that the arising position can be reached by different move orders. White should not avoid it. 7...♙g4 8. ♙xc6 bxc6 9.dxe5 ♙xf3 10. ♖xf3± Jensen - Lievens, France 1995; 9...dxe5 10. ♖xd8 ♙fxd8 11. ♗xe5+- M. Smith - T. Black, Detroit 1992; 10...♙axd8 11. ♗xe5+- J. Gomez - Meneses, Cali 1999; 7...♗d7 8. ♗bd2 ♙f6 9. ♗f1 ♗e7 10. ♗g3 c6 11. ♙a4 g6 12. ♙h6 ♙e8 13. ♙b3 ♗f8 14. ♙g5. The great champion Lasker prepared a decisive combination with seemingly quite innocuous manoeuvres. 14...♙xg5 15. ♗xg5 ♗e6 16. ♙xe6 ♙xe6 17. ♗xe6 fxe6 18. ♖g4 ♖f7 19. ♙e3 ♗g8 20. dxe5 dxe5 21. ♗h5!! gxh5 22. ♖xh5+ ♖g7 23. ♙g3+ ♖h8 24. ♖f7 ♙e7 25. ♙xg8+ ♖xg8 26. ♖xe7+-; 21... ♗f6 22. ♗xf6 ♖xf6 23. ♙d1+- Em. Lasker - Romanovsky, Moscow 1925) 8.cxd4 ♙g4 (8...♗a5 1998 9. ♗c3±) 9. ♗c3! That looks strong. 9...♗d7 (9...♙xf3 10. gxf3±; 9...a6 10. ♙f1! ♙e8 11.h3 ♙xf3 12. gxf3 ♙f8 13. ♙g2 g6 14. ♙g5 ♙g7 15.f4 h6 16. ♙h4 ♖c8 17.d5 ♗e7 18. ♙g3 ♖h7 19. ♙h2 ♗d7 20. ♙c1 ♖d8 21. ♙c2 ♗g8 22. ♙ce2 ♙e7 23.e5± Belikov - Novopashin, Alushta 1999; 9...d5

10.e5 ♙xf3 11.gxf3 ♗h5 12.f4 g6 13.f5±; 11...♗e8 12. ♙e3±) 10. ♗d5 ♙f6 11. ♙e3 ♗b6 12. ♗xf6+, Gregory - Taubenhau, St. Petersburg 1914, 12...♖xf6 13. ♙c1 d5 14.e5 ♖g6 15. ♖c2 ♙xf3 16. ♖xg6 fxxg6 17. ♙xc6 bxc6 18.gxf3 ♙xf3 19. ♙xc6±.

We can conclude convincingly that Black should better refrain from avoiding the main variations of the Berlin Defence on move 4. The lines that we analysed were all too dangerous for Black and might lead Black to a quick disaster; moreover White did not have to put up too much effort.

5.c3

White should strive to prepare d2-d4, otherwise he will not have any advantage.



5...0-0

Castling here is the most reliable and popular move.

5...d6?? 6.d4+-;

5...d5? 6. ♗xe5±;

5...♖e7 6.d4 exd4 (6...♙b6 7. ♙xc6 dxc6 8. ♗xe5±; 7...bxc6 8. ♗xe5±) 7.cxd4 ♙b6, Sprague - Rosenfeld, Greater Peoria 1968, 8.e5 ♗d5 9. ♙c4 ♗db4 10.a3 ♗a6

11. ♙g5 ♖f8 12.d5±;

5...a6 6. ♙xc6! dxc6 (6...bxc6 7. ♗xe5 ♗xe4 8. ♖e2+-; 7...0-0 8.d3±; 7...♖e7 8.d4 ♙d6 9. ♗f3 ♗xe4 10. ♙e1+- Lopez Gasson - Lopez Borbon, Sonora 2001) 7. ♗xe5 ♖e7 (7...0-0 8.d4±) 8.d4 ♙d6 9. ♗f3 0-0 (9...♗xe4 10. ♙e1 0-0 11. ♗g5+- Houna - Renaud, Dubai 1986) 10.e5+- Balcar - Konig, Klatovy 1998; 7...♗xe4 8.d4 ♙e7 9. ♙e1 ♗f6 10. ♙f4 0-0 11. ♗d2 ♗d5 12. ♙g3 f6 13. ♗d3 ♙d6 14. ♖f3 ♙xg3 15. ♖xg3 ♖d6 16. ♖f3 b5 17. ♗e4 ♖d7 18. ♗ec5± Gonzalez - Ramirez, corr. 1990;

5...♙b6 6.d4 ♗xe4 (6...0-0 - see 5...0-0; 6...exd4 7.cxd4 h6? 8. ♗c3± Feijoo - Polo, Burgos 1991) 7. ♙e1 f5 (Amazingly Black has not tried here the natural move 7...d5, although it is quite possible. 8. ♗xe5 0-0 9. ♗xc6 bxc6 10. ♙xc6 ♖f6 11. ♙xe4! ♖xc6 12. ♙e1 a5±, and Black has good drawing chances despite the pawn deficit.) 8. ♗bd2 ♗xd2 (8...0-0 9. ♗xe4 fxe4 10. ♙g5! ♖e8 11. ♙xe4 ♖g6 12. ♙c4+ ♖h8 13. ♙d3 ♖f7 14. ♙h4+- Verber - Taylor, Chicago 1968. You can witness quite rarely so early, nevertheless so successful rook activity!) 9. ♗xe5! White achieves a lasting positional advantage with this beautiful exchanging trick. 9...0-0 (9...♗e4? 10. ♖h5+ g6 11. ♗xg6 hxg6 12. ♖xh8+ ♖f7 13. ♖h7+ ♖f6 14. ♙xc6 dxc6 15. ♙xe4 fxe4 16. ♖h4+-) 10. ♙xd2 ♗xe5 11.dxe5±;

Black has tested taking on e4

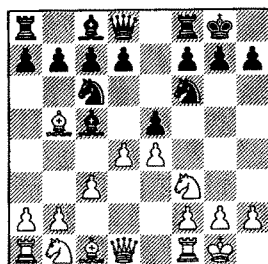
many times: 5...♗xe4 6.d4 exd4 (Black is keeping his extra pawn in this way, but he can succumb to a swift attack. The retreat 6... ♙e7 is safer and more solid 7. ♗xe5 ♗xe5 8.dxe5 0-0 9. ♗d2 ♗xd2 10. ♙xd2 d5 11. ♖h5±, and White is only slightly better; 6... ♙b6 7. ♙e1 - see 5...♙b6; 6... ♙d6?! 7.dxe5±) 7.cxd4 ♙e7 (This is the best square for retreat of the bishop. Black can hope now to neutralize White's kingside attack successfully, preserving the extra pawn. 7...♙d6? That move is quite dubious - Black is forced now to expose his king's position without even winning a pawn! 8. ♙e1 f5, Puister - Stoffers, Hengelo 1999, 9. ♗c3 0-0 10. ♗xe4 fxe4 11. ♙xe4 ♖f6 12. ♖b3+ ♖h8 13. ♙g5 ♖f5 14. ♙d3±; 7...♙b6 is weaker because of 8. d5! White should not let Black play d7-d5. 8...♗e7, Boino - McMahon, Lisbon 2000, 9. ♗c3! ♗xc3 10.bxc3 c6 11.d6!±; 10... 0-0 11.d6! This is hindering Black's queenside development. 11...cxd6 12. ♙d3! White's intention to crush the kingside of the opponent is now evident. Black will have grave problems defending, for example: 12...h6 13. ♙c2 d5 14. ♖d3 f5 15. ♙e1± or 12...d5 13. ♗g5. The following lines are very instructive about the methods of attacking the enemy king. 13...f5 14. ♙e1 h6 15. ♙c2 hxg5 16. ♙xg5 ♙c5 17. ♙b3 g6 18. ♙xd5+ ♖g7 19. ♖e2 ♙f6 20. ♙xf6+ ♖xf6 21. ♖e5+ ♖g5 22. ♙f3 d5 23.

♗g7!+-; 13...h6 14.♜h7 ♖e8 15. ♜f6+ gxf6 16.♗g4+ ♖h8 17.♗h5 ♜g6 18.♗xh6+ ♖g8 19.♗xg6 fvg6 20.♗xg6+ ♖h8 21.♗h5+ ♖g8 22.♗h6 ♖h7 23.♗g5+ ♖g7 24.♗h6+ ♖f7 25.♗h7+ ♖e6 26. ♗f4+-; 13...g6 14.♜xh7 ♖xh7 15. ♗g5 d6 16.♗f6 ♖g8 17.♗d2+-; 15...f6 16.♗h5+ ♖g7 17.♗h6+ ♖g8 18.♗xg6 ♜xg6 19.♗xg6+ ♖h8 20.♗h5+ ♖g8 21.♗h6 ♗e7 22.♗g6+ ♖h8 23.♗xf8 ♗xf8 24.♖ae1+-; 13...♜g6 14.♗h5 h6 15.♜xf7 ♖xf7 16.♗xg6±) 8.d5

That position is not very attractive for Black, quite understandably so – Black has a difficult defence ahead. The extra pawn is only a minute consolation. 8...♜b8 (8...♜d6 9.♗a4 ♜a5, Lanka – Malaniuk, Odessa 1988. White is obviously enjoying an excellent compensation for the pawn and he should play: 10. ♖e1! 0-0 11.♜c3 b6 12.♗d3 f5 13.♗f4 ♜ac4 14.♖e2 ♗f6 15. ♗b3±; 8...♜b4?! 9.a3 c6?! – 9... ♜d6 10.♜c3± – 10.axb4 cxb5 11.♖e1 ♜f6?! 12.d6 1-0 Wall – Burns, Wichita Falls 1970; 11...f5 12.d6 ♗f6 13.♗d5+-; 11...♜d6! 12.♗e2±) 9.♖e1 ♜d6 10.♗d3 0-0 11.♜c3 ♖e8, Pomeroy – Lynn, Dunedin 1975, 12.♗c2 g6 (12...h6 13.♗a4 ♜a6 14.♗g4 ♖h8 15. ♜b5±) 13.h4! ♗xh4 (13...♜a6 14.♗g5 ♜b4 15.♗d2 ♗xg5 16. ♖xe8+ ♗xe8 17.hxg5 ♜xd3 18. ♗xd3 b6 19.♖e1 ♗d8 20.♗d2 ♗b7 21.♜e5 f6 22.♜g4 fvg5 23.♜e4 ♜xe4 24.♖xe4±) 14.♖xe8 ♜xe8 15.♜xh4 ♗xh4 16.♜e4 h6

17.♗d2 d6 18.♖e1 ♗d7 19.♗c4 ♗d8 20.♗xh6±.

6.d4



6...♗b6

6...♗d6?? is a bad blunder, which loses a piece immediately. 7.♗xc6 dxc6 8.dxe5+ Daumen – Kaemmer, Bingen 1996.

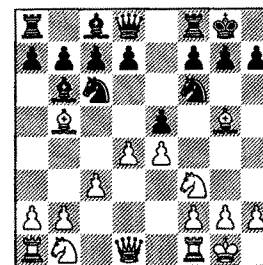
6...a6?? This is a ridiculous “counterstrike”, the white bishop is traded off with tempo, while its counterpart is lost! 7.♗xc6 bxc6 8.dxc5+- Andriasian – Gouvar, France 2002.

The exchange on d4 is not necessary and presents White with plenty of additional possibilities. 6...exd4? 7.cxd4 ♗b6 (7... ♗b4. This was another loss of time, but Black’s position was already difficult anyway. 8.a3 ♗a5 9.e5 ♜d5 10.b4 ♗b6 11.♗c4 ♜ce7 12.♗g5 ♗e8 13.♖e1± Podravec – Paljusaj, Pula 2000. The retreat to e7 is hardly any better: 7...♗e7 8.d5 ♜b4 9.a3 ♜a6, Macejovsky – Badura, corr. 1982, 10.e5±; 8...♜b8, Sanchez – Kremer, Amsterdam 1954, 9.♜c3 d6 10.♜d4 a6 11.♗a4±; 9...c6 10.d6 cxb5 11.♗g5±) 8.e5 ♜d5 (8...♜e8 9.d5 ♜e7, Ananjev – Schlich-

thaar, Neumuenter 1999, 10.d6! cxd6 11.exd6 ♜c6 12.♗g5 ♜f6 13. ♜c3±; 8...♜e4 9.d5 ♜b8, Belunek – Jancalek, Valtice 1992, 10.♗c2 f5 11.♜c3+-) 9.♗c4 ♜ce7 (9... ♜db4 10.a3±; 9...♜de7 10.d5 ♜a5 11.♗e2 ♗c5 12.a3+- Montero Martinez – Grau, Santiago 1998) 10.♗g5 ♗e8 (10...h6 11.♗xd5 hxg5 12.♜xg5! ♜xd5 13.♗h5+-; 12...♜f5 13.♗h5 ♜h6 14.♗g6 1-0 Herrera – Escriva, Mislata 1997) 11.♗b3 c6 12. ♖e1±. Black should not make so great concessions in the opening stage.

6...♗e7 7.♖e1 exd4. Black is obliged now to exchange on d4, otherwise he is losing a pawn. White achieves a lasting advantage in the centre as a result. 8. cxd4 a6 (8...d5 9.e5 ♜e4 10.♜c3 ♗f5 11.♗d3 ♜xc3 12.bxc3 ♗xd3 13.♗xd3±) 9.♗a4 b5 10.♗b3 d5 (10...d6 11.h3 ♗b7 12.♜bd2 ♜a5 13.♗c2 d5 14.e5± Seifert – Martens, France 1989; 13...c5 14.b3±) 11.e5 ♜e4 12.♜c3 ♜xc3 13.bxc3 ♗f5 14.♗c2 ♗d7, Carlsson – Hjorth, Eskilstuna 1971, 15. ♗g5±.

7.♗g5



White is increasing the pres-

sure in the centre, but Black’s defensive resources should not be underestimated.

7...h6

Black secures an emergency exit – to play g7-g5 in some moment in the eventual complications ahead. White will not achieve anything exchanging on f6. The game will be only equal and Black is not losing a pawn at all!

7...a6? is just weak – 8.♗xc6 dxc6, Blom – Marsman, Hengelo 1999. 9.♗c1!! exd4 10.e5 h6 11.♗h4+-; 9...h6 10.♗h4! g5 11.♜xg5 ♜xe4 12.♜f3+-.

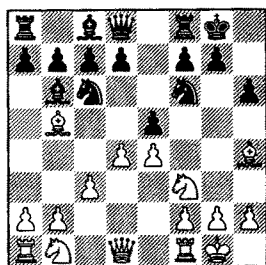
7...exd4 8.e5 h6 9.♗xf6 gxf6, Goze – Hakuc, IECC 2001, 10. cxd4 d6 11.♗xc6 bxc6 12.♗c1± and White has a big advantage, because Black has numerous weaknesses.

7...♖e8?, Hitzgerova – Motlova, Czech Republic 1993, 8.♗c1± – see 7...h6 8.♗h4 ♖e8 9.♗c1.

Black can also try to play without h7-h6: 7...d6 8.♗d3 ♗e7 (8...h6 – see 7...h6; 8...♗d7 9.♜bd2 h6 10.♗h4 – see 7...h6) 9.♜bd2 ♜d8, Luther – Winants, Halkidiki 2002, (9...h6 10.♗h4 – see 7...h6; 9...♗g4 10.♖ae1 ♜d8, Radojcic – Kostic, Ljubljana 1947, 11.♜c4 ♗xf3 12.dxe5 dxe5 13.♗xf3 ♜e6 14.♗xf6 ♗xf6 15. ♗xf6 gxf6 16.♗d7 ♖fd8 17.♖d1 ♖f8 18.♗a4±) 10.d5! (having in mind to restrict the mobility of the black knight on d8 with that pawn, but the bishop on b6 now becomes super active

instead!) 10...a6 11.♗a4 h6 12.♗h4 ♖h8 13.♖h1 g5? (An inappropriate moment to get rid of the pin. Black underestimated the dangerous consequences of the knight sacrifice. The cautious 13...♗g8 was stronger – 14.♗c2 g5 15.♗g3 ♜h5 16.♜c4±) 14.♜xg5! hxg5 15.♗xg5 ♗g8 16.♖g3 ♗g6 17.f4 ♖g7 18.f5 ♜h5 19.f6+ ♜xf6 20.♗xf6 1-0 Horvath – Koch, Budapest 1981.

8. ♗h4



The captures on f6 or e5 were not giving White any advantage at all. Black has to think about the defence of the e5 pawn now.

8...d6

8...♖e7?? loses material decisively – 9.♗xc6, Pritchard – Hund, Biel 1981.

8...♗e8? is unnecessarily risky, Lafond – Gaudron, France 1999, but White must follow with the strong 9.♖c1!, and Black has serious problems, for example: 9...d6 (9...g5 10.♜xg5 ♜xe4 11.♜f3+; 9...exd4 10.♗xc6 dxc6 11.e5±) 10.d5+.

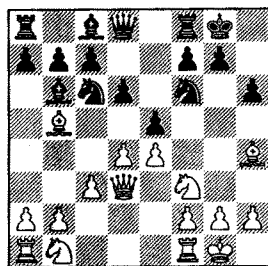
Black can not play 8...g5? 9.♜xg5 Such a sacrifice is quite typical for these lines and usu-

ally leads to very complicated positions, but here Black's difficulties seem insurmountable. 9...hxg5 (9...♜xe4 10.♜f3 ♜g5, Ivkov – Aaron, Tel Aviv 1964, 11.♗xg5 hxg5 12.♗xc6 dxc6 13.♜xe5+–) 10.♗xg5 ♖e7 11.♖f3 ♖g7, Wiezer – Geyer, corr. 1983, 12.♖g3+.

8...exd4 is too dangerous after 9.e5 g5 10.♗xc6 dxc6 (10...gxf4 is not any better – 11.♗a4 dxc3 12.♜xc3±) 11.♜xg5 dxc3 (11...♖d5 12.♜f3 ♜e4 13.cxd4 ♗g4 14.♜c3 ♜xc3 15.bxc3 c5 16.♗f6± Popescu – Nichitelea, Romania 1988) 12.♖xd8 ♗xd8 (12...cxb2 13.♖xf6 bxa1♖ 14. ♖xh6 ♗f5 15.♜e4+–) 13.♜xc3± Bernhard – Zuidema, Zurich 1962.

9. ♖d3

This is the best square for the queen. White needs only to bring the b1-knight into action and complete his development successfully. Sometimes White changes the order of moves and plays 7.♖d3 d6 8.♗g5 h6 9.♗h4, which leads to the same position. Still it seems more precise to develop the bishop first.



Black has two popular moves

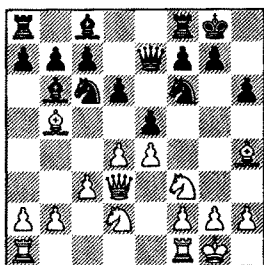
here: a) 9...♖e7 and b) 9...♗d7.

9...g5 This idea is too risky and small wonder it is not popular at all! 10.♜xg5 hxg5 11.♗xg5 ♖g7, S.Polgar – Bayon, Oviedo 1993. (The king move might seem to be wrong, but it is difficult to defend even without it, for example: 11...exd4 12.♗xc6 bxc6 13.cxd4 ♖g7 – see 9...exd4, game Renet – Ninov, Ostend 1989; 13...♖e7 14.♜c3 ♖e6 15.f4 ♗e8 16.♖h1 ♜h7 17.f5 ♖d7 18.♗h6 ♖h8 19.♗f4 f6 20.♗g4 ♗e7 21.♜e2 ♗b7 22.♜f4 ♗g8 23.♗xg8+ ♖xg8 24. ♖g3+ ♜g5 25.h4+–; 20...♗g8 21. ♗xg8+ ♖xg8 22.♜e2 ♖f7 23.♖g3 ♖h8 24.♜f4 ♜g5 25.♜g6+ ♖g8 26.♗xg5 ffg5 27.♗d1 ♖f6 28. e5+–) 12.♜d2! White completed his development and was ready for a direct kingside attack. We failed to find any satisfactory defence for Black. 12...a6 (12...exd4 13.♗xc6 bxc6 14.cxd4+; 13...dxc3 14.♜c4 bxc6 15.♜xb6 axb6 16.♖xc3 ♖g6 17.f4 ♗h8 18. f5+ ♖xg5 19.♖e3+ ♖h5 20.♗f3 ♜xe4 21.♗h3+ ♖g4 22.♗f1 ♗xh3 23.♖f4+ ♖h5 24.g4+ ♖h4 25.♖h6 ♖xg4 26.♗f4#) 13.♗xc6 bxc6 14. ♖g3 ♗g8 15.f4 exd4 (15...♜h5 16. ♖h4 f6 17.fxe5 ffg5 18.♖xh5 ♖e8 19.♖xg5+ ♖h7 20.♖h4+ ♖g7 21. ♗f6+–; 19...♖g6 20.♖xg6+ ♖xg6 21.♜c4±) 16.e5! dxe5 (16...dxc3+ 17.♖h1 ♜h5 18.♖f3 f6 19.♖xh5 ffg5 20.ffg5 ♗f8 21.♖h6+ ♖g8 22.g6+–) 17.fxe5 ♜h5 18.♖h4 dxc3+ 19.♖h1 ♖d3 20.♖xh5 ♖g6 21.♗f6+ ♖f8 22.♖xg6 ♗xg6 23.

bxc3±.

Black has another interesting possibility to provoke complications i.e. 9...exd4 10.cxd4 g5 (10...♗g4 is illogical and therefore weak. If Black intends to lead a calm, quiet life he should refrain from giving up the centre. 11.♜bd2 g5 12.♗xc6 bxc6 13.♜xg5 hxg5 14.♗xg5 ♖g7 15.♖g3 ♖d7 16.h3±; 11...♗h5 12. ♗fe1 g5 13.♗xc6 bxc6 14.♜xg5 hxg5 15.♗xg5 ♗g6 16.♜b3 d5 17.♖f3 dxe4 18.♖xf6+– Arnason – Lima, Thessaloniki 1988) 11. ♗xc6 bxc6 (11...gxf4 12.♗a4 ♜h5 13.♗c2 ♜f4 14.♖d2 ♖f6 15.e5 dxe5 16.dxe5 ♖c6 17.♜c3+–; 12...h3 13.g3 d5 14.e5 ♜e4 15. ♜c3 ♗f5 16. ♖e3±) 12.♜xg5 hxg5 13.♗xg5 ♖g7, Renet – Ninov, Ostend 1989, 14.♜c3! This is a logical move, because White's pieces aim at joining the action as quickly as possible. The arising position is quite hard to evaluate, but White has a good compensation for the piece no doubt about that, for example: 14...♗h8 (14...♖d7 15.♖d2+–) 15.♗ad1 ♖g8 16.e5 ♜d7 17.♖g3 ♖h7 18.♗fe1 ♖g6 19.♗e4 dxe5 20.dxe5 ♖g8 21.e6 fxe6 22.♗xe6 ♖xe6 23.♗f6+ ♖f7 24.♖g7+ ♖e8 25.♖xh8+ ♖f7 26.♖g7+ ♖e8 27. ♜e4 ♖f7 28.♗e1!!+–. We see now that Black can force White to sacrifice a piece in numerous ways, but still White's chances after that seem to be preferable.

a) 9...♖e7 10.♘bd2



10...♘b8

This is hardly a “discharge” from an obliging draft with an already developed piece, but a comfortable and a well aimed regrouping of forces, since Black has more than enough time to accomplish it. The famous Breyer system in the Ruy Lopez is based on the same idea.

If Black tries to exploit the same idea a bit later he is doomed to fail: 10...♗g4 11.♞fe1 ♘b8 (11...♞ad8 12.h3 ♗h5 13.a4 a5 14.♘c4 g5 15.♘e3 ♗g6 16.♘xg5 ♘xe4 17.♘d5+- Perpinya – Minguez Rodriguez, Terrassa 1996; 15...gxf4 16.♘f5 ♖e8 17.d5±; 11...g5 12.♗g3 exd4 13.cxd4 ♘h5, Borgo – Godena, Reggio Emilia 1993, 14.♘c4 ♘xg3 15.hxg3 ♖f6 16.e5 dxe5 17.♗xc6 bxc6 18.♘fxe5± White can easily make use of the numerous weaknesses of the opponent; 11...♗h8, Janetschek – Beyen, Skopje 1972, 12.h3 ♗h5 13.♘c4 ♗xf3 14.♖xf3 exd4 15.♗xc6 bxc6 16.e5+-; 12...♗d7 13.a4 a6 14.♗xc6 ♗xc6 15.♘c4±) 12.♘c4 c6 13.♗a4 ♗c7 14.♘e3

(Black’s bishop is under attack, so it has to retreat.) 14...♗e6 (14...♗xf3 15.♘f5±; after 14...♗c8, Passoni – Facchetti, Italy 1994, White should better play 15.♘f5 just like after 14...♗e6 – Black will have to capture the knight on f5 anyway.) 15.♘f5 ♗xf5 16.exf5 ♘bd7 17.dxe5 dxe5 18.♗c2 ♞fe8 19.♘d2 ♖d6 20.♖xd6 ♗xd6 21.♘c4 ♗c7 22.♞ad1 ♘d5 23.♘e3 ♘7b6 24.♗b3 ♗d8 25.♘xd5 ♘xd5 26.♗g3± Tatai – Geenen, Haifa 1989 and Black is losing a pawn.

Black can choose another route with the knight: 10...♘d8. The fate of the e5-pawn becomes critical then: 11.♗g3! c6 (11...exd4 12.cxd4 ♗g4 13.♘h4 c6 14.♗a4 g5 15.♖a3 gxh4 16.♗xd6 ♖e8 17.d5 ♗d4 18.h3 ♗h5 19.♞ae1 ♗e5 20.f4 ♗xd6 21.♖xd6 ♗g7 22.f5 b5 23.♗b3 ♖d7 24.♖f4 a5 25.d6 ♖a7+ 26.♗h1 a4 27.♗c2 ♖c5 28.♗b1+-; 11...♘h5 12.dxe5 ♘xg3 13.exd6!±) 12.♗a4 ♗c7 13.♗b3 ♘h5 14.♘c4 ♘xg3 (14...♘f4 15.♖d2 g5 16.♞ad1 b5 17.♘e3 ♖f6 18.♞fe1 h5 19.h4 g4 20.♘g5 ♘de6, Ribic – Renaudin, Paris 1990, 21.d5 cxd5 22.♗xf4 ♘xf4 23.♘xd5 ♘xd5 24.♗xd5±; 21...♘xg5 22.hxg5 ♖xg5 23.dxc6 h4 24.♗xf4 ♖xf4 25.♘d5±) 15.fxg3! White’s rook on f1 now joins the action decisively and this is more important than the somewhat weakened white pawns. 15...♞e8 (15...♗e6 16.♘h4±) 16.♘h4! exd4 17.♗c2! g6 (17...dxc3 18.e5 g6 19.exd6+-) 18.cxd4

d5 19.exd5 cxd5 20.♘xg6 ♖g5 21.♘f4+-.

10...♗d7 11.a4. White is threatening to capture the bishop on b6 after the exchange on c6. 11...a6 12.♗xc6 ♗xc6 13.♘c4 g5 14.♘xb6 cxb6 15.d5 ♗d7 (The other line is more stubborn 15...♗xd5 16.exd5 e4 17.♖e2 gxh4 18.♘xh4 ♘xd5 19.♘f5 ♖e5 20.♘xh6+ ♗h7 21.♘g4 ♖e6 22.c4 ♘f4 23.♖xe4+ ♖xe4 24.♘f6+ ♗g6 25.♘xe4±) 16.♘xg5 hxg5 17.♗xg5 ♗h7 18.♖g3 ♞g8 19.♖h4+ 1-0 Borgo – Kleinschroth, Italy 2000.

11.♞fe1 c6

11...♗d7 12.♗xd7 ♘bxd7 13.♘c4 ♞fd8 14.♞ad1 ♘f8 15.♘e3 ♘g6 16.♘f5 ♖e6 17.d5 ♖e8 18.♗xf6± Sanchez Victor – Ossa Orlando, Medellin 2001.

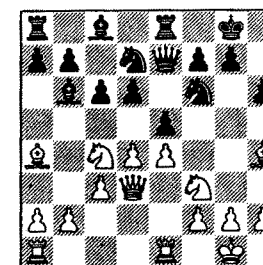
12.♗a4 ♘bd7

12...♗g4 13.♘c4 – see 10...♗g4 11.♞fe1 ♘b8 12.♘c4 c6 13.♗a4; 12...g5 13.♘xg5 hxg5 14.♗xg5 ♗h7 15.♖g3 ♞h8 16.♞e3 ♗d8 17.♞f3 ♘bd7 18.d5 ♞b8 19.dxc6 bxc6 20.♗xc6 ♖e6 21.♞f5 1-0 Kuporosov – Navrotescu, Wattens 1993; 12...♞d8, Grabarska – Wiliczkiwicz, Zakopane 2000, 13.b4!? g5 14.♘xg5 hxg5 15.♗xg5 ♗h7 16.♘c4 ♞g8 17.f4+-.

13.♘c4 ♞e8

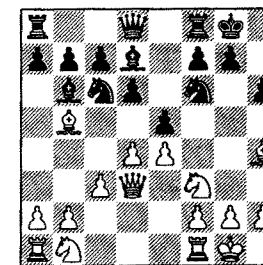
13...♗c7 14.♘e3 ♞e8, Isonzo – Van Hoolandt, Milan 2002, 15.♞ad1 ♘b6 (15...♖f8 16.b4! exd4 17.cxd4 ♞xe4 18.b5 c5 19.b6± and the complications are favourable for White.) 16.♗b3±.

3.♗b5 ♘f6 4.0-0 ♗c5 5.c3



The game T.Luther – A.Maric, Hastings 1994 reached this position and now White could have acquired plenty of space on the queenside with: 14.b4! ♗c7 (14...exd4 15.cxd4 ♗c7 16.b5 ♘b6 17.♘xb6 axb6 18.♗c2±; 14...g5. This looks like the natural way for Black to get some counterplay, but White’s play on the queenside is clearly ahead of Black’s one on the kingside. Black will in fact only weaken his king’s position without achieving anything substantially useful.) 15.♗g3 ♗c7 16.b5 c5. So White managed to provoke weaknesses that are troublesome for Black. 17.♘e3 ♘b6 18.♗c2 ♘h5 19.a4 cxd4 20.cxd4 ♘xg3 21.hxg3 g4 22.♘h2±) 15.b5 ♘b6 16.♘xb6 axb6 17.♗c2 g5 18.♗g3 ♘h5 19.d5 ♘xg3 20.hxg3±.

b) 9...♗d7



This move is preferred by the famous GMs Peter Leko and Valery Salov.

10. ♜bd2 a6

Black should have a plan, because otherwise he might easily get punished quickly in this seemingly solid position: 10... ♖e8 11.a4 a6 12. ♗c4 ♜e7 (Black's tries to complicate matters are doomed to fail: 12... exd4 13.cxd4 g5, Salai – Sosna, Czech Republic 2000, and now White could have penalized his opponent for the ill-prepared kingside action with 14. ♜xg5! hxg5 15. ♗xg5 ♜xd4 16.e5 ♗f5 17. ♜g3 ♜h5 18. ♜h4+-) 13. ♖fe1 ♖ad8 14. ♗b3 ♗a7 15. ♜c4 exd4 16.cxd4 ♗g4 17. ♜cd2 ♜h8 18.h3 ♗h5 19. ♖ac1 g5 20. ♗g3 ♗g6 21.d5 ♜h5 22. dxc6+- P.Smirnov – Ulko, St. Petersburg 2002;

About 10... ♜e7 see the line a) 9... ♜e7 10. ♜bd2 ♗d7.

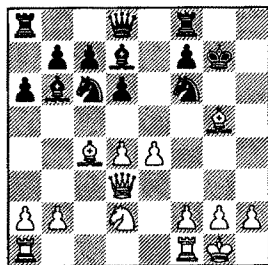
11. ♗c4 exd4

This pawn trade is in fact an invitation for great complications! White must be ready to sacrifice material in order to fight for an opening advantage, so Black might get good winning chances in some lines. White will have a lasting advantage without any risk after the calm 11... ♜e7 12. ♖fe1 ♜h8 (12... ♗g4 did not solve the problems after 13. ♗b3 ♗a7 14. ♗a4 b5 15. ♗c2 ♖fe8 16.h3 ♗h5, Kuporosov – Tatar, Budapest 1990, and White could have disrupted the coordination of the enemy forces with

17.d5! ♜d8 18.a4±) 13. ♗b3 g5 14. ♗g3 ♜h5 15. ♜c4 f6 16. ♜xb6 cxb6 17. ♜d2 b5 18.a4 ♜a5 19. ♗d1 ♜xg3 20.hxg3 ♖ac8 21. ♜f1 b4 22. ♜e3± Ehlvest – Salov, Moscow 1988.

12.cxd4 g5 13. ♜xg5 hxg5 14. ♗xg5 ♜g7

Back in 1998 Black played 14... ♜xd4 in the game between the not so familiar players Arnold – Wernert, Germany 1998, and now White could have played 15. ♜g3! with a great edge: 15... ♜g7 16. ♗h4+ ♜h7 17.e5 dxe5 18. ♜xe5+-.



This is a crucial position for the evaluation of this line. It is not quite clear. Topalov lost it twice with White against Peter Leko. He played both times 15. ♜b3 and maybe that caused his demise?

15. ♜f3!?

This move has been recommended by the analysts long ago, but has not been tested in GM practice yet. The knight seems to be better placed on f3 than on b3. White is a piece down anyway, so it is worth to place this knight rather passively on b3 with the

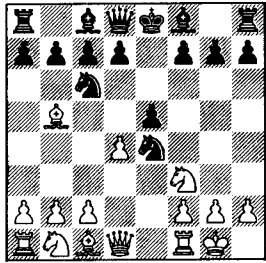
quite unnatural idea of attacking with the f-pawn? The answer to that question is definitely negative, since White's king will be bare too after the pawn attack! 15... ♜e7 (15... ♜e8 16. ♖fe1 ♖g8 17.e5 dxe5 18. ♜xe5 ♜xe5 19. ♗xf6+ ♜xf6 20. ♖xe5 ♜c8 21. ♜f3 ♗f5 22. ♗d3 ♖g5 23. h4 ♗xd4 24. ♜f4+-; 16... ♜h7 17. e5 dxe5 18.dxe5 ♗e6 19. ♗f6+ ♜xf6 20.exf6+ ♜xf6 21. ♜c3+ ♜g6 22. ♗d3+ f5 23.g4!!±; 15... ♖e8 16. ♖ae1 ♜e7 17. ♗xf6+ ♜xf6 18.e5+ dxe5 19. ♜h7+-; 18... ♜g7 19. ♗xf7!± White captured a third pawn for the piece and his attack continues.) 16. ♜d2! ♜xe4 (16... ♜fg8 17.e5±) 17. ♗h6+ ♜h8 (17... ♜g6 18. ♗d3 d5?? 19. ♜g5+ ♜h7

20. ♜g7#; 18... f5 19. ♗xe4 fxe4 20. ♜g5+ ♜f7 21. ♜g7+ ♜e6 22.d5+ ♜xd5 23. ♜g5+ ♜f5 24.g4+ ♜xg4 25. ♜f7+ ♜f5 26. ♜h7+ ♜e6 27. ♜xd8+-; 22... ♜xd5 23. ♖fd1+ ♜c6 24. ♖ac1+ ♜b5 25. ♜d4+ ♗xd4 26.a4+ ♜b5 27. ♜xd4+ ♜b5 28. ♜c4+ ♜b6 29. ♗e3+ c5 30. ♗xc5+ ♜c7 31. ♗xd6+ ♜b6 32. ♜c5#) 18. ♜f4 d5 19. ♗xf8 ♜xf8 20. ♗xd5 ♜xd5 21. ♜xe4± The position after the piece sacrifice is very complicated and our analysis is far from conclusive. Still we believe that if you have studied properly the lines that we have shown you can enter the complications confidently, because White is hardly risking to lose.

Conclusion about 4... ♗c5

The system that we have been dealing with is very popular and quite playable at a very high level as well. The most critical lines arise after Black forces White to sacrifice a piece with g7-g5. We have suggested some attractive possibilities for White that can yield good practical results. Whenever the game steers into a quieter play White preserves a lasting positional advantage, because of the extra space. White should additionally have in mind our recommendation to operate actively on the queenside with b2-b4.

Chapter 24

1.e4 e5 2.♣f3 ♣c6 3.♠b5 ♣f6 4.0-0
♣xe4 5.d4
Berlin Defence

5...♠e7

One of the ancient systems of the Ruy Lopez – the first game dates back to the year 1803! It still has the reputation of a super solid opening weapon and has some famous proponents at top GM level like Kramnik, Piket, Timman...

After 5...a6 6.♠a4 the standard positions of the Open Defence are reached, see 3...a6 4.♠a4 ♣f6 5.0-0 ♣xe4 6.d4.

We are going to analyse the move 5...♣d6 as the main line in the next chapters, while now we are going to see some less popular and weaker moves in this critical theoretical position:

5...♣f6? 6.dxe5 ♣xe5 7.♠e1+-;

5...♣b4? is very weak – 6.♠e1 f5 (6...♣f6 7.dxe5 ♣g8 8.♣g5 ♠e7 9.e6!+-) 7.♣xe5 ♣h4 8.g3 ♣f6

9.f3+-;

5...♣e7? 6.♠e1 d5 7.♠xc6 bxc6 8.♣xe5 ♣d6 9.f3+-; 5...♠b4? 6.c3 ♠a5 7.♠e1 d5 8.♣xe5 ♠d7 9.♠xc6 ♠xc6 10.f3+- Ivkina – Brockmanns, Tallinn 1997;

5...d6? 6.d5 a6 (6...♠d7 7.dxc6+-) 7.♠d3 ♣e7 (This is the only way for Black to avoid losing a piece, but his king is so weak that his position is beyond salvation already. 7...♠g4 8.♠xe4+- Wallis – Wu, Sydney 2002; 7...♠f5 8.dxc6+- Wall – Judd, Dayton 1981) 8.♠xe4 f5 9.♠d3 e4 10.♠e1 exd3 (10...exf3 11.♣xf3 ♣d7 12.♠g5+-) 11.♣xd3+-;

Black is losing a piece after 5...♣xd4? 6.♣xd4 exd4 (6...♣d6, Sery – Cervený, Brno 1907, 7.♠e1+-; 6...c6 7.♠e1+-) 7.♠e1 f5 (7...♣h4 8.♣f3+-; 7...♠e7 8.♠xe4+-) 8.f3 ♠d6 (8...♣h4 9.fxe4 fxe4 10.♣d2 e3 11.♣f3+- Rojprapayont – Sammut, Manila 1992; 8...♣e7 9.fxe4 fxe4 10.♣xd4+- Lausten – Wagner, Oberlinghaus 1994; 8...♠c5 9.fxe4+-; 8...c6 9.fxe4 cxb5, Gypser – Haeussler, Passau 2000, 10.♣h5+! g6 11.exf5+-) 9.fxe4+- Mackenzie – Reichhelm, Germany 1866;

5...d5 is too dangerous for Black 6.♣xe5 ♠d7 (This is the only move. The other lines lose outright: 6...♣d6? 7.♣xc6+-; 6...♣e7? 7.♣xc6+-; 6...♣f6, Tolar – Momotov, Plzen 1999, 7.c4 ♣d6 8.♠e1 ♠e6 9.♠xc6+ bxc6 10.♣a4+-; 6...♣d6, Czako – Szigetvari, Gyongyo 1998, 7.♠e1 ♣b4 8.c4+-; 7...♠d7 8.♠xc6 bxc6 9.f3+-) 7.♣xf7! This simple, but efficient combination draws the curtains for Black: 7...♣xf7 8.♣h5+ ♣e6 (8...g6 9.♣xd5+ ♠e6 10.♣xe4 ♠f5 11.♠c4+ ♣g7 12.♣e3+- Metger – Suechting, Hamburg 1897) 9.♣c3! ♣b4 (9...♠e8 10.♣g4+ ♣f7 11.♣xe4+- Berger – Posener, Graz 1870) 10.♣xd5 ♠xb5 11.♣f4+ ♣d6 12.♣xb5 ♣f6 13.♠e1 c5 14.♣xb7+- Lange – Godeck, Germany 1867;

5...f6?! 6.dxe5 fxe5 7.♠e1 d5 8.♣xe5 ♣f6 9.♣d3±;

5...♠d6?! Black is losing too much time with this quite unnatural defence of the e5-pawn. 6.dxe5 ♣xe5 (6...♠c5 7.♣d5 a6 8.♠c4+- Hynes – Stevenson, IECG 2000; 6...♠xe5 7.♠xc6+-; 6...♠e7 7.♣d5±) 7.♠e1 f5 (7...♣c5 8.♣xe5+- Fuentes – Tabima, Cali 1999) 8.♣xe5 ♠xe5 9.♠xe4 fxe4 10.♣h5+ ♣f8 11.♣xe5+- Abreu – Neumeier, corr. 1990;

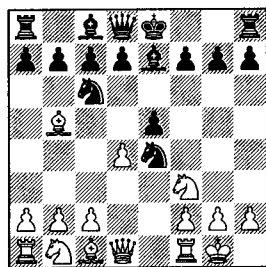
5...♣f6?! is just a senseless loss of time. 6.dxe5 ♣g4 (6...♣e4 7.♣d5±) 7.h3 ♣gxe5 8.♠e1 ♠d6 (8...f6 9.♣xe5 ♣xe5 10.f4+-) 9.♠xc6 dxc6 10.♣xe5+- Williams – Pereira, Casual Compuserve 1995;

5...♣e7 6.♠e1 f5 7.♠xc6 dxc6 8.♣xe5 c5 (8...♠e6 9.♣h5+ ♠f7 10.♣xf5+- Rajib – Arpit, India 2002) 9.♣c3 c6 10.♣xe4 fxe4 11.♣h5+ g6 12.♣xg6 ♣f7 13.♣e5+ 1-0 Lee – Shelton, IECG 1995;

5...exd4 6.♠e1 f5 (6...♠e7 7.♠xe4+- Garcia Melgar – Correa, Nigran 1998; 6...♣e7? This is evidently not the right square for the queen and Black is quickly losing a piece. 7.♠xc6 dxc6 8.♣xd4+- Sloan – Jones, Newport 1960; 7...bxc6 8.♣xd4 c5 9.f3+-; 8...♣e5 9.f3+- Coley – Matthews, IECG 1995; The next move for Black resembles the Riga variation: 6...d5 7.♣xd4 a6 8.♠xc6+ bxc6 9.f3+-; 7...♣f6 8.f3 ♠c5 9.c3+- Dam – Magalhaes, IECC 1999; 7...♠e7 8.♣xc6+-; 7...♠d7 8.♠xc6 ♠xc6 9.f3 ♠c5 10.♠e3 ♣f6 11.♣xc6 bxc6 12.♠xc5+-; 8...bxc6 9.f3 f5 10.fxe4+-; 9...♠c5 10.fxe4+-; 9...c5 10.♣b3+- Nokka – Koskinen, Tampere 1989; 7...♠c5 8.♠xc6+ bxc6 9.f3 ♠g4, Evertsson – Fredriksson, Kristallen 1995, 10.fxg4+-; 9...♣h4 10.g3 ♣h5 11.c3+-; 9...0-0 10.fxe4 dxe4 11.♠e3 ♣f6 12.c3+- Misecka – Sykora, Bratislava 1998; 7...♠d6 8.♣xc6 ♠xh2+ 9.♣h1 ♣h4 10.♠xe4+ dxe4 11.♣d8+ ♣xd8 12.♣xd8+ ♣xd8 13.♣xh2 c6 14.♠c4 f5 15.♣c3 h6 16.♠e3 ♣e7 17.♠c5+ ♣f6 18.♠d1 ♠e6 19.♠xe6 ♣xe6 20.♠d6+ ♣f7 21.♠d7+ ♣g6 22.♣e2± Van Den Bosch – Oskam, Netherlands 1928) 7.♣xd4 ♣xd4

(7... ♜e7?? 8. ♜e6 1-0 Dobias – Muller, Mlada Boleslav 1905; 7... ♗c5 8. ♞xe4+ fxe4 9. ♖h5+ g6 10. ♖xc5+-; 7... ♖h4 8.g3 ♖f6 9. ♗xc6 dxc6 10.f3 ♗c5 11.c3 0-0 12.fxe4+- Freukkink – Terwogt, corr. 1989; 7... ♖f6 8. ♗xc6 dxc6 9.f3 ♗c5 10.c3+-; 8... bxc6 9.f3+- Lunkmoss – Schwekendiek, Germany 1995) 8. ♖xd4 ♜f7 (8... ♗e7 9. ♖xg7 ♗f6 10. ♖h6+- Neumann – Winawer, Paris 1867; 8... c6 9. ♗d3 ♖a5 10. ♜c3 d5 11. ♖e5+ ♜f7 12. ♗xe4 fxe4 13. ♞xe4 ♗d7, Westra – De Zeeuw, Volmac 1988, 14. ♗e3 ♜g8 15. ♞a4 ♖d8 16. ♜xd5+-) 9. ♗c4+ d5 10. ♗xd5+ ♗e6 11. ♗xe6+ ♜xe6 12. ♞xe4+! fxe4 13. ♖xe4+ ♜f6 14. ♜c3 c6 15. ♗e3 ♗e7 16. ♞e1 ♖d7 17. ♖f4+ ♜g6 18.h4 ♖f5 19.h5+! ♖xh5, A.Karpov – COMP Mephisto, Hannover 1983. White can win by force now with 20.g4! ♖a5 21.b4! ♗xb4 22. ♗b6!+-.

The conclusion is quite obvious – Black risks losing very quickly if he avoids the main theoretical lines on move 5.



6. ♖e2!

This move has been discovered long, long ago, but this does

not make it less forceful. It was played many times by S.Tarasch in his world championship match against Em.Lasker in 1908, while Anand played it just recently against Piket...

6... ♜d6

You can consider this move to be more or less “an only one”.

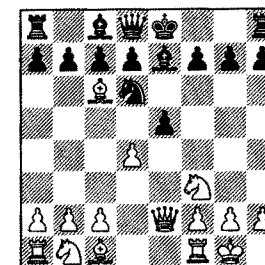
6... d5?! is very dangerous for Black due to 7. ♜xe5 ♗d7 (7... 0-0 8. ♗xc6 f6 9.c4+-) 8. ♗xc6! (This is the right exchange – White must keep the pressure along the e-file. Or 8. ♜xd7?! ♜xd4 9. ♜e5+ c6 10. ♗xc6+ ♜xc6 11. ♜f3 0-0 ♖ Nemet – Trifunovic, Yugoslavia 1963.) 8... ♗xc6 (8... bxc6 9. ♞e1 ♜f6, Podkriznik – Adam, Krsko 1997, 10. ♗g5±; 9... 0-0 10.f3 ♜g5 11. ♜xd7 ♞e8 12. ♜e5+- Em.Lasker – NN, Great Britain 1900; 9... ♜f8 10. ♜c3 ♜xc3 11.bxc3 ♗e8 12. ♖a6 ♖c8 13. ♖a5 ♗d6 14. ♗a3 f6 15. ♜d3 ♗g6 16. ♞e3± Em.Lasker – Scheve, Berlin 1891) 9. ♞e1 ♗d7 (9... 0-0? 10.f3 ♗h4 11.fxe4±; 9... ♜f8 10. ♜c3 ♜xc3 11.bxc3 ♗e8 12. ♞b1 b6 13.c4 f6 14. ♜d3± Napier – Scheve, Monte Carlo 1902) 10. ♜d2 ♜d6 (The trade on d2 is not helpful to the defence at all: 10... ♜xd2 11. ♗xd2 ♜f8 – 11... 0-0?? 12. ♜xd7+- – 12. ♖f3 ♗e6, Joachim – Kapic, Germany 2001 13. ♞e2!±) 11. ♜xd7 ♖xd7 12. ♜f3 f6 (12... ♜f8 13. ♜e5 ♖e6 14. ♗d2 ♞e8 15. ♗b4 ♜c4 16. ♗xe7+ ♞xe7 17. ♖f3± Rytshagov – Norri, Espoo 1992; 12... ♜c8?! 13. ♜e5 ♖a4?! – 13... ♖d8 14. ♗g5

♜f8± – 14. ♖g4 0-0 15.b3 ♖b4 16. ♖d7+-; 14... ♞g8 15.b3 ♖b5 16.a4+-; 15... ♖b4 16. ♖d7+! 1-0 L.Medina – Castellanos, Cuba 1994, 16... ♜f8 17. ♖d8+ ♗xd8 18. ♜d7#) 13. ♗f4 ♜f7 14. ♖d3 Black only seems to be doing well, while the two games played in this position prove that to be an illusion: 14... g6 (14... ♞ad8 15. ♗xd6 ♖xd6 16. ♞e3 g6 17. ♞ae1 ♞he8 18.h4 h5 19. ♞e6! ♖xe6 20. ♞xe6 ♜xe6 21. ♖xg6+- Balashov – Dzuban, Moscow 1983) 15. ♜e5+ fxe5 16.dxe5 ♖c6 17.exd6 ♗xd6 18. ♖f3! d4 19. ♞e4± Medina Garcia – Palacios de la Prida, Malaga 1965.

6... f5?! This weakening of the kingside is quite unnecessary 7.dxe5 0-0 8. ♜c3 ♜xc3 (8... d6, Teichmann – Leonhardt, Berlin 1905, 9. ♜xe4 fxe4 10. ♖xe4±) 9. ♖c4+ ♜h8 (9... ♜d5 10. ♖xd5+ ♜h8, Loman – Trimborn, Scheveningen 1905, 11. ♗f4 a6 12. ♗e2 ♖e8 13. ♞ad1 ♖g6 14. ♜d4 ♜xd4 15. ♖xd4 b6 16. ♗f3±) 10. ♖xc3 a6. (The strange onslaught 10... ♜b4, Walther – Puchalla, corr. 1970, could have been refuted with the energetic 11. ♗g5!, fighting for the dark squares. 11... ♗xg5 – after the combination 11... ♜xa2 12. ♞xa2 ♗xg5 13. ♜xg5 ♖xg5 14. ♖xc7 f4 15. ♖d6 ♞e8 16. ♞e1 f3 17. g3± Black’s queenside is utterly helpless – 12. ♜xg5 ♖xg5 13. ♖xb4 ♞e8 14.f4±; 10... f4 11.g3 ffg3 12.fxg3 ♗b4 13. ♖b3 – see 11... ♗b4; 11... ♗b4 12. ♖b3 ffg3 13.fxg3 ♖e7 14. ♗e3 a6 15. ♜g5!!

White has a great advantage. White’s combination is very beautiful and we feel obliged to show it to you till the end. 15... axb5 16. ♖d3 g6 17. ♞xf8+ ♖xf8 18. ♞f1 ♖e8 19. ♞f7 ♜g8 20. ♞xh7 d6 21.exd6 cxd6 22. ♖d5+ ♗e6 23. ♗d4!!+- Sauermann – Krantz, corr. 1987) 11. ♗a4 f4 (11... b5 12. ♗b3 ♞b8, Nurminen – Conway, corr. 1993, 13. ♗f4! ♖e8 14. ♞ad1 ♗b7 15. ♗d5 ♖g6 16. ♖d2 ♗c5 17.c3±) 12.a3 b5 13. ♗b3 ♗b7 14. ♗d5 ♜a5 15. ♞d1 c5 16. ♖e1 ♗xd5 17. ♞xd5 ♖c7 18.b3 ♖c6 19. ♖e4 ♞a7 20. ♗d2 ♜b7 21.c4± Mallee – Ahman, corr. 1992.

7. ♗xc6



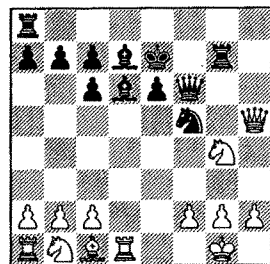
7... bxc6

This is the main line and it has been played hundreds of times in games of quite different levels. Most of the lines have been analysed extensively and Black as a rule defends successfully. Nevertheless we are going to suggest some interesting possibilities for White.

The other recapture 7... dxc6 looks a bit awkward, but the contemporary theory is not showing

a conclusive way for White to get the advantage. This is rather strange having in mind that the line is quite old. Accordingly we had to spend plenty of time and effort in order to be able to provide you with concrete and reasonable recommendations for White. 8.dxe5 ♘f5 9.♖d1 ♗d7 10.e6! This move is a must; otherwise Black will not have any problems whatsoever. 10...fxe6 11.♘e5 ♗d6 12.♙h5+ g6 13.♘g6 ♘g7. This all looks very gloomy for Black, but it is still quite complicated. 14.♙h6 ♘f5 15.♙h3. White should avoid the repetition of moves if he wants to play for a win. 15...♖g8 (But not 15...♙f6? 16.♘h8 0-0-0 17.♗g5! ♙xg5 18.♘f7 ♙g6 19.♘d8+- Moller - Taekholm, Copenhagen 1899) 16.♙xh7 ♖g7 17.♙h5! White is rather backward in his development, although that might not be so obvious yet. After the exchange of the queens (in case of the check on h8) White might get in trouble, because the defence of the white king will be difficult. Now White must play extremely precisely, otherwise Black will simply crush the kingside of his opponent. 17...♙f6 18.♘e5+! This is the only move! Everything else gives Black excellent (possibly better!) chances. 18...♙e7 (18...♙f8 19.♘d7+ ♖xd7 20.♘c3±; 18...♙d8 19.♘f3 ♘e7 20.♗g5+- Lepge - L.Paulsen, Leipzig 1863; 19...♙f8 20.♘bd2 ♙g8 21.♘e4 ♖xg2+ 22.

♙h1 ♖g7 23.♗g5+ ♙c8 24.♘f6 ♙f8 25.♖d3 e5 26.♘xd7 ♖xd7 27.♖e1±) 19.♘g4 - it is hardly believable, but this position has been played as early as the 19th century!



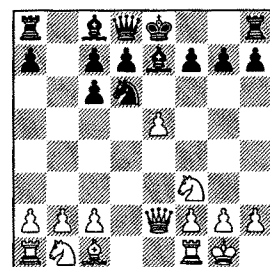
So Black has two interesting possibilities to exchange queens. White needs to keep coolness and be extremely inventive with a profound knowledge of the opening lines if he wants to achieve some edge. The best that he can hope for is a somewhat better endgame after some 15-20 moves.

1) 19...♙h4 20.♙xh4+ ♘h4 21.f3 e5 22.h3 ♗c5+ (22...♗f5 23.♖e1 ♗xc2 24.♘c3 ♗f5 25.♗h6 ♖g6 26.♗f4 ♙f7 27.♗xe5 ♖d8 28.♖ad1±) 23.♙f1 ♗e6 (23...♗f5 24.♗e3 ♗d6 25.♖d2 e4 26.♗f2 ♘g6, Taubenhaus - Pollock, New York 1893, White lost his way here and even lost the game. He had to complete his development instead and only Black would have problems after: 27.♘c3! exf3 28.gxf3 ♖h7 29.♖e1+ ♙f8 30.♘e4 ♖xh3 31.♘d6 cxd6 32.♖xd6 ♖xf3 33.♘e3±) 24.♘d2 ♖d8 25.♖e1 ♘f5 26.♖xe5 ♗d4 27.

♖xe6+! This exchange sacrifice neutralizes the concrete threats and White has now three connected passed pawns on the kingside. 27...♙xe6 28.♘e4 ♘d6 29.♗g5 ♗xb2 30.♖e1 ♖b8 (30...♖h8 31.c3±) 31.h4 ♘xe4 32.♖xe4+ ♙f7 33.♘h6+ ♙g6 34.g4 ♖d7 35.f4±;

2) 19...♙g6 20.♙xg6 ♖xg6 21.h3 e5 The white knight on g4 is the main defender of the white king against Black's onslaughts. 22.c4! White must organize some counterplay immediately! 22...♘d4 (22...♖ag8 23.c5 ♗xc5 24.♖xd7+ ♙xd7 25.♘xe5+ ♙e6 26.♘g6 ♖xg6 27.♘c3 ♘h4 28.g4±; 22...c5 23.♘c3 ♘d4 24.f3 ♖f8 25.♗d2 ♗f5 26.♗e1±) 23.c5 ♘c2 (23...♗xc5 24.♘xe5 ♖d6 25.♗g5+ ♙f8 26.♘d7+ ♖xd7 27.♘c3±) 24.♗e3 This seemingly unnatural exchange operation preserves some advantage to White. 24...♘xa1 25.♘a3 ♗xg4 26.hxg4 ♖xg4 27.♖xa1 e4 28.cxd6+ cxd6 29.♖d1 d5 30.♘c2 b6 31.b4 ♖ag8 32.g3 ♙e6 33.♙f1 ♖h8 34.♙e2± White's side is to be preferred in this endgame, because of his better piece coordination.

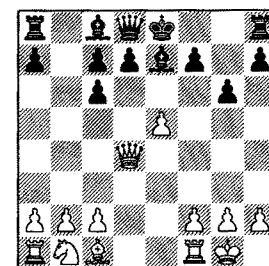
8.dxe5



8...♘b7

This is the main line. This knight joins later the action without any problems usually via c5.

The other idea - 8...♘f5 9.♙e4 g6 (9...♘h4 is only spelling disaster for the black king - 10.♘h4 ♗xh4 11.♙g4 g6 12.♗h6 d5 13.♙d4 ♗g5, Esling - Wallace, Melbourne 1895, 14.♗g7 ♖g8 15.♗f6 ♗xf6 16.exf6±, and it is not quite clear where the safe haven for the black king is, against the imminent attack; 9...d5 10.exd6 ♙xd6, Paulsen - Cordel, Berlin 1864, 11.♗f4! ♙d5 12.♙xd5 cxd5 13.♗xc7±; 10...♘d6 11.♙xc6+ ♗d7 12.♙c3±) 10.♘d4! The black knight is rather active, so it must be traded off. 10...♘d4 (Should Black try to avoid the exchange of the knight, he would lose too much time: 10...♘g7?! 11.♖d1 ♗b7 12.♗h6 0-0 13.♘c3 ♖b8 14.♙g4!± Timoshchenko - Katalymov, Tbilisi 1974) 11.♙xd4



11...0-0 12.♗h6 ♖e8 13.♘c3 c5 (13...♗g5?! This move is just very weak. It can only be explained with the poor develop-

ment of the theory in those years. The weakness of the dark squares in the black position becomes immediately catastrophic. 14. ♖xg5 ♗xg5 15. ♘e4 ♗xe5 16. ♘f6+ ♗f8 17. ♗h4 ♖e6 18. ♘h7+ ♗e8 19. ♘g5 ♗f6 20. ♗h6 ♖e7 21. ♘h7 ♗h8 22. ♗h4+ – Tarrasch – Taubenhaus, Monte Carlo 1903; 13...d5, Taimanov – Nikitin, USSR 1969, 14. ♘a4! This is a new idea, because White usually prefers to take *en passant* here. The move we are suggesting is quite logical and guarantees White a lasting positional advantage as you can see from the following lines: 14...♖f5 15.b3±; 14...c5 15. ♘xc5 ♖xc5 16. ♗xc5 ♖xe5 17. ♖fe1±; 14...♖b8 15.b3 ♖b4 16. ♗d2 ♖h4 17. ♖f4 ♗d7 18.f3 ♖a6 19. ♖fe1 ♖b5 20. ♘c3 ♖b4 21. ♖g3 ♖h5 22.a3±) 14. ♗d2 ♖b7 (14...d6, Schartner – Steniczka, corr. 1972, 15.exd6 cxd6 16. ♘d5 ♖b7 17. ♖fe1 ♖xd5 18. ♗xd5 ♖f6 19.c3±) 15. ♖ad1 d6 16. ♗f4 dxe5 17. ♗xe5 ♖f8 18. ♖xd8 ♖xe5 19. ♖xa8 ♖xa8 20. ♖xf8 ♗xf8 21. ♖d1 ♗e7 22.f3± Gligoric – Trifunovic, Budapest 1948. Black is reduced to a difficult and unrewarding defence, since his pawns are just too weak.

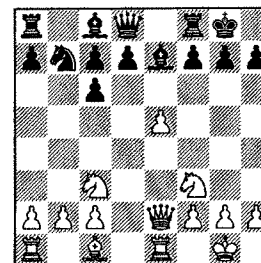
Black can also try the resourceful 11...d5!?, against which we propose the solid 12. ♘c3! The capture *en passant* allows Black to equalize after 12.exd6 0–0. White need not force issues here, because he can delay the exploi-

tation of the weak c5-square for more suitable moments later. Black's defence is rather difficult against a precise strong play by White! 12...♖e6 (12...♖f5 13. ♘a4 0–0 14.b3 ♖xc2 15. ♖h6 ♖e8 16. ♖ac1±; 14...♗b8 15. ♖h6 ♖e8, Beliavsky – Mikhalchishin, USSR 1978, and now White was going to have a lasting positional edge after the quiet move 16.c3±; 12...♖b8 13. ♖h6!?) Black is delaying castling and White tries to keep the opponent's king in the centre quite reasonably at that. 13...♖b4 14. ♗xa7±; 13...♖e6 14. ♗a4±; 13...♖xb2, Van der Wiel – Spassky, Rotterdam 1988, 14. ♘e4! The weakness of the dark squares in the black camp is evident. This is a quite typical motive in this variation. 14...♖b4 15. ♘f6+ ♖xf6 16. ♗xb4+; 14...♖b6 15. ♖g7! ♖b4 16. ♗xa7±; 15...c5 16. ♘xc5 ♖g8 17. ♖f6 ♖xf6 18.exf6 ♖xf6 19.c4± The black king will be safe nowhere. Black's compensation for the exchange is far from sufficient after 15...dxe4 16. ♗xd8+ ♖xd8 17. ♖xh8±) 13. ♘a4 ♗b8 14. ♖e3 a5 15.a3 ♗b5 16.b3 c5. As you can see, the ex-world champion preferred to give up a pawn outright instead of suffering indefinitely defending the c5-square. It is not easy to say immediately whether the arising endgame is winning for White or a draw. 17. ♘xc5 ♖xc5 18. ♗xc5 ♗xc5 19. ♖xc5 ♗d7 20. ♖fe1± Ljubojevic – Spassky, Belfort 1988.

9. ♘c3 0–0

Black might transpose to the main lines with 9...♘c5 after 10. ♖e1 0–0, but he could also try to reach some original positions after 10...♖a6. The idea is not bad, but White still keeps his edge 11. ♗d1. This is not a loss of time because it is not quite clear yet how useful for Black the bishop on a6 is. 11...0–0, Schmidt – Chigorin, Petersburg 1879, 12. ♘d4! ♘e6 (12...f6 13. ♖f4 ♖b8 14.e6 ♘xe6 15. ♘xe6 dxe6 16. ♖xe6±) 13. ♖e3 ♖b8 14. ♖b1±.

10. ♖e1



10...♘c5

10...♖c5 11. ♘e4 d5 12.exd6 cxd6 13. ♖g5 ♗d7 14. ♖ad1±.

Black can try the old, but rarely played move 10...♖e8 only with the idea to surprise the opponent. After 11. ♗c4! ♘c5 12. ♘g5! ♖xg5 (12...♘e6 13. ♘xe6 fxe6 14. ♖e3 ♖b8 15.b3 ♖b4 16. ♗d3 d6 17. ♖ad1±; 16...d5 17. ♘a4±) 13. ♖xg5 ♗xg5 14. ♗xc5 ♖b7 (Black has to defend a difficult endgame after 14...♗e7 15. ♗xe7 ♖xe7, Magem Badals – Sanz Alonso, Leon 1990, 16. ♖ad1

♖b8 17.b3±; 14...♖e6 15. ♗d4! This is an important move depriving Black from a lot of useful possibilities. 15...♖g6 16.g3±; 15...♖b7 16. ♗b4± Schlechter – Janowski, Paris 1900) 15. ♗b4 ♖ab8 16. ♘e4! ♗g6 (16...♗xe5 17. ♘c5 ♗d6 18. ♖ed1 ♗f8 19. ♖xd7 ♖e5 20. ♘d3±) 17. ♘c5 ♖a8 18. ♗c3 d6 19. ♘a6! c5 20.f3 ♖bc8 21. ♘xc7!! This beautiful combination is a logical consequence of Black's cramped passive position. 21...♖ed8 (21...♖xc7 22.exd6 ♖cc8 23.d7 ♖xe1 24. ♖xe1 ♖f8 25. ♗xc5 ♗b6 26. ♗xb6 axb6 27. ♖e8+–) 22. ♘xa8+– Kuczynski – Grabarczyk, Plock 2000.

10...d5. After this reckless positional decision Black's queenside becomes very weak. The idea is to rely on the activity of the black pieces. 11.exd6 ♖xd6 12. ♖g5 ♗d7 (12...f6, Osmolovsky – Bondarevsky, Moscow 1946, 13. ♗c4+ ♗h8 14. ♖f4±) 13. ♖ad1 ♗f5, Martinez – Em.Lasker, USA 1902, (13...♘c5 14. ♖f4 ♖b7 15. ♗e3 ♖fd8 16.b4 ♘e6 17. ♖xd6 cxd6 18. ♘e4 ♗c7 19. ♘fg5± Puschanski – Archangelski, corr. 1980, and Black can hardly defend his unsupported centre as well as the kingside simultaneously; 13...f6 14. ♖h4 ♗f7 15. ♘e4 ♖d7 16. ♖g3 ♖xg3 17. hxg3 ♖g4 18. ♗a6 ♘d8 19. ♘c5± Mallee – Ahman, corr. 1980; 13...c5 14. ♘d5 f6 15. ♖f4 ♗f7 16. ♗b5 ♖xf4 17. ♘xf4 ♖b8 18. ♗b3 c4 19. ♗a3± Greenfeld – Lugovoi, St.Petersburg 1999)

14. ♗e4! h6 (14... ♗g6 15. ♗h4 ♗e6 16. ♗f3± Black's situation spells trouble. The pawn on a2 is untouchable: 16... ♗xa2? 17. ♗f6+ gxf6 18. ♗xf6 ♗c4 19. ♖h6 ♗g4 20. h3+-) 15. ♖h4 ♗h5 16. ♖g3 ♖g4 17. h3 ♖xf3 18. ♗xf3 ♗xf3 19. gxf3 ♖fe8 20. ♖e3 ♖xg3 21. ♗xg3±. Both sides have pawn weaknesses, but White has a much easier access to the vulnerable black queenside than Black to White's kingside.

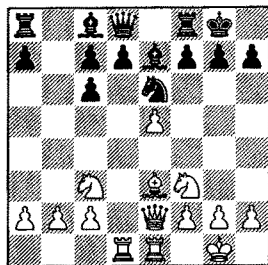
10...f6 11. ♖f4 fxe5 12. ♖xe5 The occupation of the e5-square is a definite achievement for White in these types of positions. Black must create weaknesses if he wants to remove the white outpost there. 12... ♖c5 (12... ♖f6, Jansa – Djuric, Vrnjacka Banja 1981, 13. ♖ad1 ♖xe5 14. ♗xe5 ♗d6 15. ♗e4 ♗xe4 16. ♗xe4 ♗f6 17. ♗d4±; 12... ♖f7 13. ♗d4 ♖f8 14. ♖g3 c5 15. ♗f3 d6 16. ♗e4 ♖b8 17. ♖h4 ♗d7 18. ♗g5 ♖f5 19. ♗xh7 ♗xh7 20. g4+- Petrushin – W. Nikitin, Simferopol 1989) 13. ♖d4 ♖xd4 14. ♗c4+ d5 15. ♗xd4 ♖f5 16. ♖e2 ♖f6 17. ♖ae1 ♗d6 18. ♗e5 ♗e4 19. ♗xe4 ♖xe4 20. f3 ♖f5 21. ♗xc6 ♖xc6 22. ♖e8+ ♗xe8 23. ♖xe8+ ♖xe8 24. ♗xd5+ ♖ce6 25. ♗xf5+- Teichmann – Tarrasch, Monte Carlo 1902.

11. ♖e3 ♗e6

White's plans are hardly changed after 11... ♖a6 12. ♗d2 ♗e6 13. ♖ad1 d5 14. exd6 cxd6 15. ♗d4 ♗xd4 16. ♖xd4 d5, Em. Lasker – Levitsky, Moscow 1896, 17. ♗a4±. White's main idea is to

exploit the weakness of the c5-square, just like in the main lines.

12. ♖ad1



12...d5

This is a very solid move – Black organizes a tough defence in the centre.

Some other moves have also been tried:

12... ♖b8 13. b3 ♖b4 14. ♖d2 d5 (14...f6, Nurminen – Valkesalmi, corr. 1991, 15. ♗e4! fxe5 16. ♖xb4 ♖xb4 17. ♗xe5 ♗e8 18. ♗d3 ♖d4 19. ♗ec5 ♖d6 20. ♗e5±. This position is a lovely illustration of the power of the “dark square strategy” of White in this line; 14... ♖xc3 15. ♖xc3 c5 16. ♗d2 ♖b7 17. ♗e4±) 15. exd6 cxd6 16. ♗e4! ♖xd2 (16... d5 17. ♖xb4 ♖xb4 18. c4! ♗e7 19. cxd5 ♗f4 20. ♗c2±) 17. ♗xd2 d5 18. ♗c3 ♗b6 (18... ♗e7 19. ♗g3±; 18... ♗c7 19. ♗c5±) 19. ♗d6 ♗c7 20. ♗f5 ♖b7 (Black must be careful, because the careless 20... ♖e8? loses after 21. ♖xd5!! cxd5 22. ♖xe6+-) 21. ♗e5 ♖fc8 (21... ♗xe5 22. ♗xe5±; 21... ♖fe8 22. ♗d6 ♖e7 23. ♗xf7 ♗xf7 24. ♗f5±) 22. ♗d6 ♖d8 23. ♗xf7± Jansa – Knezevic, Na-

mestovo 1987;

12...f6, Geller – Lengyel, Moscow 1975, this move has been played quite rarely although White has not demonstrated how to obtain a convincing edge yet. We suggest here the new idea of GM A. Bezgodov 13. exf6 ♖xf6 14. ♗e4! White has excellent attacking possibilities for the sacrificed pawn in the centre and the kingside. 14... ♖xb2 (declining the offer is simply weaker: 14...d5 15. c4 ♖a6 16. ♗c2 ♖xc4?! 17. b3) 15. c3 ♖a3 16. ♗eg5! ♗f6 17. ♗c2 ♗f5 18. ♗xf5 ♖xf5 19. ♗xe6 dxe6 20. ♗d4±;

12...f5 13. exf6 – see 12...f6;

12... ♖b7 is not to be recommended after 13. ♗d4 ♗xd4 14. ♖xd4 c5 15. ♖e3 d5, Tarantino – Argentieri, corr. 1989, 16. ♗b5!±, and Black loses the c5-pawn;

12... ♖b4, Lobron – Portisch, Reggio Emilia 1984, 13. ♗d4! White should not be reluctant to enter positions with bishops of opposite colour. White's space advantage and the possibility to exploit the weakness of the dark squares guarantees his better chances. 13... ♖xc3 14. bxc3 ♗xd4 15. cxd4±;

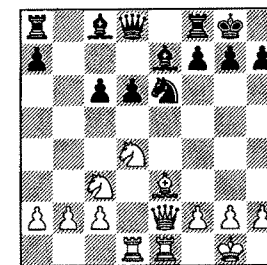
12... ♗e8. The idea of this move is to prepare f7-f6 and place the queen actively on g6 or h5. Black fails to do this however, after a precise play by White. 13. ♗d4 ♖b4 (13... ♗xd4 14. ♖xd4 c5 15. ♖e3 d6 16. ♗d5 ♖d8 17. ♗f3±) 14. ♗xe6 ♗xe6 15. ♖d2 ♖e8 (Black can also try to play with

bishops of opposite colour after: 15... ♖xc3 16. ♖xc3±, but White preserves a lasting advantage. The pawn on a2 is again untouchable: 16... ♗xa2?! 17. b3 ♗a3 18. ♗c4 ♖e8 19. ♖b4 ♗a6 20. ♗xa6 ♖xa6 21. ♖xd7±) 16. ♗e4! ♖xd2 17. ♗xd2± Verkerk – Jansson, ICCF 1992.

13. exd6

White must capture *en passant* otherwise Black might seize the initiative!

13...cxd6 14. ♗d4!



Black has to make up his mind now what piece to trade off for this white knight – the bishop on e7, or the knight on e6. His defence is difficult in both cases, though...

14... ♗xd4

In case of 14... ♖d7, White exchanges the bishop on e7, but not the knight: 15. ♗f5! d5. The pawn on d6 was under attack. 16. ♗xe7+ ♗xe7. This opening position is quite fashionable. It was played just recently in the game Anand – Piket, Monte Carlo 1999. We recommend here 17. f4! – as the most resolute way to fight for the initiative. Black is

immediately forced to solve concrete problems – how to defend against the advance of this annoying aggressive pawn? 17... ♜fe8 (17... ♗b4 18.f5 ♜c7 19.♗f2 ♜fe8 20.♖d4±; 17...f5 18.b3 ♜fe8 19.♗f2 a6 20.♖d4!±) 18.♗f2 ♗d8 19.♜a4 f6 20.c4 ♗a5, Palac – Kizov, Skopje 2002. It became obvious that Black failed to solve the problems in the opening. The great advantage of White in this position could have been emphasized with 21.b3!, for example: d4 22.♖xd4 ♜xd4 23.♜xe8+ ♜xe8 24.♗xd4±.

15.♖xd4

Black has formally the “two bishop” advantage, but the active white pieces amply compensate for that. Black is a long way from equality yet.

15...♜e8

15...♖e6 16.♗f3 d5 (16...♗d7 17.♗g3 f6, Horvath – Knezevic, Stary Smokovec 1990, and White could have kept his space advantage after 18.♜e4 ♖f5 19.c4±) 17.♗g3 ♖f6 18.♜e2. This is an absolutely typical situation – White manages to exchange the dark-squared bishops after which the weakness of the c5-square ensures White’s moderate, but long-lasting edge. 18...♖xd4 19.♜xd4 ♗d7 20.b4 a5 21.a3 axb4 22.axb4 ♜fe8 23.♗c3 ♜ac8 24.♗c5 ♗b7 25.♜e3 ♖d7 26.♜de1 ♜xe3 27.♜xe3± Omelchenko – Ahman, corr. 1984.

16.♗f3 d5

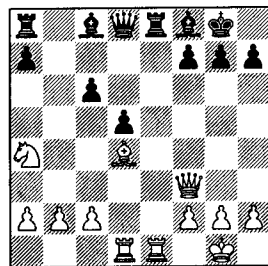
This natural looking move

has but an important drawback – White can easily occupy the weak c5-square!

Black has another much more patient method of defending that has never been tested yet: 16... ♖d7 17.♗g3 ♖f8 18.♜e4 ♜e6 19.c4 d5 20.cxd5 cxd5 21.♜c3 ♗a5 22.♜xe6 ♖xe6 23.h3 ♜c8 24.a3± White’s advantage is not so great, but Black’s defence is far from easy.

17.♜a4 ♖f8

17...♖d7 18.♗c3 ♖f8, Hellers – Hartman, Eksjo 1986, 19.♜xe8! ♗xe8 (19...♖xe8 20.♖c5±) 20.♜e1 ♗d8 21.♖c5±.



This position has long been the focus of theoretical discussions. Anand used to defend it with Black when he was young! We are going to follow our example game to the end in order to illustrate the numerous defensive possibilities for Black. 18. ♖c5. Amazingly this move leads to a forced draw. 18...♜xe1+ 19. ♜xe1 ♗a5! 20.b4 (After 20. ♜e8?? ♖d7!! Black wins outright) 20... ♗d8! This line is not something we recommend for White, so we are not going to analyse it so ex-

tensively. Black’s capturing on a4 leads to a forced draw. Most probably Anand was trying to win with Black. 21.♖xf8 ♗xf8 22.♗c3 ♖d7 23.a3 h6 24.f3 ♗d8 25.♜c5 a5 26.bxa5 ♖f5 27.♜b3 ♗d6 28.♗b4 c5 29.♜xc5 ♜b8 30.♗d4 ♜b5 31.a6 ♜xc5 32.♜e8+ ♜h7 33.a7 ♜c4 34.♗f2 ♜xc2 35.a8♗ ♜xf2 36.♜xf2 ♗c5+ 37.♜g3 ♗c7

½ Hellers – Anand, Groningen 1989.

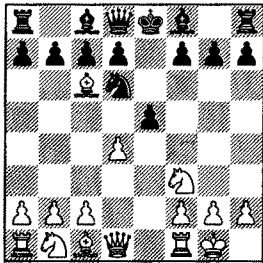
18.♜xe8! ♗xe8, Poenisch – Gross, corr. 1987, Here we suggest the simple 19.♖c5! There might follow: 19...♖a6 20.♗c3 ♖b5 21.♜e1 ♗d8 22.♖xf8 ♗xf8 23.♜c5 ♜e8 24.♜d7 ♜xe1+ 25.♗xe1 ♗d8 26.♜c5 ♗d6 27. ♗e8+ ♗f8 28.♗e3±.

Conclusion about 5...♖e7

We had a look at one of the most solid defensive systems of the Ruy Lopez. White has no chances whatsoever to crush his opponent with a beautiful direct attack – there are not any prerequisites for that. White’s main road to success (without any guarantee) is the slow and patient purposeful exploitation of the latent vulnerability of the dark squares! This opening forces Black to put up with permanent positional weaknesses, no matter what line of defence he chooses. The c5-square happens to be quite often the only key to the conquest of the seemingly unassailable black fortress.

Chapter 25

1.e4 e5 2.♖f3 ♖c6 3.♙b5 ♖f6 4.
0-0 ♖xe4 5.d4 ♖d6 6.♙xc6
Berlin Defence

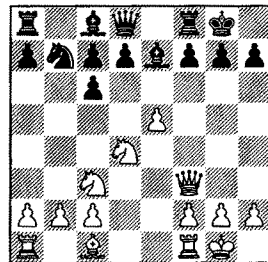


6...dxc6

The best capture.

The other move 6...bxc6 is unfavourable for Black and it is not popular at all. 7.dxe5 ♖b7 8.♖c3 ♙e7 (8...♖c5 9.♖d4! This centralized knight is very dangerous for Black. Moreover it vacated an excellent square for the queen. 9...♙a6 10.♞e1 ♖e6 11.♖xe6 fxe6 12.♙h5+! g6 13.♙g4 ♙g7 14.♙g5 ♙b8 15.♖e4 ♙xb2 16.♞ad1 ♙xc2 17.♙f6 ♞g8 18.♙h3 h5 19.♙a3+-; 11...dxe6 12.♙f3 ♙b7 13.♙g3 c5 14.♙g5 ♙d7 15.♞ad1+ Aturupane – Hon Kah Seng, Buenos Aires 1978; 9...♖e6 10.♖xe6 fxe6 – Black's problems are not solved by 10...dxe6 either, Allen – Laird, Brisbane 1995, 11.♙f3 ♙b7 12.♞d1 ♙e7 13.♖e4+ Black's development has been delayed consider-

ably and his pawn structure has been compromised. – 11.♙h5+! This important check weakens the f6-square. 11...g6 12.♙g4 ♙g7?? 13.♙g5+-; 12...d5 13.exd6 cxd6 14.♙c4 ♙d7 15.♖e4! ♙e7 – 15...♙c7 16.♞d1+; 15...d5?? 16.♙c3+- – 16.♙d4 0-0 17.♖xd6+ Sion – Campora, Leon 1997) 9.♖d4 0-0 10.♙f3! This is the ideal square for the queen from where it exerts a strong pressure over the opponent's position.



1) 10...♙c5 11.♙e3 ♞e8 12.♞ad1 ♙e7 13.♞fe1 ♙xd4 14.♞xd4 ♖c5 (14...♙xe5?? 15.♞e4+-) 15. h4! White starts an early kingside attack due to Black's lag in development. 15...♖e6 (Black's compensation for the queen is superficial after: 15...♙xe5 16. ♙d2 ♙xe1+ 17.♙xe1 ♞xe1+ 18.

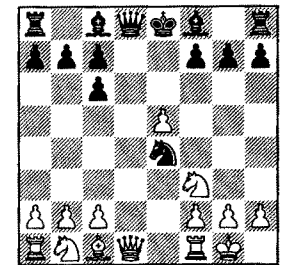
♙h2±) 16.♞g4 d5 Black should better give up a pawn in order to avoid the deadly kingside attack. 16...♙h8 17.♖e4 d5 18.exd6 cxd6 19.♖g3 d5 20.♖f5 ♙d7 21.♙h6 Black is beyond salvation now: 21...♞g8 22.♖xg7 ♖xg7 23.♙xg7 ♞xg7 24.♙f6 ♙xg4 25.♞e8#; 21...gxf6 22.♙c3+ d4 23.♞xd4+-; 21...g6 22.♙c3+ ♙g8 23.♙f6 ♙d8 24.♞xe6+-; 23...c5 24.♙f8 h5 25. ♞xe6 fxe6 26.♙xg6+ ♙xf8 27. ♙g8#) 17.exd6 cxd6 18.♙xc6 ♙b7 19.♙b5±;

2) 10...f6 11.e6! White should not capture on f6 of course. Now Black's pawn structure will be destroyed. 11...c5 (11...dxe6 12.♖xc6 ♙d7 13.♙e3 ♙d6 14. ♖xa7 ♖a5 15.♖xc8±) 12.exd7 ♙xd7 13.♖c6 ♙d6 14.♞e1 ♞e8 15.♙d2± Black has numerous pawn weaknesses and his pieces are rather misplaced, particularly the rook on a8 and the knight;

3) 10...♞e8 11.♙g3! ♙h4 (The only move. 11...♙c5? 12.♖f5 g6 13.♙g5+-; 12...♙f8 13.♖h6+-; 11...♖c5 12.♖f5 ♖e6 13.♙h6 g6 – and after 13...♙f8 14.♖e4 Black is clearly inferior: 14...♙h8 15.♙g5 ♖xg5 16.♖xg5 ♙g8 17. ♖h6+ gxf6 18.♖e6+- and White is winning the queen. – 14.♖xe7+ ♙xe7 15.♖e4 ♖d4 16.♞fe1 ♖xc2 17.♙g5 ♙f8 18.♖f6+ ♙h8 19.♙h4 h5 20.♖xh5 gxf6 21.♙f6+-; 14...♞xe7 15.♖e4 d5 16.♖f6+ ♙h8 17.f4 ♙a6 18.♙h3 ♞e8 19.f5 ♙xf1 20.♞xf1 ♖d4 21.fxf6+-) 12.♙f4 d6 (12...♖c5 13.♖f5 ♙e7

14.♙g3±) 13.exd6 ♖xd6 14.♖xc6 ♙d7 15.♖e5 ♙f5 (the exchange sacrifice is fruitless 15...♞xe5?! 16.♙xe5+- Huebner – Rossolimo, Skopje 1972) 16.♙xh4±. Generally speaking it is enough for the White player to know the manoeuvre ♖d4 and ♙f3 in order to achieve an excellent position.

7.dxe5 ♖e4



This is the last possibility for Black to avoid playing the now famous Berlin Endgame (about 7...♖f5 see the next chapters). White should not exchange queens now, because the active black knight will not let White achieve any advantage in the endgame, while now in the middlegame it is a juicy object for attack. In general, the move 7...♖e4 is not very popular, but still some really strong players employ it obtaining good practical results, maybe because of the bad preparation of their opponents. White must react concretely and quite energetically too, otherwise Black equalizes easily.

8.♙e2

This is the right move.

8...♗f5

The other possibility for Black is 8...♖c5 9.♞d1 ♗d7 (9...♗e7?! is too dangerous for Black after 10.♗g5! This is forcing considerable positional concession from Black. 10...f6 11.♗e3 Black's defence is rather difficult, for example: 11...fxe5?? 12.♗g5 ♗e6 13.♞d8+ ♖f7 14.♖xe5+ ♖g8 15.♗f3 ♖d7 16.♞e8 ♗xe5 17.♞xe5 ♖xe5 18.♗b3+ ♖f7 19.♖c3+-; 11...♗g4 12.♗xc5 ♗xf3 13.♗xf3 ♗xc5 14.exf6+-; 11...♖d7 12.exf6 ♖xf6 - 12...gxf6 13.♖c3± - 13.♖c3 ♗g4 14.h3 ♗h5 15.♞d2 ♖e4 16.♖xe4 ♗xe4 17.g4 ♗g6 18.♞e1 ♗e7 19.♗d4 ♗xe2 20.♞dx2 0-0 21.♞xe7 ♞xf3 22.♞xg7+ ♖f8 23.♞xc7+-; 11...♖e6 12.♖c3 fxe5 13.♖xe5 ♗f6 14.♗d4 ♗f5 15.♖f3 ♗e7 16.♗e5 0-0 17.♗xc7±) 10.♖c3 ♖e6 (10...♗e7 11.♗e3 0-0?? - 11...♖e6 see 10...♖e6 - 12.♗xc5 ♗xc5 13.♖e4 ♗b6 14.e6 fxe6 15.♖e5+- 1-0 Walbrodt - Janowski, Budapest 1896) 11.♗e3 ♗b4 (11...♗e7 12.♞d3 ♗b8 13.♞ad1 ♗c8 14.♖e4 0-0 15.♖g3 f5 16.exf6 ♗xf6 17.♗c1±) 12.♖e4 0-0 13.♖fg5! Black's pieces lack coordination, so White's direct kingside attack is quite promising. 13...♖xg5 (13...h6 14.♖xe6 fxe6 15.♗c5+-; 13...♞e8 14.♗h5+-) 14.♗xg5 ♗c8 (14...♗e7 15.♖c5 ♗xg5 16.♖xd7 ♞e8 17.♗g4 ♗e7 18.f4+-) 15.a3 ♗a5 16.c4 ♞e8 17.b4 ♞xe5 18.♗f6! ♞e8 19.♗xg7 ♖xg7 (19...♗g4 20.♖f6+ ♖xg7 21.♖xe8+

♖f8 22.f3+-) 20.♗b2+-; 14...♗e8 15.♖f6 gxf6 16.♗xf6 ♗e7 17.♗d2 ♗xf6 18.exf6 ♖h8 19.♗xd7±.

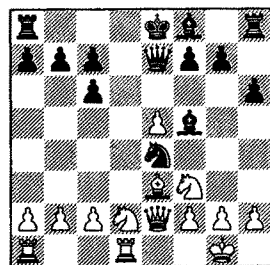
9.♞d1

Black has tested two retreats of the queen here.

9...♗c8

The move 9...♗e7 is only hampering the development of the bishop on f8.

10.♗e3 h6, Kindermann - Westerinen, Thessaloniki 1988. The idea of this move is to ensure the possible retreat of the knight on g5, but this is a loss of time that can be exploited by White. 11.♖bd2! This idea of GM A.Bezgodov, is practically refuting Black's previous move.



1) 11...♖xd2 12.♞xd2 g5 This move is dangerous for Black, but he can not finish his development otherwise. 13.♖d4 ♗g6 14.e6! ♞h7 (14...fxe6 15.♖xe6 ♗xe6 16.♗d4+-; 14...0-0-0? 15.♖xc6 bxc6 16.♗a6+ ♖b8 17.♗xa7+ ♖c8 18.♗a8#) 15.♗c4 ♗g7 16.♞e1 ♗xd4 17.♗xd4 f5 18.♗c5 ♗f6 19.e7 ♗f7 20.♗b4 b6 21.♞d8+ ♞xd8 22.exd8 ♗xd8 23.♗e7+-;

2) 11...g5 12.♖d4 ♗g6 13.♖xe4 ♗xe4 14.♗xg5 hxg5 (14...

♗xe5?! 15.f4 ♗d5 16.c4+-) 15.♗xe4 ♞h4 16.g4+-;

3) 11...♖c5 12.♖b3! White is chasing the enemy knight, and that is quite effective in this system. 12...♖d7 (12...♖xb3 13.axb3 a6 14.♖d4 ♗g6 15.f4 ♞d8 16.f5 ♗h7 17.e6 ♞d5 18.c4 ♞e5 19.♖xc6 bxc6 20.♞xa6 fxe6 21.♗h5+ g6 22.fxg6 ♞xh5 23.♞a8+-; 14...♗xe5 15.♞a5!! Now it becomes clear why White has opened the a-file! 15...c5 16.♖xf5 ♗xf5 17.♗g5+ ♗e6 18.♗b5+!!) 13.♖fd4! ♗xe5 14.f4 ♗f6 15.♗d2+ ♖d8 (15...♗e7 16.♗c3 c5 17.♖b5 ♗c6 18.♖a5 ♗b6 19.♖c4 ♗c6 20.♖bd6+ cxd6 21.♖xd6+-; 19...♗xb5 20.♖d6+-) 16.♗c3 Black's king will hardly survive the onslaught along the open files. 16...♗g6 17.♞e1 ♗d6 18.♖a5 ♖c5 19.b4 ♖e6 20.♖xb7+ ♖d7 21.♖xf5 ♗xf5 22.♞ad1+-;

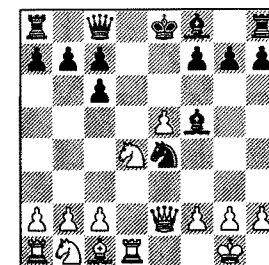
4) 11...0-0-0 12.♖xe4 ♞xd1+ 13.♞xd1 ♗xe4 14.♗g5 hxg5 15.♗xe4± Black failed to complete his development and his pawns are very weak too.

10...♗g4 (After 9...♗e7 10.♗e3). This move was recommended by GM H.Westerinen. 11.h3! Black's position is quite unsatisfactory after this simple move. 11...♗xf3 (11...♗h5 12.♖bd2 ♖xd2 13.♞xd2 ♗e6 14.g4 ♗g6 15.♖d4 ♗xe5 16.f4 ♗e4 17.f5 0-0-0 18.♗f2+-) 12.♗xf3 ♗e5 13.♗d4 ♗e6 14.♖c3 f5 (14...♖xc3 15.♞e1+-) 15.♖xe4 fxe4 16.♗h5+ ♗f7 17.♗e5+ ♗e7 18.♗f5±;

10...♞d8 11.♖a3 White has

completed his development, while Black's task to do that is much more difficult. 11...♞xd1+ 12.♞xd1 ♖c3 (12...♗b4 13.♖c4 b5 14.♖d4 ♗xc4 15.♗xc4 bxc4 16.♖xf5 g6 17.♖d4+-) 13.bxc3 ♗xa3 14.♖d4 ♗c8 15.e6. GM Jansa is exploiting the drawbacks of Black's risky opening system quite exemplary. 15...♗e7 (15...♗xa2 16.c4 ♗a5 17.♗g4 17...♗d6 18.♗xg7 ♞f8 19.c5 ♗xc5 20.e7 ♗xe7 21.♖e6+-; 17...f6 18.♖f5 ♗e5 19.♖xg7+ ♖e7 20.♖f5+ ♖xe6 21.♖h6+ f5 22.♗h5 ♗xh6 23.♗xh6+ ♗f6 24.♗xf6+ ♖xf6 25.♗d4+-; 23...♖f7 24.♗d4 ♞d8 25.♗xh7+ ♖e6 26.♗g6+ ♖e7 27.♗g5+-; 18...g6 19.♗d4 ♗e7 20.♖g7+ ♖f8 21.♗h6 ♗e5 22.♗xa7 ♗e2 23.♞a1 ♗d6 24.♖f5+ ♖g8 25.♖xd6 cxd6 26.♗b6 ♗xe6 27.♗d8+-; 22...♗d6 23.♖f5+ ♖e8 24.♗b8 ♗xh2+ 25.♖f1 ♗h1+ 26.♖e2+-; 25...♖d8 26.♖xd6 ♗h1+ 27.♖e2 ♗h5+ 28.f3 ♗e5+ 29.♗e3+-) 16.♗h5 g6 (16...♗xe6 17.♖xc6! The knight enables the rook to reach the d8-square. 17...bxc6 18.♗g5+-) 17.♗e5 f6 18.♗a5 ♗d8 19.♞d3 ♗d6 20.♗h6± Jansa - Sahu, Wrexham 1997.

10.♖d4



10...♙c5

10...♙e7 is more cautious, Fritsche – Murach, corr. 1985, but it is not solving the problems either, although White must play precisely: 11.g4! ♙g6 (11...♙xg4 12.f3+-) 12.f4! Black has no time to castle! 12...f5 13.exf6 ♘xf6 (13...gxf6? 14.f5+-) 14.f5 ♙f7 15.♘c3 ♘f8 (15...c5 16.♘f3! ♘xg4 17.♙g5 ♘f6 18.♙xf6 gxf6 19.♙e1+-) 16.♖e6+ ♙xe6 17.fxe6 ♙e8 18.g5 ♙g6 19.♘h1± The defence of the black king seems to be futile.

10...♙g6 11.e6 fxe6 (11...c5 12.exf7+ ♘xf7 13.♙c4+ ♘f6 14.♘b5±) 12.♘d2 1) 12...c5 13.♖xe4 cxd4 14.♙xd4 ♙e7 15.♙g5 ♙xe4 16.♙xe7 ♘xe7 17.♙xe4 c5 18.♙h4+ ♘f7 19.♙f4+ ♘g8 20.♙e7 1-0 McShane – Hjelm, Stockholm 2002; 2) 12...♘c5 13.b4! ♙d7 14.♙b2 ♖a4 15.♖xe6 ♘xb2 16.♘c4! ♘xd1 (16...♙d3 17.cxd3 ♘xd1 18.♙xd1 ♙e7 19.♙e1 g6 20.♘c5 ♙d8 21.♘xb7 ♙d7 22.♘e5 ♙e6 23.♘xc6 ♙xe2 24.♙xe2+-) 17.♙xd1 Black has an extra rook, but a hopeless position, though. 17...♙e7 (17...♙d6 18.♘xc7+-) 18.♘xc7+ ♘f7 19.♙d7 ♙xd7 20.♘e5+ ♘e7 21.♘xd7+ ♘xd7 22.♘xa8 ♙d6 23.♙g4+ ♘e7 (23...♘d8 24.♙d4+-) 24.♙h4+ ♘d7 25.♙h3+ ♘d8 26.♙c3 ♘c8 27.g3 ♘b8 28.♙xg7 ♙c8 29.c3+-; 3) 12...♘xd2 13.♙xd2 ♙f7 (13...♘f7 14.♘f3 ♙xc2 White has an ample compensation for the pawn, so Black has nothing better than snatch as much ma-

terial as possible hoping to survive the attack, giving back some of the material if necessary. 15.♘g5+ ♘g8 16.♙e1 ♙f5 17.♙c3 ♙e7 18.g4 ♙xg5 19.gxf5 e5 20.♙c4+ ♘f8 21.♙xe5 a5 22.♙ae1 ♙f6 23.♙c5+ ♘g8 24.♙e7 ♙xe7 25.♙xe7+-) 14.♙g5 h6 15.♙h4↑ ♙d6 (15...♙c5 16.♙e5 ♙xd4 17.♙xd4 0-0 18.♙ad1+-; 15...g5 16.♙g3 ♙g7 17.♘f5 ♙xb2 18.♙ab1 ♙c3 19.♙xc7 ♙xc7 20.♘d6 ♘f8 21.♙xb7+-) 16.♘f5 0-0 17.♘d6 cxd6 18.♙xd6±.

11.b4!

This idea of GM Sulskis is very powerful and puts the whole 7...♖e4 system in doubt. Black must face now a lot of concrete problems, quite difficult to solve if at all...

11...♙b6

The retreat of the bishop is considered to be the most stubborn line of defence. 11...♙e7? is weak. 12.f3 Black's knight is deprived from the c5-square now! 12...♘g5 13.h4+-; 11...♙xd4 12.♙xd4±.

In case of 11...♙xb4 White plays 12.e6! ♙g6 (12...fxe6 13.♘xf5 exf5 14.f3+-; 12...0-0?! 13.♘xf5+-) 13.exf7+ ♘f8 (13...♘xf7 14.♙c4+-) 14.♙c4 1) 14...a5 15.♖e6+ ♘e7 (15...♘xf7 16.♘f4+ ♘f6 17.♘xg6 ♙g4 18.f3 ♙c5+ 19.♙xc5+-) 16.f8♙+ ♙xf8 17.♘xf8 ♙xf8 18.♙e2 ♙f6 19.c3 ♙d8 20.♙e1 ♙c5 (Black had some more chances after 20...♘f7, but White still wins after: 21.cxb4 ♙xa1 22.♙b2 ♙xa2 23.♘c3 ♙e6 24.♙f3

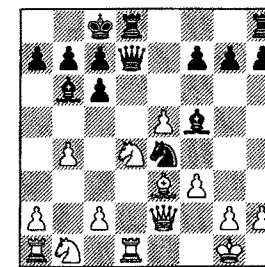
♘g8 25.♖xe4 ♙xe4 26.♙c3 ♙g6 27.♙xe4 ♙d1+ 28.♙e1 ♙xe1+ 29.♙xe1 axb4 30.h4 c5 31.♙e7 b6 32.♙d8+ ♘f7 33.♙xc7+ ♘g8 34.♙d8 ♘f7 35.♙d7 ♘f8 36.♙e5+-) 21.♙e3 ♘f8 22.f3 ♙g5 23.fxe4 1-0 Sulskis – A.Popov, Leningrad 1990; 2) 14...♙d6 15.♖e6+ ♘e7, Sulskis – Westerinen, Gausdal 1995, 16.♘g7! This is a quite unusual position with a great advantage for White. 16...♙c5 (16...♙e5 17.♙a3+ c5 18.♙xc5+ ♘xc5 19.♙xc5+ ♘f6 20.♘c3 c6 21.f4+-; 17...♘d6 18.♙e1 ♘f6 19.♘h5 ♙xh5 20.♙h4+-) 17.♘c3 ♙xf2+ 18.♘f1 ♘d6 19.♙g5+ ♘f8 (19...♘d7?? 20.♙e6#) 20.♖e6+ ♘xf7 21.♙f4+ ♘g8 (21...♘f5 22.♘d8+-) 22.♙f6 ♙d7 23.♘xf2+-.

12.f3 ♙d7 13.♙e3 0-0-0

Stefansson – Westerinen, Reykjavik 2002. We have to admit that Black has done relatively well. He completed his development and played very actively. White has a clear edge despite Black's admirable efforts. It is not clear whether Black might play any better in the 7...♖e4 system. 13...♙d8 14.♙e1! c5 (14...♘g5 15.♖a3 0-0 16.h4+-) 15.fxe4 cxd4 16.exf5 ♙xf5 17.♙f2 ♙xc2 18.♖a3+-.

Conclusion about 7...♖e4

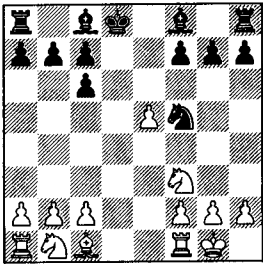
The line that we have just been dealing with has never been quite popular. It was the "secret opening weapon" of some players who relied on the element of surprise. White must know with pinpoint precision how to play correctly in order to achieve a serious opening advantage. We hope that the games and analysis we have provided will help the reader accomplish that task successfully.

**14.a4!**

White must play precisely and energetically too. Black has a mountain to climb now: 14...♘g5 (14...f6 15.a5+-; 14...c5 15.a5! cxd4 16.axb6+-; 14...a5 15.♙e1 ♘g5 16.bxa5 ♙xc2 17.axb6 ♙xd1 18.♘d2!+-) 15.♘c3 ♙xd4 (15...♙g6 16.♙xg5 ♙xd4+ 17.♙e3 ♙xe3+ 18.♙xe3+- – The threat against a7 now forces Black to surrender his queen for a rook; 17...♙xc3 18.♙xd7 ♙xd7 19.♙f1±) 16.♙xd4! (The best capture.) 16...♙e7 (16...♙e6 is losing a knight 17.h4 ♘xf3+ 18.gxf3 ♙g6+ 19.♙g2+-) 17.♙c5 ♙xd1+ 18.♙xd1 ♙e8 19.♙xa7 f6 20.h4 ♖e6 21.g4 ♙g6 (21...♙g6 22.h5+-) 22.h5 ♙f7 23.♙f2 ♘f4 24.♙e3 ♘h3+ 25.♘g2 ♘xf2 26.♙xf2!± Black can not capture on e5, because of 27.♙a7, so he is left a pawn down.

Chapter 26

1.e4 e5 2.♖f3 ♘c6 3.♗b5 ♖f6 4.
0-0 ♗xe4 5.d4 ♗d6 6.♗xc6 dxc6
7. dxe5 ♖f5 8. ♗xd8+ ♘xd8
Berlin Endgame



This now “legendary” Berlin Defence endgame has a long and glorious history. We will remind you that the masterly defence of this position was the key to the sensational win of Vladimir Kramnik in his match against Gary Kasparov in the year 2000. **9.♗c3**

The tournament practice has shown that simple developing move to be the best. The possible checks on d1 and g5 should better be kept in reserve.

Black now has an ample choice of moves. We have to mention that one defensive system often transposes into another and that complicates the studying of theory, so White players get disoriented sometimes. We are going to scrutinize a) 9...♗e7; b) 9...a5; c) 9...♗e7 in this

chapter. We intend to have a look at 9...♗e6 in the next chapter. The move 9...♗e8 which enjoyed popularity for many years will be dealt with in Chapter 28, while the contemporary and possibly the strongest approach 9...♗d7 will be analysed in Chapter 29.

About 9...h6 10.♞d1+ ♗e8 11.h3 – see 9...♗e8.

We must also have a look at the less popular moves.

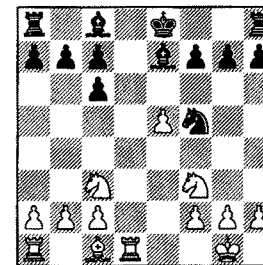
The old move 9...♗b4 is only losing time and forces an exchange that is unfavourable for Black. 10.♗e4 ♗e7 (10...♗e6 11.c3±) 11.♗d2 ♗xd2 12.♞ad1 ♗d5 13.♞xd2 ♗e7 14.♗d4 ♖f4 15.g3 ♗g6 16.f4± Weiss – Schalopp, Frankfurt 1887.

9...h5. This move has been tested in only one game for now – Ljubojevic – Salov, Linares 1990. White should better play 10.♞d1+ ♗e8 11.h3 transposing to the line 9...♗e8 10.h3 a5 11.♞d1 which is seen in Chapter 28.

a) 9...♗e7 10.♞d1+ ♗e8

The move 10...♗d7 has not been tested yet. White has to

play 11.♗g5; just like in the line with 10...♗e8. Black must cope with serious problems. (11...♗xg5 12.♗xg5 ♗e7 13.♗xf7! ♞hf8 14.♗g5± with an extra pawn; 11...h6 12.♗xe7+ ♗xe7 13.g4+-; 12...♗xe7 13.e6 fxe6 14.♗e5 ♗d5 15.♗e4 ♗e8 16.♗xd7 ♗xd7 17.c4±) 11...♗c8 12.♞d2 f6 13.♞ad1 ♗e6 (13...fxg5 14.♞xd7 g4 15.♗e1 ♗d6 16.♞f7 ♗h6 17.♞xg7 ♗xe5 18.♞e7 ♗xc3 19.bxc3 ♖f5 20.♞f7 ♗d6 21.♞g7 h5 22.f3±) 14.exf6 gxf6 15.♞e1! (It is a general law of strategy that the best way to utilize the advantage in development is to engage the opponent's pieces in direct clashes. White exploits some weaknesses of the enemy that are not so noticeable yet.) 15...♗c4 (15...fxg5 16.♞xe6 g4 17.♗e5 h5 18.♗g6 ♞d8 19.♗xe7+ ♗xe7 20.♞xd8+ ♗xd8 21.♞h6+-) 16.♗d4 fxg5 17.♗xf5 ♗b4 18.a3 ♗xc3 19.♗e7+ ♗b8 20.bxc3 a5 21.♞e4 ♗f7 (21...b5 22.♗xc6+ ♗b7 23.♗e5 ♞he8 24.f3±) 22.h4 gxh4 23.♞xh4 c5 24.♞h6 b6 25.f4 ♗b7 26.g4 ♗c4 27.f5 ♞ae8 28.f6 ♞hf8 29.g5 ♗g8 30.♗h2 ♞f7 31.♞d7 b5 32.♗g3+-



11.♗g5! ♗xg5

11...h6 12.♗xe7 ♗xe7 (12...♗xe7?? 13.g4+-) 13.♗d4 ♗g6 14.g3 ♗e7 15.f4 ♗g4 16.♞d3 ♞hd8 17.♗e4±. This powerful centralization deprives the opponent of any counterplay.

12.♗xg5 ♗e7

12...h6!? This move was recommended by GM R.Ponomarev 13.♗ge4! This is better than the retreat to f3, like in the game Korneev – Marselin (see later), because White was not threatening g2-g4 anyway – the e7-square is free. 13...♗e7 14.f4 ♗e3 15.♞d2 ♗c4 (15...♗e6 16.♞e1 ♗c4 17.♞f2 ♗xb2 18.f5 ♗d5 19.f6+ gxf6 20.exf6+ ♗d8 21.♗xd5 cxd5 22.♞d2 c6 23.♗d6 ♗d7 24.♗xf7 ♞he8 25.♗e5+ ♗c7 26.♞de2 ♗a4 27.♗g6+-) 16.♞d4 ♗e3 17.♞c1 ♗f5 18.♗f2 ♗g4+ 19.♗g3 ♞ad8 20.♞xd8 ♞xd8 21.♞e1 h5 22.h3 ♗h6 23.♗f3± White intends to exchange the rooks and enter a knight endgame with good chances for a win. We are going to study extensively endgames of this type later in this chapter.

13.♞d3 h6 14.♗f3!

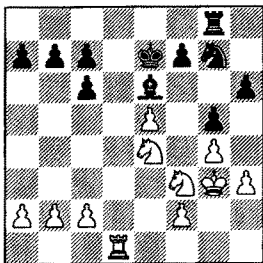
This is a new move of GM O. Korneev, which promises White excellent chances to obtain the advantage. The white knight is in front the f-pawn indeed, but it is restricting the mobility of Black's knight and creates the threat 15.g4.

14...g5 15.h3 ♞d8

After 15...♗e6 16.g4 ♗g7 (16...♗h4? 17.♗xh4 gxh4 18.f4 ♞ad8 19.♞ad1 ♞xd3 20.♞xd3

h5 21.f5 ♖c8 22.♗e4 hxg4 23. hxg4+-) 17.♖g2 ♖ad8 18.♖ad1± the type of fight will be more or less like that in the game.

16.♖xd8 ♖xd8 17.♖d1+ ♖e7 18.g4 ♗g7 19.♖g2 ♖d7 20.♖g3 ♖g8 21.♗e4 ♖e6

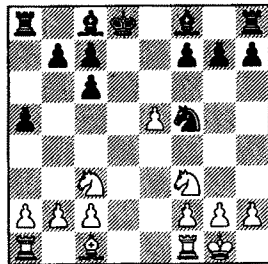


22.♗f6±

Most of the times in this line if White's knight occupies this square Black is in big trouble. 22...♖h8 (Black loses material immediately if he tries to exchange rooks with 22...♖d8? 23. ♖xd8 ♖xd8 24.♗g8+-) 23.h4! (White failed to find that strong move in the game! That proves time and again that the White player needs superb concentration and intensity to be successful in the Berlin endgame. Korneev managed to win later only because of a mistake by his adversary. 23.b3?! ♗e8 24.♗xe8 ♖xe8 25.♗d4 ♖c8 26.♗f5 f6 27.exf6 ♖xf5 28.gxf5 ♖f7 29. ♖d7+ ♖xf6 30.♖xc7 ♖b8 31. ♖g4+-; 27...♖f7 28.♖d3 ♖xf6 29. f4 gxf4+ 30.♖xf4 a5? 31.a4?! - 31. ♗xh6 ♖g6 32.♗f5± - 31...♖e6? 32.h4± Korneev - Marcelin, Istanbul 2003; 31...♖xf5 32.gxf5

♖g8±. The rook endgame was only a draw after 30...♖xf5! 31.gxf5 ♖g8 32.♖e3 ♖g2 33. ♖e6+ ♖g7 34.♖e7 ♖f6 35.♖h7 ♖f2+ 36. ♖e4=) 23...gxh4+ 24. ♖xh4 c5 (This deprives the knight from the d4-square. 24... ♗e8 25.♗xe8 ♖xe8 26.♗d4 ♖d8? Enables White to reach a winning king and pawn endgame: 27.♗f5+ ♖xf5 28.♖xd8 ♖xd8 29. gxf5+-) 25.♗e1 ♗e8 26.♗d5+ ♖xd5 27.♖xd5 b6 28.♗g2 ♗g7 29.f4 h5 30.f5 hxg4+ 31.♖xg4 ♖e8 (31...f6 32.e6+-) 32.♗e3 ♖h1 33.♖d1 ♖xd1 (33...♖h2 34.♗d5 ♖xc2 35.♗xc7+ ♖f8 36.♖d8+ ♖e7 37.♖a8 ♖d7 38.♖xa7 ♖c6 39.f6 ♗e6 40.♗xe6 fxe6 41.♖a3+-) 34.♗xd1+-, and White should win the knight endgame quickly.

b) 9...a5



10.h3!

If Black plays a7-a5 early, White should avoid in his turn the early a2-a4, because Black's dark squared bishop will gain permanent access to the wonderful b4 square. Presently the theory considers as best another method of neutralization of

Black's activity on the queenside.

10...a4

About 10...♖e8 - see 9...♖e8.

The second move in a row with a rook pawn - 10...h5?! is too risky. Black is losing too much time unnecessarily and White can organize a strong attack easily: 11.♖g5+ ♖e8 12. ♖ad1 ♖e6 13.♖d2 ♖b4 14.♖fd1 ♗e7 15.♗d4 ♗d5 16.a3 ♖xc3 17.bxc3 ♗xc3 18.♗xe6 fxe6 19. ♖d8+ ♖f7 20.♖8d7+ ♖g6 21.♖1d3 ♗d5 22.♖g3 b5 23.♖f6+ ♖f5 24.♖xg7 ♖hd8 25.♖f7+ ♖e4 26. ♖d3 1-0 J.Gomez - Flores, Athens 2001. This short game is in fact very instructive.

10...h6 is quite possible and White should better meet it with 11.a3! This move is rather useful as a rule in many lines of the Berlin endgame. 11...♖e6 12. ♖d1+ ♖c8 13.g4 ♗e7 14.♗d4 ♖d7 15.♖f4! (The game Lutz - Aleksandrov, Saint Vincent 2000 was thematic for the sharp line 15.e6 ♖xe6 16.♗xe6 fxe6 17.♖f4 and White had a decent compensation for the pawn, but not more than that. The game ended in a draw.) 15...h5 16.f3 hxg4 17.hxg4 ♗d5 (17...♗g6 18.♖g3±) 18.♗xd5 cxd5 19.♖g2±. White is threatening to occupy the open h-file with 20.♖h1 and Black can only delay that, but not prevent it altogether. White's rook will penetrate the enemy camp in a few moves, reach the h7-square and create powerful threats.

11.a3

7.de ♗f5 8.♖d8 ♖d8 9.♗c3

White should not let that pawn to a3. It will be annoying White there and might even become dangerous later in the endgame. On the contrary, it might be a target for attack at some moment on a4.

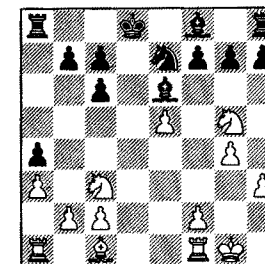
11...♖e6 12.g4!

Black's knight is pushed away to a passive position. White's weaknesses on the kingside are immaterial.

12...♗e7

The other retreat of the knight puts Black on the verge of disaster immediately 12...♗h6?! 13. ♗d4 ♖d7 14.♖e3 c5 15.♗de2 ♗g8 16.♖ad1 ♖c8 17.♖d2 ♖e7 18. ♖fd1 ♖e6 19.♖xc5+-.

13.♗g5

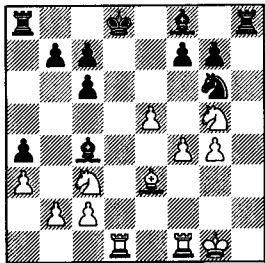


13...♖c4

13...♗d5 14.♗ce4! White doesn't need to exchange on e6 yet. He preserves the chance to repel that bishop later with f2-f4-f5. 14...h5 (14...h6 15.♗xe6+ fxe6 16.f4±) 15.f4 ♖e8 16.f5 ♖c8 17.♖g2 ♖e7 18.♖d2 f6 19.♗f3±.

If Black is not happy to only defend and he wants to find some active counterplay, he can try 13...h5 14.♖e3 hxg4 15.hxg4 ♗g6

(The counter-attack 15...♞h4 is doomed to fail after 16.f3 ♞a5 17.♙f2 ♞h6 18.♞fe1 ♞g6 19.♙g3 ♜c8 20.♜g2 ♙e7 21.♞e6 fxe6 22.f4±) 16.f4! White should not be too cautious, because that will only give his opponent some additional chances. It seems dangerous at first sight to expose the king like that, but the concrete calculations show that danger looms only for Black! Should Black attack the rook and not the pawn, there follow some really beautiful lines: 16...♙c4 (16...♞h4 17.f5 ♞xg4+ 18.♜h2+-) 17.♞ad1+!



17...♜c8 (Black will have plenty of problems to solve after the king retreats in the other direction too: 17...♜e8 18.♞f3. The f7 square is well protected, so White need not sacrifice anything. 18...♙e7 19.♞ge4 b5 20.♞f2±; 19...♙e6 20.♞g3 ♙d7 21.♞f2 ♙h4 22.♞g2 ♙xf2+ 23.♜xf2 ♞h4 24.e6! This pawn sacrifice is only temporary and Black has insurmountable difficulties now. 24...♙xe6? 25.f5+-; 24...fxe6 25.♜g3 ♙c8 26.♞gd2 ♜f7 27.♞e4 ♞h8 28.♞g5+ ♜f6 29.♙d4+ e5 30.

♞e4+ ♜f7 31.fxe5 b6 32.e6+ ♙xe6 33.♞g5+ ♜e7 34.♞e1+-; 30...♜e7 31.♙c5+ ♜f7 32.♞g5+ ♜f6. White finishes off his attack with a crushing exchange sacrifice. 33.♞d6+!! cxd6 34.♞xd6+ ♜e7 35.♞xg6+ ♜e8 36.♞xg7 exf4 37.♜xf4 ♞a5 38.♞e7+ ♜f8 39.♙b4 c5 40.♞f7+-) 18.♞d4. Black can win the exchange (in numerous ways at that), he can shun the sacrifice too, but White nevertheless keeps a powerful initiative throughout and considerable winning chances. 18...b5 (It is illogical to play 18...♙c5?! 19.♞xc4 ♙xe3+ 20.♜g2 ♞h4 21.♜g3 f6 22.♞e6 ♜d7 23.exf6+-; 18...♙xf1 19.♞xf7 ♙c5 20.♞xh8 ♙xd4 21.♙xd4 ♞xh8 22.♜xf1 ♞g6 23.♞e2 c5 24.♙xc5 ♜d7 25.♙e3±) 19.♞xc4 bxc4 20.♞xf7 ♞h3 21.♙d2 ♞g3+ 22.♜h2 ♞xg4 23.f5. Black has won the exchange, but he has a long and hard way to equality in this amazing position. 23...♞h8 (23...♞e7 24.♜h3 ♞d4 25.♙e3 ♞d7 26.e6±) 24.♞g5 ♞d4 25.♙f4 ♞d7 26.♜g3 ♙e7 27.♞e6 ♞a5 28.♜f3 ♞f7 29.♜e4 ♞d8 30.♞xg7 ♙xa3 31.bxa3 ♞xg7 32.e6±.

14.♞e1 ♜e8

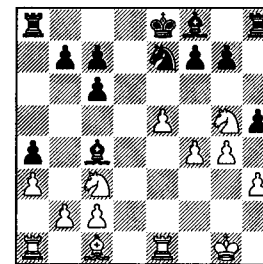
Or 14...h6 15.♞ge4 ♞d5 16.f4 h5 17.f5 hxg4 18.hxg4 ♙e7 19.♜g2±.

15.f4 h5

After 15...h6 16.♞f3 ♞d5 17.♞e4 h5 18.g5 ♞d8 19.f5 the advance of the white pawns spells a lot of trouble for Black. 19...♞e7 (19...♜d7 20.e6+ ♜c8

21.♞e5+-; 19...g6 20.fxg6 fxg6 21.♞f6+ ♜e7 22.e6 ♙g7 23.♞e5+-) 20.♞f6+ gxh6 21.exf6 ♙d5 22.fxe7 ♙xe7 23.f6 ♙xf3 24.♞xe7+ ♜f8 25.♙f4+-.

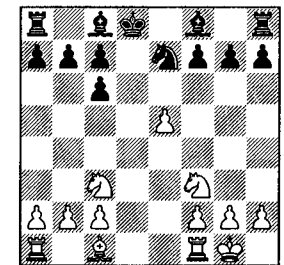
15...f6 16.exf6 gxh6 17.♞e6 ♙xe6 18.♞xe6 ♜f7 19.f5 h5 20.♞e4 ♙g7 21.♜g2 hxg4 22.hxg4 ♞h4 23.♜g3 ♞ah8 (23...♞h1 24.♞f2±) 24.♞f2. White managed to consolidate his achievements on the kingside and Black is helpless to do anything about it. 24...♙f8 (24...♞d5 25.c4 ♞b6 26.♙f4 ♞xc4 27.♙xc7±) 25.c4 ♞c8 26.♙f4 ♙c5 27.♞e4 ♙d4 28.♞d1 c5 29.♞xd4! White is once again sacrificing the exchange and Black has no chances to hold the position anymore. 29...cxd4 30.♞xf6+ ♜e7 31.♞g6 ♞h3+ 32.♜g2 ♞b3 33.♞g7+ ♜f8 34.♞xc7 ♞xb2+ 35.♞f2 ♞a7 36.♙d6+ ♜e8 37.f6+-.



That position was reached in the game Lautier – Aronian, Germany 2003, now White could have increased his edge with the energetic move 16.f5!±, for example: 16...hxg4 17.hxg4 ♞d5 (The counter-attacking 17...♞h4 18.♞e4 ♙d5 19.♞xd5 cxd5 20.♞f4

♞c6 21.♞f3 ♙c5+ 22.♜g2 backfires. Black has to retreat and then White starts attacking with a vengeance: 22...♞h8 23.♙d2 ♜d7 24.♞e1 ♞h6 25.e6+ fxe6 26.g5 ♞hh8 27.fxe6+ ♜c8 28.♞f7±. White obtains an all-powerful pawn chain after 17...g6 18.f6 ♞d5 19.♞ce4 ♞h4 20.♜g2 ♞b6 21.♜g3 ♞h8 22.♙f4±, and the permanent threat of e5-e6 is practically paralyzing Black. 18.♞ce4 ♞h4 (18...♙e7 19.♜g2±) 19.♜g2! ♙e7 (It turns out that Black loses the exchange without any compensation after 19...♞xg4+ 20.♜h3 ♞f4 21.♙xf4 ♞xf4+ 22.♜h2± So, since it is unfavourable for Black to take that pawn his plans are doomed to fail and he is left to play a really difficult position without any counterplay whatsoever.) 20.♜g3 ♞h8 21.f6 ♙f8 22.♙d2 ♞d8 23.♞h1 ♞xh1 24.♞xh1 gxh6 25.exf6 ♙d6+ 26.♜f2 ♞b6 27.♞xd6+ ♞xd6 28.♞e4 ♞d8 29.♞h8+ ♜d7 30.♞c5+ ♜c8 31.♞xd8+ ♜xd8 32.♞xb7+ ♜c8 33.♞c5±.

c) 9...♞e7



This move became immensely

popular lately due to the efforts of some eminent players.

10.♗d4!?

This is the principled and probably the best move. White's knight is centralized and the f-pawn is free to go forward just in case.

10...♗g6

10...c5 11.♗f3! (Black repelled the knight from d4, but he weakened a whole complex of squares, particularly b5 and d5. The seemingly strange retreat of the knight, back to its previous square is in fact the best available.) 11...a6 (The idea of this move is simple – the b5-square is protected and White's knight will never come there. 11...h6? is losing immediately after 12.♗d1+ ♗e8 13.♗b5+; 12...♗d7 13.e6 fxe6 14.♗e5+; 11...♗e6 12.♗d1+ ♗c8 13.♗g5 h6 14.♗xe6 fxe6 15.♗e4+; 11...♗f5 12.♗g5 ♗e8 13.♗b5 ♗d5 14.c4 ♗d3 15.cxd5 ♗xb5 16.♗d1±) 12.♗d1+ ♗e8 (12...♗d7?? 13.e6 fxe6 14.♗e5+–) 13.♗f4! ♗g4 14.♗d3 ♗g6 15.♗g3 ♗e7 (15...♗d8 16.♗xd8+ ♗xd8 17.♗g5 ♗e8 18.♗d5 c6 19.♗e3 ♗c8 20.f4 h5 21.h4±) 16.♗e1 ♗d8 17.♗d5 c6 18.♗c7+! This piece is an unwelcome guest in Black's camp. It is impossible to trap it and meanwhile the knight is a real nuisance. 18...♗f8 19.♗b3! ♗c8 (19...b5 20.♗a3 ♗d7 21.e6 fxe6 22.h3! b4 23.♗ae3!±) 20.c4 b5 21.a4 b4 (21...bxc4 22.♗b6) 22.♗be3 h5 23.h3 h4 24.♗h2 ♗h5 25.e6 ♗f5 26.exf7

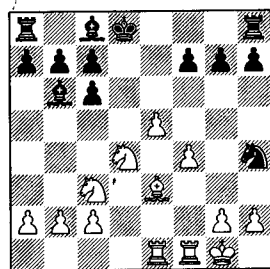
♗xf7 27.♗e6 ♗d7 28.♗f4 ♗xf4 29.♗xf4 ♗f6 30.♗e5 ♗d8 31.b3±.

11.f4 ♗c5 12.♗e3 ♗b6!

12...♗xd4 13.♗xd4 ♗f5 14.♗d1! ♗xc2 15.♗e3 ♗d3 16.♗f2±; 12...♗h4? is just bad due to 13.♗xc6+–.

13.♗ae1! ♗h4

Some analysts recommended 13...♗e7, but it is not solving Black's problems after 14.e6 fxe6? 15.♗xe6+ ♗xe6 16.♗xb6 axb6 (16...♗c4 17.♗xc7+ ♗d7 18.♗f2±) 17.♗xe6 ♗d5 18.♗d1 ♗c8 19.♗xd5 cxd5 20.a3±; 14...c5! 15.♗b3 ♗xe6 16.♗xc5! ♗xb3 17.♗xb6 axb6 18.axb3. This position seems to be very simple, while in fact Black's defence is quite difficult indeed. 18...♗f5 19.♗e5 ♗d6 20.♗d1 ♗e8 21.♗e4 ♗d7 22.♗xd6 cxd6 23.♗ed5 ♗e6 24.f5 ♗f6 25.g4 h6 26.c4 ♗a2 27.♗1d2 g6 28.h4±.



14.e6!±

Black has plenty of problems to solve after that move. 14...fxe6? (GM A.Shirov considers this to be a serious mistake. The other moves are not any better either, for example: 14...♗xd4 15.♗xd4 ♗f5 16.e7+ ♗e8 17.

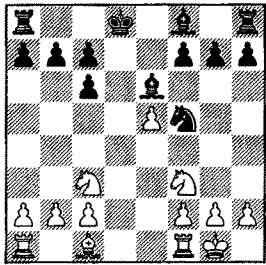
♗e5±; 16...♗d7 17.♗c5 ♗e8 18.♗e5 ♗d6 19.♗fe1± or 14...c5 15.♗b3! ♗xe6 16.♗xc5 ♗xc5 17.♗xc5. Black will hardly equalize: 17...♗d7 18.♗f2! ♗g6 19.f5 ♗xf5 20.♗d4 ♗e6 21.♗xg7 ♗hg8 22.♗f6±; 18...♗f5 19.♗d1+ ♗d6 20.♗c5 ♗c6 21.♗xd6 cxd6 22.f5±) 15.♗xe6+! White obtains a clear edge in the endgame. 15...♗xe6 16.♗xb6 axb6 (16...cxb6 17.♗xe6±; 16...♗c4 17.♗f2 ♗g6 18.♗d1+ ♗c8 19.♗fe1±; 16...♗h3 17.♗d4! ♗xg2 18.♗xg7 ♗xf1 19.♗xh8+–; 17...♗xg2 18.♗d1! ♗c8 19.♗d3 ♗f5 20.♗xg2±) 17.♗xe6

♗d7 18.♗fe1 ♗ae8 19.♗xe8 ♗xe8 20.♗xe8 ♗xe8 21.♗f2 ♗f5 22.♗e4 c5 (The king and pawn endgame, after the trade of knights, is hopeless for Black 22...♗d6 23.♗xd6+ cxd6 24.c4+–) 23.g4 ♗h6?! (23...♗e7 24.♗f3±) 24.♗f3 ♗f7 25.h4 ♗e7? (25...h6 26.h5±) 26.♗g5+– ♗d6 (26...♗xg5+ 27.hxg5) 27.♗xh7 ♗c4 28.f5 ♗xb2 29.g5 ♗c4 30.h5 b5 31.♗f4 ♗a3 (31...♗d6 32.h6 gxh6 33.g6 ♗e8 34.♗e5+–) 32.h6 gxh6 33.g6 ♗c4 34.f6+ ♗e6 35.f7 ♗e5 36.f8N+! 1-0 Shirov – Almasi, Tilburg 1996

Chapter 27

1.e4 e5 2.♖f3 ♗c6 3.♙b5 ♘f6 4.0-0 ♗xe4 5.d4 ♗d6 6.♙xc6 dxc6 7.dxe5 ♗f5 8.♙xd8+ ♘xd8 9.♗c3 ♕e6

Berlin Endgame



10.♞d1+

It is not possible to state definitely what rook White should put to d1 (the a1 or the f1 rook). Many times White doesn't even need a rook on d1 at all. White needs to check with the rook immediately now, because his plans differ, depending on the retreat of the black king.

Black has two squares for the king a) 10...♗e8 and b) 10...♗c8.

a) 10...♗e8

We have reached now a position that was popular long ago and it was usually reached after the following order of moves 9.♞d1+ ♗e8 10.♗c3 ♕e6.

11.♗g5 ♕c4

The retreat 11...♕c8?! in order to preserve the bishop pair seems paradoxical. It is losing

too much time and is quite dubious. 12.♗e2! ♕e7 13.♗e4 a5 (13... ♕e6 14.♗f4±) 14.a4 h5 (14...h6 15.b3 b6 16.♙b2 ♙b7 17.♗f4±) 15.♙g5 ♗h6 16.♞d2 h4 17.♗d4 ♗f5 18.♞e1 ♗xd4 19.♞xd4 c5 20.♞d2 ♙xg5 21.♗xg5 ♞h5 22.f4 ♙f5 23.♞d5 b6 24.e6+- Brinck-Claussen – Holst, Denmark 1993.

11...♕e7 fails to equalize. 12.♗xe6 fxe6 13.♗e4 (Black is very seldom defending this position nowadays. There are no winning chances at all and drawing requires a lot of effort too.) 13...h6 (13...♞d8 14.♞xd8+ ♘xd8 15.♙g5! The exchange of bishops facilitates White's task to reach a favourable knight endgame. 15...♙xg5 16.♗xg5 ♗e7 17.♞d1, A.Frolov – Sinkovics, Donau 1992, 17...h6 18.♗f3! ♞d8 19.♞xd8 ♘xd8 20.♗f1 c5 21.♗e2±. This knight endgame provides White with considerable winning chances. He has a pawn majority on the kingside and active pieces. Black can not create a passed pawn on the queenside. Therefore this type of pawn structure is very crucial for all

kinds of endgames, and particularly about king and pawn endgames. White is striving for positions like that, while Black should better avoid them like plague.) 14.g4! (This active move should be well prepared as a rule. Its evaluation usually hinges on the effects of Black's counterstrikes h6-h5 or h7-h5. If White manages to support his pawn advance with h2-h3, without any concessions to Black, his advantage increases. Should that fail, Black equalizes easily and might even take the initiative. Presently the pawn advance g2-g4 looks completely safe for White.) 14...♗h4 15.f4 ♞f8 (The most testing line here is 15...h5. 16.h3, but Black fails to disrupt White's pawn chain, for example: 16...♗g6 17.♙e3 hxg4 18.hxg4 ♞h4 19.♗f2±; 17...♞f8 18.♞f1 hxg4 19.hxg4 ♞d8 20.♗g2±; 18... ♞h3 19.♞d3 ♞d8 20.♞xd8+ ♘xd8 21.♞d1+ ♗e8 22.♞d3 ♞f3 23.♙d2 ♞xd3 24.cxd3±) 16.♙e3 ♗g6 17.♞f1 ♞d8 18.♗g3 ♞d5 19.♗h5 ♞f7 20.♗g2 ♙f8 21.♞ad1 ♞fd7 22.♞xd5! (This is the most concrete approach to this position. Black can not solve his problems irrelevant of what he captures on d5 with!) 22...♞xd5 (This is the most stubborn defence. Black has obtained a beautiful pawn chain, but just for a split second. White's next move is immediately disruptive and decisive: 23.f5! exf5 24.e6!+-; 23...

♗xe5 24.fxe6 ♞e7 25.♙c5+-; 24...♞d6 25.♙c5+-; 24...♞d8 25.♙d4 ♗xg4 26.♞f7!+-) 23.♗f3 ♞a5 24.a3 c5 25.c4+-. So evaluates the position GM P.Zarnicki. White hasn't created any concrete strong threats yet, but still his evaluation is quite correct. White has practically an extra pawn and his pieces are totally dominant. This is more than enough to win. We are going to follow the game to the end to have a look at the technical stage of the game. 25...♗e7 26.♗e4 ♞a4 27.♞c1 ♗c8 (27...b5 28.♙xc5 ♞xc4+ 29.♞xc4 bxc4 30.♗d4+-) 28.f5 b5 29.b3 ♞xa3 30.cxb5 ♞xb3 31.♙xc5 exf5+ 32.gxf5 ♞xb5 33.♙xf8 ♗xf8 34.♞xc7 ♞b4+ (34...♗e7 35.♗xg7!) 35.♗f3 ♞b3+ 36.♗e2 ♗e7 37.♗xg7 ♞b4 38.e6 ♗d5 39.♞xa7 ♞b2+ 40.♗d3 ♞xh2 41.♗d4 ♗e7 42.f6 ♗c6+ 43.♗d5 1-0 Zarnicki – Tempone, Pena City 1996.

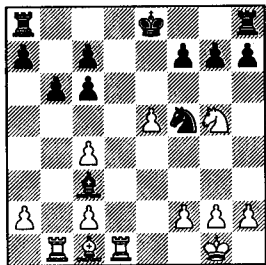
11...h6 This move can be commented in the same fashion as 11...♕e7. Black will have to conduct a long and painful defence in an inferior endgame. We must admit, though, the presence of the bishops is going to facilitate his defence a bit. 12.♗xe6 fxe6 13.♗e4 (13...♕e7 14.g4 ♗h4 15.f4 h5 16.h3 hxg4 17.hxg4 ♗g6 18.♗g2±; 15...g5 16.♞f1 ♗g6 17.fxg5 hxg5 18.♗f6+-; 16...gxf4 17.♙xf4 ♗g6 18.♙g3±) 13...c5 14.♗f1 ♕e7 15.c3 ♞f8 16.g3 b6 17.♗e2 ♞d8 18.♞xd8+ ♘xd8 19.f4 ♗d7 20.♙e3 ♗c6 21.♞d1 a5,

Schoeneberg –Frobenius, Bamberg 1999, and Black was clearly worse. See how White had to activate his kingside. 22.♔f2! g5 (22...g6 23.g4 ♘h4 24.♘f6 g5 25.fxg5 hxg5 26.♙xh4 gxh4 27.g5+; 22...h5 23.h3 ♘h6 24.♙e3 c4 25.♘d2 ♖b5 26.♘f3 ♘f5 27.♙f2±) 23.g4 ♘h4 (23...♘g7 24.fxg5 hxg5 25.♙e3 ♖h8 26.♖h1 ♖d5 27.♘xg5 ♙xg5 28.♙xg5 ♖xe5 29.h4+–) 24.♙xh4 gxh4 (24...♖xf4? 25.♖e3+–) 25.♖e3±.

12.b3! ♙b4

Black's hopes were based on this possibility for many years, but then GM Dvoirys proved that White is better despite the disruption of his pawn structure.

13.bxc4! ♙xc3 14.♖b1 b6

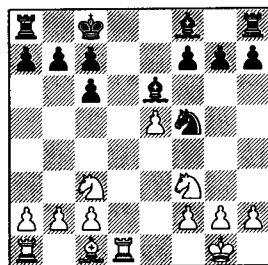


15.g4!

This active move now is really dangerous! Both Black's minor pieces are unstable and White's initiative increases while he pushes away the enemy pieces to squares even worse than before. 15...♘h4 16.f4 h6 17.♘e4 ♙a5 18.♖b3 h5 19.h3 hxg4 20.hxg4 ♘g6 21.♖g2 ♖d8 22.♖bd3 ♖xd3 23.cxd3± Dvoirys – Aleksandrov, Smolensk 1991. Black was forced

to repair the minute defects of White's pawn structure in order to simplify a little bit. White has a clear advantage.

b) 10...♖c8

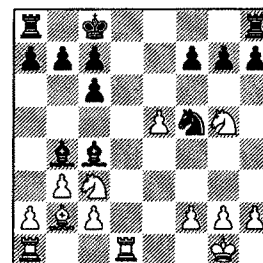


11.♘g5 ♙c4

Should Black allow the exchange on e6, the endgame will be clearly better for White; moreover the black king will not participate in the defence of the kingside against White's pawn onslaught.

11...♙c5?! is only helping White after 12.♘ce4 ♙b6 13.♘xe6 fxe6 14.♖f1. Black's defence is very difficult and his bishop is rather misplaced. 14...♖f8 15.a4 ♘e3+ (15...a5 16.♖a3 ♖b8 17.♖d7 ♖a7 18.♖ad3 ♖ae8 19.c4 ♖b8 20.c5+– Gdanski – Gretarsson, Gothenburg 1997; 15...a6 16.♖a3! White's rook is joining the action in a spectacular fashion. White is winning several tempi like that. 16...♖d8 17.♖ad3±) 16.♙xe3 ♙xe3 17.♖a3 ♙h6 (17...♙f4 18.♖f3 ♖f5 19.g4 ♖f8 20.♘g5+–) 18.g4 g6 19.♖ad3 b6 20.g5 ♙g7 21.♘f6±.

12.b3 ♙b4 13.♙b2

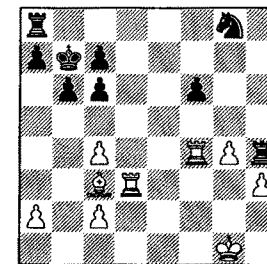


13...♙xc3

One of the basic defensive ideas for Black in the Berlin defence endgame is the possibility of playing with bishops of opposite colour – Black's light-squared bishop against White's dark-squared one. Sometimes in positions like that Black has wonderful additional chances, because White's pawns on the queenside are quite vulnerable to an attack by the black bishop. Presently it is too early to talk about equality, because there are knights on the board.

We are still not quite well acquainted with the variety of excellent defensive resources at Black's disposal in the Berlin endgame. Look at this line in which Black is counter-striking repeatedly: 13...h6 14.bxc4 ♙xc3 (14...hxg5 15.♘e4 ♙e7 16.h3. This is an important moment – White should not allow the move g5-g4 that is blocking the kingside! 16...♖h4 17.g4! ♘h6 18.♖g2 a5 19.♖d3 b5 20.♖ad1 bxc4 21.♖d7 ♙d6 22.e6 fxe6 23.♖xg7+–; 21...♘g8 22.♙c1 f6 23.f4 gxh4 24.exf6 gxh4 25.♙xf4 ♖a7 26.♘g3 ♖h7 27.♘f5 a4 28.h4 ♖f7 29.

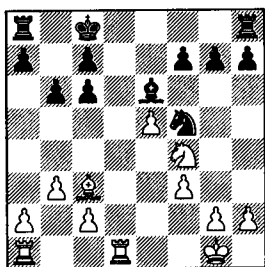
♖f3+–) 15.♙xc3!! (White should not capture the f7-pawn, because Black will be more than OK after that!) 15...hxg5 16.h3! (This is a multi-purpose move. White stops g5-g4, blocking the kingside, ensures the stability of ♘f5 and stops the potential threat ♖h8-h4 aiming to destroy White's queenside.) 16...♖h4 17.g4 ♘e7 (The seemingly attractive 17...♖xh3? 18.gxf5 ♖xc3 is losing a rook: 19.e6 fxe6 20.fxe6 ♖h3 21.♖d7 b5 22.♖ad1 ♖b7 23.♖d8 ♖h8 24.e7 ♖e8 25.♖xa8+–) 18.♙d2 f6 19.exf6 gxh4 20.♙c3! ♘g8 (Black is now forced to retreat with the knight to its initial square. The other defensive idea is refuted exquisitely: 20...♖h6 21.♖e1! This move is far from evident, but White can not exploit the advantages of his position otherwise! One of the rooks enables the other, presently idle rook on a1 to join the action. The attractive doubling of the rooks along the d-file is less effective. 21...♖d7 22.♖ad1+ ♖e8 23.♖e6 ♖f7 24.♖e3 ♖e8 25.♖d7+–) 21.♖d3 b6 22.f4 gxh4 23.♖f1 ♖b7 24.♖xf4±.



After the march of the white king to g3 Black will have problems stopping White's h-pawn. Black's knight is rather passive as well.

14.♙xc3 ♕d5 15.♗h3 h5

The renowned expert in the Berlin Endgame GM Aleksej Aleksandrov tried another plan in a game played later: 15...♕e6 16.♗f4 b6, Kruppa – Aleksandrov, Minsk 1997 and won the game. White needs to activate his pawn majority on the kingside immediately and therefore we suggest here the move 17.f3!



Meanwhile the white king will be able to take an active part in the fight.

1) 17...a5 18.a4! Otherwise Black will play 18...a4 solving all his problems. 18...♗b7 19.♖f2 ♞hd8 20.g4 ♗e7 (20...♗h4? is losing by force after 21.♖g3 ♗g6 22.♗h5 ♞g8 23.f4 ♗e7 24.f5 ♕c8 25.♗f4 g5 26.♗h5 ♗d5 27.♕b2 ♗e3 28.♞d2+ and Black is utterly hopeless) 21.h4 ♗d5 22.♗xe6 White could have avoided that exchange of the knights, because he was risking to dissipate all his advantage. 22...fxe6 23.♕d2 ♞f8 24.♖g3 c5 25.h5 ♖c6 26.h6 g6 27.

♕g5 ♞f7 28.c4 ♗b4 (28...♗c3 29.♞d2 ♞af8 30.♕f6+) 29.♞d2 ♞d7 30.♞ad1 ♞xd2 31.♞xd2 ♞f8 32.♕f6 ♞f7 33.♞d8 ♗c2 Black's counterplay is not enough to save the game, because White succeeds just in time. 34.♞g8 ♗d4 35.♞g7 ♞d7 36.♕e7 ♗xb3 37.♞xh7+;

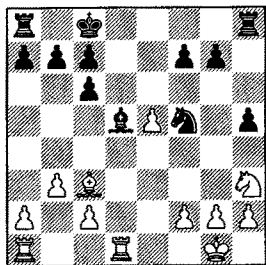
2) 17...♗b7 18.♖f2 ♞ad8 19.g4 ♗e7 20.♕e1 (White's bishop retreats in order to decrease the effectiveness of the exchange manoeuvre ♗d5) 20...♗d5 (20...♗g6 21.♗h5 ♗xe5 22.♗xg7. This change of the pawn structure is in favour of White, because it facilitates his access to Black's pawn weaknesses. 22...♞hg8 23.♗xe6 fxe6 24.♕c3 ♗g6 25.♞xd8 ♞xd8 26.♞e1 ♞d6 27.f4!+) 21.♗g2! h5 (This is a sacrifice, but Black must give up a pawn or a piece for a rather dubious compensation. Should Black try to avoid any material concessions, his position will remain extremely difficult anyway: 21...c5 22.c4 ♗b4 23.♕xb4 cxb4 24.♗f4±; 21...a5 22.c4 ♗b4 23.♕xb4 axb4 24.♗f4 ♕c8 25.♗h5±) 22.c4 hxg4 (22...♗e7 23.♞xd8 ♞xd8 24.gxh5±) 23.cxd5 ♕xd5 24.♗f4 gxh3 (24...♕xf3 25.♞xd8 ♞xd8 26.h4 ♞d4 27.♖g3) 25.♖g3±;

3) 17...♗e3 18.♞d3 ♗d5 (The exchange operation is unsatisfactory for Black 18...♗xc2? 19.♞c1. Black loses a piece now with 19...♗a3?? 20.♗xe6 fxe6 21.♕b2 ♗b5 22.a4+- and the knight is

trapped. 19...♕f5 20.♞xc2 g5 21.g4 ♕xd3 22.♗xd3; 20...♕xd3 21.♗xd3. Black exchanges often two pieces for a rook in this line, but here White's advantage is too great. White's pieces are coordinated perfectly, while Black's pieces are a sad sight. 21...♞d8 22.♗f4 ♞d1+ 23.♖f2 ♖b7 24.e6! White is trying to create as many weaknesses as possible in Black's camp before Black's second rook joins the fight. Both black rooks will have to defend then and that will considerably reduce their scope of action. 24...fxe6 – 24...f6 is even worse after 25.♗h5 ♞g8 26.♞e2 ♞dd8 27.e7 ♞de8 28.g4 h6 29.f4 ♖c8 30.f5 a5 31.♕xf6 gxf6 32.♗xf6+ – 25.♕xg7+) 19.♗xe6 fxe6 20.♕d2 ♖b7 21.♞d1 (White is going to occupy the open d-file and Black's knight will not remain on d5 for long, so White has a clear edge.) 21...a5! (Black's play along the a-file is often quite effective in the Berlin endgame and that frequently neutralizes White's impressive accomplishments in the centre and on the kingside. This is case here as well. Black will have excellent chances on the queenside if White plays imprecisely.) 22.c4! White forces now a sharp, but favourable rook endgame. 22...♗e7 (This cautious move requires pinpoint precision from White. The other possibility loses for Black – 22...♗b4 23.♕xb4 axb4 24.♞1d2 ♞a5 25.♞d7 ♞xe5 26.♞xg7 h5 27.h4+-;

25...♞ha8 26.♞xg7 ♞xa2 27.♞dd7+-; 25...g5 26.♞e7 ♞xe5 27.♞dd7 ♞c8 28.♞xh7 ♞e2 29.♞hg7 ♞xa2 30.♞xg5 ♞b2 31.♞d3 ♞a8 32.h4 ♞a3 33.h5 ♞axb3 34.♞xb3 ♞xb3 35.h6+-) 23.♞d7 (White should not calm down and let his opponent off the hook at any moment. That is an important principle in every opening and the Berlin endgame is no exception at all.) 23...♗f5 (23...♞he8 24.♕g5 ♗f5 25.g4 h6 26.♕d8! ♗e3 27.♞1d3 ♞c8 28.♕e7 ♗c2 29.♞d2 ♗b4 30.♕xb4 axb4 31.♞xg7+-) 24.♕g5 c5 (24...h6 25.♕d8 ♞c8 26.g4 ♗e3 27.♞1d3 ♗c2 28.♞d2 ♞f8 29.♖f2 c5 30.♕e7 ♞f7 31.♞xc2 ♞e8 32.♞cd2 ♞exe7 33.♞xe7 ♞xe7 34.a4 g5 35.♞d8 ♖c6 36.♖g3 ♞h7 37.h4 gxh4+ 38.♖xh4 ♞f7 39.♖g3 ♞h7 40.f4 h5 41.g5+-; The idea to exchange the rooks conceals a nice trap – 36...♞d7 37.♞xd7 ♖xd7 38.f4 ♖e7 39.fxg5! White should not push that pawn forward, since it will lead to a positional draw – the white king can not penetrate! 39...hxg5 40.h4 ♖f7 41.hxg5 ♖g7 42.g6 ♖xg6 43.♖h4+-) 25.♖f2 a4 26.b4! (White should sacrifice a pawn temporarily in order to prevent the penetration of the black rook along the a-file. White might lose all his edge if he allows that.) 26...cxb4 27.g4 h6 28.♕d2 ♖c6 29.♕xb4 ♗d6 30.♞e7 ♗xc4 31.♞xe6+ ♖b5 32.♞b1 c5 33.♕c3+ ♖a6 34.♞g6 White's pieces and pawns are much more impressive than their black

counterparts. 34...♖a7 35.e6 ♖e8 36.h4 ♖e7 37.f4 ♘d6 38.♗f3 ♘b5 39.♙e5 ♘d4+ 40.♙xd4 cxd4 41.♗e4 ♖ad7 42.♖d1 ♗b5 43.♖xd4 ♖xd4+ 44.♗xd4 ♗b4 45.♗d5 ♗a3 46.♗d6+.



16.♙b2!

In the game Dvoirys – Aleksandrov, Moscow 1996 White played 16.♘f4 ♙e6 17.♖d3 b6 18.♙d2 ♗b7 19.♘xe6 fxe6 20.♙g5 a5 21.g3. This game has been considered as a classical model game in the Berlin Endgame, but Black's defence left a lot to be desired. In fact after 21...a4!= Aleksandrov could have obtained an excellent counterplay.

16...a5 17.c4 ♙e6 18.a4!

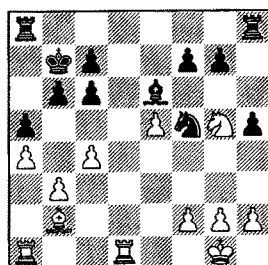
White neutralizes Black's counterplay on the queenside and has his hands free for action on the kingside.

18...b6

18...c5 19.♘f4 g5 20.♘d5. Notice that White established his knight on the dominant d5-outpost instead of exchanging it on e6. This is very advantageous for White, because it is quite unfavourable for Black to exchange

on d5. 20...♖d8 21.♖d2 b6 22.♖ad1 ♗b7 23.♘f6 ♖xd2 24.♖xd2 h4 25.f3 c6. Black is preparing b6-b5, because he has no other roads to counterplay left. 26.♗f2 b5 27.♘d7! This is a powerful blow against the feeble Black position. 27...bxc4 28.bxc4 ♙xc4 29.♙c3 ♗c7 30.♘xc5 ♗b6 31.♘e4 c5 32.♖b2+ ♗c6 33.♘xg5±.

19.♘g5 ♗b7



20.f3!±

There are plenty of fine points in the Berlin endgame and one of them is that White should not be always in a hurry to exchange on e6. The knight has literally stuck the bishop on its place, because it must defend the f7-pawn. So the knight is presently dominating the bishop and therefore it is the stronger piece for a while. White does not need to exchange his strong piece without concrete achievements. 20...♘e3 (We have to see what might happen after the numerous exchanges: 20...♖hd8 21.♗f2 c5 22.g3 ♘d4 23.♘xe6 fxe6 24.♖d3 ♖d7 25.♖ad1 ♖ad8 26.♗e3 ♘f5+ 27.♗e4 ♖xd3 28.♖xd3 ♖xd3 29.♗xd3±. White has two possibili-

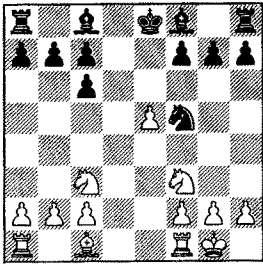
ties to press his advantage home – to create a passed pawn on the kingside, or go forward with his king to the g5-square. There is however one additional chance and that is to penetrate with his bishop on d8 and capture the black pawns in case the black pieces come to the rescue of the kingside.) 21.♖d3 ♘c2 22.♖ad1 ♙f5 23.♖3d2 ♖hf8 24.♗f2 ♘b4 25.♘e4! ♙xe4 26.fxe4. The weak-

ness of the doubled e-pawns is not so important, but White's pieces are so much more active than Black's. 26...♖ae8 27.♗e3 ♖e7 28.♖f1 ♗c8 29.♖f5 g6 30.♖f6 ♖d8 31.♖xd8+ ♗xd8 32.e6! ♖xe6 33.♖xf7 ♘c2 34.♗f4 ♘e1 35.♗g5! ♖xe4 36.♗xg6 ♘xg2 37.♙f6+ The white pieces are in perfect harmony now. 37...♗e8 38. ♖xc7 ♖e6 39.♗f5 ♖e3 40.♙g5 ♖e1 (40... ♖xb7?! 41.♗e6+–) 41.♖xc6+–.

Chapter 28

1.e4 e5 2.♖f3 ♗c6 3.♙b5 ♖f6 4.
0-0 ♗xe4 5.d4 ♗d6 6.♙xc6 dxc6
7. dxe5 ♖f5 8.♗xd8+ ♘xd8 9.♝c3
♚e8

Berlin Endgame



This is an old and quite reliable line. Nowadays the voluntary retreat of the king to its initial square seems a bit slow. It is important to have in mind in this position that Black has lost his right to castle irrevocably! It might seem to you a bit ridiculous to be reminded of that, but you may often forget it in the heat of the fight.

10.h3!

This is the best move, because White is preparing the pawn advance g2-g4. The move is useful even if White refrains from this plan, since it prevents ♙g4.

We are going to study thoroughly now the following moves for Black: **a) 10...♙e7; b) 10...h6; c) 10...a5 and d) 10...♗e7.**

Black has also tried some other less popular moves here:

10...♙c5 (This move looks quite natural and maybe it will be tested more often in the future. Presently we know of only two games with it and both of them have been played more than 30 years ago.) 11.♗e2!? ♙e6 12.♖f4 ♙c4 (12...♙d5 13.♗xd5 cxd5 14.♞d1 c6 15.b4 ♙b6 16.a4 a5 17.♞b1 ♗g3 18.bxa5 ♗e2+ 19.♖f1 ♗c3 20.♞xb6 ♗xd1 21.♙d2+; 12...♗d4 13.♗xd4 ♙xd4 14.c3 ♙xe5 15.♗xe6 fxe6 16.♞e1, Tatai – Kurajica, Malaga 1970) 13.♞e1 ♞d8 14.b3 ♙d5 15.♗xd5 cxd5 16.♙g5 ♗e7 17.♞ad1 ♙b4 18.♞e2 h6 19.♙c1. White has obtained a serious initiative which is rather typical for the not so modern systems of the Berlin endgame. Black's main problems are the lack of coordination of pieces and the vulnerable situation of the king;

10...h5 (This is not the best move for Black. He is stopping g2-g4 temporarily indeed, but creates considerable weaknesses in his position. You should better study these lines simultaneously with the variation 9...h5.) 11.♞d1 ♙e6 (11...♗e7 12.

♙g5±; 11...♙e7 12.♗e2 h4 13.♙g5 ♙e6 14.♖f4 ♞d8 15.♞xd8+ ♘xd8, Korneev – Gorbatow, Moscow 1995, 16.♗xe6+ fxe6 17.♞d1+ ♚e8 18.♙xe7±. This type of endgame is quite favourable for White. He will manage to exchange the rooks sooner or later and will be free to press home his overwhelming kingside advantage.) 12.♗g5 ♙e7 (Black would hardly be happy with 12...♙c4 13.♗ce4 ♙e7 14.b3 ♙d5 15.c4 ♙xe4 16.♗xe4 ♞d8 17.♞xd8+ ♘xd8 18.♙b2 c5 19.♞d1± Romero Holmes – Rodriguez Talavera, Linares 1991) 13.♗xe6 fxe6 14.♗e4 c5 (14...♗h6 15.♙xh6 ♞xh6 16.♞d3±) 15.c3 a5 16.♙g5 ♙xg5 17.♗xg5 ♚e7 18.♞d2 ♞ad8 19.♞ad1 ♞xd2 20.♞xd2 ♗h4 21.g3 ♗g6 22.h4! ♞b8 (White manages to trade off the pawns favourably after 22...♗xe5 23.♞e2± ♖f6?! 24.♞xe5+; 23...♗d3 24.♗xe6+–) 23.f4± Prasad – Prakash, Madras 1994;

10...b6 (This is an interesting idea and it is hardly weaker than the fashionable lines. Still White won the only game in which that move was played, creating a real exemplary game in harmony with the classical traditions of the Berlin Endgame.) 11.♞e1 ♙b4 (11...♙b7 12.♙f4 c5 13.♗b5 ♙xf3 14.gxf3 ♘d7 15.e6+ ♖c6 16.♗xc7 ♞c8 17.exf7 ♞xc7 18.♙xc7 ♖xc7 19.♞e8 ♗d6 20.♞ae1 ♗xf7 21.♞1e7+ ♙xe7 22.♞xe7+ ♖c6 23.♞xf7±) 12.♙d2 ♙e6 13.a3 ♙xc3 14.♙xc3 c5 15.♞ad1 a5

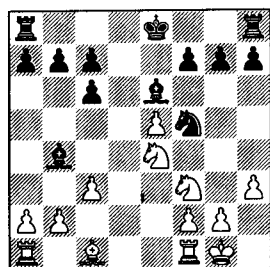
16.g4 ♗e7 17.♖h2 ♗c6 18.♗g5! h6 19.♗e4 h5 20. ♖g3 (White has completed the necessary preparation for a successful kingside pawn advance.) 20... ♞d8 21.f4 hxg4 22.hxg4 g6 23. ♞xd8+ ♘xd8 24.♗g5 ♚e7 25.♞d1 ♞d8 26.♞xd8 ♘xd8 27. ♖f3 ♚e8 28.♗xe6 fxe6 29.a4 ♗e7 30.♚e4 ♖f7 31.♙e1 ♗c6 32.♙h4 ♗d4 33.♙d8 b5 34.axb5 ♗xb5 35.c4 1–0 R.Perez – Narciso Dublan, Havana 1999. This was an instructive demonstration of the strength of White's position. The line 10...b6 seems to need some repairs;

10...♙e6 (This is a logical developing move, but White manages to start his kingside advance outright, so nowadays 10...♙e6 is rarely played.) 11.g4! ♗e7 12.♗g5 (This move was introduced by GM V.Bologan.) 12...♙c4 (This is the most stubborn move, but some other moves have been tested too. Black should not allow the exchange on e6: 12...h5 13.♗xe6 fxe6 14.♖g2 ♞d8, Fressinet – Marcelin, France 1999, 15.f4! hxg4 16.hxg4 ♗d5 17.♗e4 ♗b4 18.c3 ♗d3 19.b3 ♙e7 20.♙e3±; 14... ♗d5 15.♗e4 ♗b4 16.c3 ♗d3 17.f4 ♙e7 18.b3 hxg4 19.hxg4 g5 20. ffg5 ♗xe5 21.♙f4 ♗g6 22.♙xc7±. This is how the old, but instructive game – Stein – Bisguier, Tallinn 1971 proceeded; 12...♞d8 13.♗xe6 fxe6 14.♗e4 ♞d5 15.c4 ♞xe5. Black accepted the pawn sacrifice and it was very risky,

but otherwise he would have had to defend an inferior position with practically an extra pawn on the kingside for White. 16.♞e1 h5 17.♙f4 ♞a5 18.♙xc7+; 16... ♘g6 17.f4 ♞a5 – after 17...♙c5+ 18.♙g2 ♙b4 19.♞e2 ♞a5 20.♘g5 e5 21.f5 ♘e7 22.♘f3 ♙d6 23.♙d2 ♞c5 24.b3 a5 25.♘g5+– Black's rook on c5 is lost now – 18.♙d2 ♞a4 19.b3 ♞a3 20.f5 ♘e5 21.♘g5 ♙c5+ 22.♙f1 ♙d4 23.♞ad1 ♞xa2 24.♘xe6 ♘f3 25.♘xd4+ ♘xe1 26.♙xe1 ♙f7 27.♘e6 ♞e8 28.♙h4 ♙g8 29.♞d7+; 20...exf5 21.gxf5 ♘h4 22.♙f2 ♘d7 23.f6 ♘f5 24.♙c3 c5 25.♞ed1+ ♙c6 26.♞d5 ♘d4 27.♙b2 ♞a5 28.♙xd4 1–0 Lanka – Plachetka, Cannes 1992) 13.♞e1 ♘d5 14.♘d1! (This is a very instructive manoeuvre, because the now active black pieces have no targets and soon they will have to retreat!) 14...h6 15.♘e4 ♘b4 16.♘e3 ♙d5 17.♘c3 ♙c5 18.a3 ♙xe3 19.axb4 ♙xc1 20.♞excl ♙e7 21.♙h2 h5 22.♙g3 hxg4 23.hxg4 g5 24.f3 ♙e6 (24... ♙e6 25.♘e4±) 25.♞e1 ♞h6 26.♘d1 (It might seem to you that White has no advantage, moreover he must defend against Black's possible penetration along the h-file. This is all an illusion – White is in fact better. Black's bishop is unstable and the pawn on g5 is under permanent threat. GM V.Bologan is exploiting the advantages of his position quite efficiently.) 26...a6 (26...♞ah8 27.♘f2 a6 28.b3±) 27.b3 ♙e7 28.♘e3 ♙e6 29.♞h1

♞ah8 30.♞xh6 ♞xh6 31.♞e1 ♞h8 32.♞d1 ♙c8 33.♘c4 ♙e6 34.♞e1 ♙e7 35.♘d2 ♞d8 36.♘e4 ♞d4 37.♘xg5 ♞xb4 38.♞h1 ♞d4 39.♞h7 ♙e6 40.f4 ♞d2 41.f5 ♙d5 42.♘xf7 ♙xf7 43.e6 ♞xc2 44.♞xf7+ 1–0 Bologan – Nikcevic, Igalo 1994;

10...♙b4 (This move is rather “provocative”. Black knows that he will lose time (the bishop on b4 will be repelled from there with tempo), but he relies on the solidity of his position.) 11.♘e4 ♙e6 12.c3



Black has tried to solve his problems in this position in three different ways:

1) 12...♙f8?! seems to be too challenging 13.g4! ♘e7 14.♘g3! ♙d5 15.♘d4 c5 16.♘c2 f6 17.exf6 gxf6 18.♙f4 ♞c8 19.♘e3 ♙c6 20.♞fe1 ♙f7 21.♘h5 ♘g6 22.♙g3 ♙d6 23.♙xd6 cxd6 24.♘f5 ♞hd8 25.♘h6+ ♙f8 26.♞e6+; 14...♘g6 15.♞e1 ♙d5 16.♘d4 ♘h4 17.♙g5 ♘f3+ 18.♘xf3 ♙xf3 19.c4! Black's light-squared bishop might be lost. 19...c5?! (Some commentators recommended 19...♙b4 20.♞e3 ♙d2 21.♞xf3 ♙xg5 22.♘e4 ♙e7 23.♞d1±. White has a con-

siderable space advantage, very active pieces and an aggressive pawn majority on the kingside and we think that is practically guaranteeing White's win. The other line might induce White to go astray and is more interesting: 19...h6!? 20.♙d2 ♞d8 21.♙c3 b5 22.♞e3 ♞d1+ 23.♞xd1 ♙xd1 24.b3!± but here Black will hardly survive too, if White plays precisely.) 20.♘h5! h6 (20...♞g8 21.♞e3 ♙c6 22.♞d1 ♙e7 (22...h6 23.♘f6+ gxf6 24.exf6+ ♙e7 25.♞xe7+ ♙f8 26.♙xh6+) 23.♙xe7 ♙xe7 24.♞ed3±. Black will have to face soon the consequences of f2-f4-f5. What to do is not easy to point out? White is probably winning.) 21.♙h4! g5 22.♙g3 ♙e7 (22...♙e7 23.♞e3 ♙c6 24.f4 ♞d8 25.e6 ♞d2 26.f5 fxe6 27.♞xe6 ♘d8 28.♙e5 ♞h7 29.♙f6+ ♙c8 30.♞ae1 ♙d6 31.♞6e2 ♞xe2 32.♞xe2 ♞f7 33.♙f2 b5 34.♙g7+–) 23.e6! fxe6 24.♞xe6 ♘d7 (24...♙f7 25.♞ae1 ♞ae8 26.♞6e5 ♞hf8 27.♞5e3 ♙c6 28.♙xc7+–) 25.♞ae1 ♙d8 (25...♙d6 26.♘f6+ ♙c6 27.♙xd6 cxd6 28.♞6e3+–) 26.♞g6 b6 27.♞e3 ♙b7 28.f4! ♞h7 29.f5 ♙e7 30.♞d3+ ♙e8 31.♞g8+! 1–0 Rowson – Miles, London 2000. That game is a convincing proof that the eccentric move 12...♙f8 is unsatisfactory for Black;

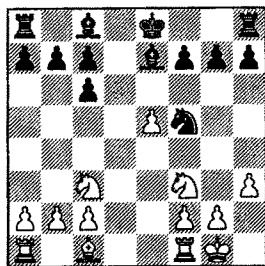
2) 12...♙d5 (This is a witty move. Black is attacking his opponent's knight instead of retreating his own attacked knight!) 13.♞e1! (The retreat 13.♘fd2?! is not to be recom-

mended – De Sousa – Sinkovics, Bagneux 1993) 13...♙a5 (13... ♙e7, Gollain – Sinkovics, Bagneux 2000, 14.b3 ♞d8 15.c4 ♙e6 16.♙b2 ♘h4 17.♘d4 ♙c8 18.♞ad1 ♘g6 19.♘e2±; 15...♙xe4 16.♞xe4 ♞d1+ 17.♞e1 ♞xe1+ 18.♘xe1 ♙c5 19.♙b2 ♙e7 20.g4 ♘h4 21.♞d1 ♘g6 22.♙g2 ♘f4+ 23.♙g3 ♘e2+ 24.♙f3 ♘g1+ 25.♙g2 ♘e2 26.h4 a5 27.h5 ♙b4 28.♘c2 ♙c3 29.♙a3+–; 28...♘c3 29.♙xc3 ♙xc3 30.f4±) 14.♙f4 ♙b6 (14... ♞d8 15.e6 fxe6 16.♘c5 ♙xf3 17.♘xb7 ♙d5 18.♘xa5 ♘h4 19.f3 ♙xf3 20.gxf3 ♘xf3+ 21.♙f2 ♘xe1 22.♞xe1 ♞f8 23.♙e3±) 15.b3 ♞d8 16.e6 fxe6 (16...♙xe6 see 16... fxe6 17.♘eg5 h6 18.♘e6 fxe6 19.♞xe6+ ♙f7 20.♞ae1±) 17.♘eg5 h6 18.♘e6 ♙xe6 19.♞xe6+ ♙f7 20.♞ae1 ♞he8 21.♞xe8 ♞xe8 22.♞xe8 ♙xe8 23.g4 ♘d6 24.♘d2 ♘b5 25.♙e5 ♙f7 26.♙f1±;

3) Black should maybe forget about 12...♙d5, in favour of 12...♙e7 13.♞e1, Costantini – Wagman, Italy 2000, 13...h6 14.♙f4! a5! (Black is looking for some counterplay on the queenside. The other moves just facilitate White's task: 14...h5?! 15.♘fg5 ♙d5 16.♘f6+ gxf6 17.exf6 ♞g8 18.g3! ♘d7 19.fxe7 ♘xe7 20.♞ad1 ♘g6 21.c4 ♘xf4 22.gxf4 f6 23.cxd5±; 14...g5 15.♙h2 ♞d8 16.g4 ♘h4 17.♘xh4 gxh4 18.♘f6+ ♙xf6 19.exf6 ♘d7 20.f4 ♞he8 21.b3 ♙d5 22.c4 ♙e4 23.♙f2 c5 24.f5 ♙c6 25.♞e2 ♞d4 26.♞ae1+–. White's bishop will capture the h6-pawn later.)

16...♗g7 17.♖f6+ ♗f8 18.♘d4 h5 19.♙ad1 hxg4 20.hxg4 ♘d5 (20...♘xa2 21.♙a1±) 21.b3 ♘e6 22.♘xe6+ ♘xe6 23.♙xd8+ ♘xd8 24.f3 ♙h6 25.♘e4±) 15.♙ad1! (White is concentrating forces in the centre.) 15...♗f8 (Black fails to equalize after capturing the pawn: 15...♘xa2 16.g4 ♘h4 17.♘f6+ ♗f8 18.♘h4+--; 17...♘xf6 18.exf6+ ♘e6 19.♘h4 g5 20.♘g6 fxg6 21.♙xe6+ ♗f7 22.♙e7+ ♗xf6 23.♙de1 gxf4 24.h4!+--; 17...gxf6 18.♘h4 ♙d8 19.♙a1 ♘e6 20.♘f5 ♙d5 21.c4 ♙c5 22.b3 ♘xf5 23.exf6 ♘e6 24.fxe7 ♗xe7 25.♘e3 ♙e5 26.f4+--; 18...fxe5 19.♘xe5! ♙g8 20.♘f5 ♘e6 21.♘g7+ ♗f8 22.♘xe6+ fxe6 23.♘xc7 h5 24.f3 ♗f7 25.♙e5 hxg4 26.fxg4±) 16.g4 ♘h4 17.♘h4 ♘h4 18.♘c5 ♘xa2 19.e6 ♘xe6 20.♘xc7 ♘e7 21.♘xe6+ fxe6 22.♙xe6 ♗f7 23.♙e2 ♘f6 24.♙d7+ ♗g6 25.f4 ♙he8 26.♙xe8 ♙xe8 27.♘xa5 ♙e3 28.♙xb7 ♙xh3 29.♗g2±.

a) 10...♘e7



11.♘f4 ♘e6

11...♘h4 is just one of the new ideas here. The exchange of the knights is facilitating Black's

defence and White should avoid it – 12.♘h4?! ♘h4 13.♘e2 ♘e7 14.♙ad1 ♘c5= and the game Bacrot – Kritz, Istanbul 2003 quickly ended in a draw. White should play instead 12.♘d2!? ♘e6 (12...♘f5 13.♘c4 ♘g6 14.♘h2 ♙d8 15.♙fe1 ♙d5 16.♘f1 ♘xe5 17.♘c3+--; 16...♙b5 17.b3 ♘b4 18.♙e3±) 13.♘de4 ♙d8 14.♙ad1 ♘d5 15.f3 ♘f5 16.♙d2 ♘c4 17.♙fd1 ♙xd2 18.♙xd2 h5 19.g3 b5 20.a3 a5 21.♗f2 b4 22.axb4 axb4 23.♘a4 ♘d5 24.♘ac5 ♗d8 25.e6±.

12.a3!?

This modest prophylactic move yields wonderful practical results for White.

12...♙d8

12...♙g8 13.♘e4 ♘d5 14.♙fe1 h6 15.g4 ♘h4 16.♘f6+! This knight check is promising White excellent chances. 16...gxf6 17.♘h4 fxe5 18.♘f5 ♘e6 (18...f6? 19.♘xe5+--) 19.♘xe7 ♗xe7 20.♙xe5 f6 21.♙e3 f5 22.♙ae1 ♙g6 23.♗h2 fxg4 24.hxg4 ♙d8 25.♙e4 ♙d7 26.f3±; 12...h6 13.g4 ♘h4 14.♘h4 ♘h4 15.♙fd1 h5 16.f3 hxg4 17.hxg4 g5 18.♘e3 ♘g3 19.♘xg5 ♘xe5 20.♙e1 ♘xc3 21.bxc3. Black's game is very difficult despite the opposite coloured bishops. The point is – White's bishop is much stronger. 21...♗f8 22.♙ad1 ♘d5 23.♘f6 ♙h6 24.g5±; 23...♙g8 24.♗f2 ♙g6 25.g5±. The weakness of Black's king's position is just chronic.

13.♙ad1 h6 14.♙fe1 a6

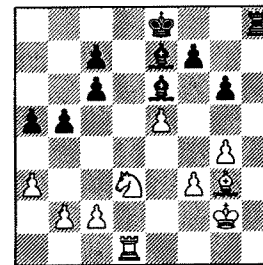
After 14...♙d7 15.♘e4 ♙xd1

16.♙xd1 ♘d5 17.♘ed2 c5 18.c4 ♘e6 19.b3 ♗d7 20.g4 ♘d4 21.♘b1 ♗c6 22.♘xd4+ cxd4 23.♙xd4 White won a pawn in the game Espinosa – Delgado, Cuba 2003.

15.♘e4 ♙d5

15...b6 16.g4 ♘h4 17.♘h4 ♘h4 18.♘g3 ♘e7 19.f4 g6 20.♘f6+ ♗f8 21.♘h4 ♙xd1 22.♙xd1 g5 23.♘g3 gxf4 24.♘xf4 ♗g7 25.♗g2 ♙d8 26.♙xd8 ♘xd8 27.♗g3± Steflitsch – Neubauer, Dornbirn 2002.

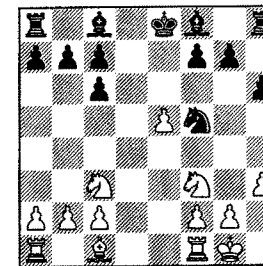
16.g4 ♘h4 17.♘h4 ♘h4 18.♘g3 ♘e7 19.♘c3 ♙xd1 20.♙xd1 h5 21.f3 b5 22.♗g2 a5 23.♘e2 hxg4 24.hxg4 ♘c5 25.♘f4 g6 26.♘d3 ♘e7



27.♘e1!

It became obvious now that Black's attempts to organize some counterplay on the queenside backfired and Black has only created additional weaknesses. 27...a4 28.♘a5 ♘d8 29.♘b4 ♘d7 30.♘a6 ♘c8 31.♘xc7+ ♘xc7 32.♘xc7 ♘d7 33.b3 axb3 34.cxb3 ♗e7 35.♘d6+ ♗d8 36.a4± Ponomariov – Vallejo Pons, Bled 2002.

b) 10...h6



This is one of the most popular moves. Black is taking the g5-square under control, stopping White from ever exchanging the dark-squared bishops from there.

11.♙d1 ♘e7

Black is weakening his position dramatically with 11...g5?! 12.b3 ♘g7 13.♘b2 ♘e6 14.♘e4 ♘d5 15.♘fd2 ♙d8 16.c4 ♘e6 17.♘f3 b6 18.g4 ♘e7 19.♘d4± Peng Xiaomin – Schindwein, Rotterdam 1998.

11...b6 (Black intends to develop his bishop on b7 or a6. This is of course possible, but White will have then the additional tactical resource to play e5-e6 at some opportune moment.) 12.b3 ♘a6 (12...♘b7 13.♘b2 ♙d8, Pfrommer – Schindwein, Waldshut 1991, 14.♘e2!) 13.♘b2 ♙d8, Buenermann – Schindwein, Germany 1991, 14.♙xd8+ ♗xd8 15.♘e4.

11...♘e6 12.♘e2 ♘d5 13.♘e1. This position was tested in only one game. White keeps his edge attacking the centralized black bishop. He is also completing his development in the process. 13...g5 (13...♙d8 14.b3 ♘c5 15.

♠b2) 14.b3 ♖e7 (14...♗g7 15.♠b2 h5 16.c4 ♖e4? 17.f3+; 16...♗e6 17.♗d3) 15.♠b2 ♖g8 16.c4 ♖e6 17.g4 ♗h4 (The black knight will be trapped in a rather peculiar fashion after the careless 17...♗g7? 18.♗g3 h5 19.f3±) 18.♗g3 a5 19.♗c2 ♗g6 20.♖h2 ♗f4 21.♗d4 h5 22.♗xe6 fxe6 23.♗xh5 ♗xh5 24.gxh5 ♖h8 25.a4 ♖xh5 26.♖d3 ♖d8 27.♖xd8+ ♗xd8 28.♖g1± Glek – Plachetka, Stare Mesto 1992.

11...♗e7 (The knight retreats from the vulnerable f5-square and can be redeployed to g6 or d5.) 12.♗d4 ♗g6 13.f4 ♖c5 14.♗e4 ♗xd4+ 15.♖xd4 b6 16.♗e3 ♗f5 17.♗g3 ♗e7 18.c4± Galliamova-Ivanchuk – Maric, Groningen 1997.

11...a6?! This novelty is quite unsatisfactory and looks like a loss of tempo. It is very unlikely to find any adherents. 12.♗e2 ♗e7 13.♗g3 c5 14.b3. White is placing his pieces quite harmoniously in order to exert pressure on the kingside of his adversary. He is in fact playing with an extra tempo due to the Black's weak move 11 and has excellent winning chances. 14...♗e6 (14...c4 15.♗a3+) 15.♠b2 ♖d8 16.♗h5 ♖xd1+ (16...♖d7 17.♗f4 ♖xd1+ 18.♖xd1 ♗f5 19.c4 h5 20.♗g5 ♖h6 21.♗a3 b6 22.♖e1 a5 23.e6 f6 24.♗f7 ♖h7 25.♖d1 ♗xe6 26.♗g5 fxg5 27.♗xe6 ♗c6 28.♗xc7+ ♖f7 29.♗a8!+-. After the loss of the b6-pawn Black's resistance is completely pointless.)

17.♖xd1 ♗d5 18.♗e1 g6 (Black has probably overlooked White's next move. But even after the most stubborn 18...♖g8 19.♗d3 ♗e7 – 19...g6 20.♗df4± – 20.♗df4 ♗b4 21.c3 ♗c6 22.c4 ♗b4 23.a3 ♗c6 24.♗d5 ♗d8 25.♗c3± Black is almost zugzwanged.) 19.c4! gxh5 20.cxd5 ♗f5 21.h4! ♖g8 22.g3 ♖g4 23.♗g2 ♖e4 24.♗f4 ♗g4 25.♖c1 ♗f3 26.♖f1 ♖b4 27.♖c3 ♗e4 28.f3 ♗b1 29.a3 ♖b6 30.♗c1 ♗a2 (30...♖d8 31.e6+–) 31.b4 cxb4 32.♖xc7 bxa3 33.d6 ♖c6 34.♗xa3 ♗g7 35.e6 1–0 Zulfugarli – Sakaev, Linares 2001.

11...♠b4 12.♗e2 ♗e7 (12...♗c5 13.♗f4 ♗e6 14.b3 ♖d8 15.♖xd8+ ♖xd8 16.♠b2 g5 17.♖d1+ ♖c8 18.♗xe6 fxe6 19.♖d3 ♖f8 20.♗d2 ♗h4 21.♗e4± Van der Wiel – Brenninkmeijer, Netherlands 1988; 14...a5 15.a4 ♖d8, Prie – Bauer, Narbonne 1997, 16.♠b2) 13.b3 (This is not only a very strong move, but also a subtle trap that the super-experienced GM V.Korchnoi fell in. 13...h5?! (Black evidently considered only one possibility of development of that bishop – to b2. (White's advantage was not so great after 13...g5 14.♠b2 ♖g8 15.♗d2) 14.♗g5! (Black is now forced to comply with the quite unfavourable trade of bishops, or weaken his kingside after which the defence of the dark squares becomes absolutely problematic.) 14...f6 (14...♗e6 15.♗f4±, 14...h4 15.♗f4±) 15.exf6 gxf6 16.♗f4

♗d6 17.c4 ♖f7 18.♖ac1 ♗f5 19.♗g3 ♗h7 20.♖e1 ♗e8, Adams – Korchnoi, Dos Hermanas 1999, 21.♗xh5±; 20...♖ae8 21.c5 ♗f5 22.♗xf5 ♗xf5 23.♗xc7±.

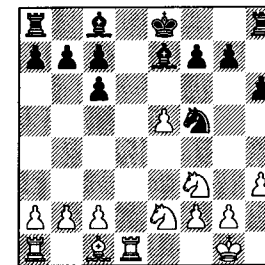
11...♗d7 12.♗f4 ♖d8 (12...g5 13.♗h2 ♖d8 14.♗e4 ♗e6 15.♗f6+ ♖e7 16.g4 ♗g7 17.♗d4±) 13.e6! (White has an easy access to Black's king now. The weaker 13.g4?! lead to a quick draw in the game C. Joecks – Fischer, Bad Orb 1989) 13...♗xe6 14.♗xc7. It might seem now that Black's defence is easier, since he got rid of the doubled pawns on the queenside! There are however some dynamic features of the position that are much more relevant. Black's pieces are quite misplaced and lack coordination. 14...♖xd1+ (14...♖c8 15.♗h2 ♠b4 16.g4 ♗e7 17.♗d4 ♗xc3 18.bxc3 h5 19.f3 hxg4 20.hxg4 ♗c4 21.♖e1 ♗d7 22.♖ad1 ♗d5 23.♗f5 ♖ce8 24.♖xe8 ♖xe8 25.♗d6 ♗xc3 26.♖a1±) 15.♖xd1 ♗e7 16.g4 ♗h4 17.♗d4 ♗d7 18.♖e1 ♖f8 19.♗g3 c5 20.♗d5 cxd4 21.♖xe7 ♗f3+ 22.♖g2 ♗c6 23.♖c7 ♗xd5 24.♖c8+ ♖e7 25.♖xh8 ♗d2+ 26.f3±.

11...a5 12.♗f4 ♗e6 13.g4 ♗e7 14.♗d4 ♗d5 (14...♗g6 15.♗g3±) 15.♗xe6 fxe6 16.♗e2 ♗c5 (16...g5 17.♗g3 ♗g7 18.c4 ♗b6 19.b3 ♗d7 20.♗d4 ♗xe5 21.♗xe5 ♗xe5 22.♗xe6 ♖f7 23.♗c5± Kindermann – Lalic, Portoroz 1998) 17.c4 ♗b6 18.♗g3 (After 18.b3 a4! Black managed to organize serious counterplay in the game Kasparov – Kramnik, London

(m/9) 2000) 18...a4 19.♖ac1± Vuckovic – Sakaev, Herceg Novi 2000.

12.♗e2!

This redeployment is very useful for White. The knight is headed for f4 and h5 to provoke weaknesses on Black's kingside.



12...♗h4

Black played like that in the sensational game J.Polgar – G. Kasparov, Moscow 2002, which White won brilliantly.

We have to admit that Black has problem to acquire a good game after the other moves as well, for example:

12...♗e6 13.♗f4, Bertorello – Ginzburg, Argentine 1994, 13...g5 14.♗xe6 fxe6 15.g4±;

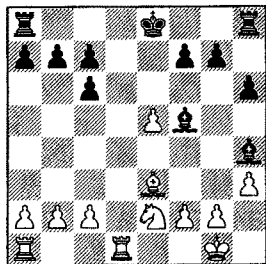
12...♗d7 13.b3 ♖d8 14.♠b2 ♖g8 15.♖d2 ♗c8 16.♖ad1 ♖xd2 17.♗xd2 g5 18.g4 ♗g7 19.♗e4 ♗e6 20.♗c1 ♖g6 21.♗e3 c5 22.♗2g3 b6 23.♗h5± Em.Lasker – Beratende, Berlin 1896. This game was played more than 100 years ago, but the level of play of White satisfies the contemporary standards;

12...a5 13.a4 ♗c5 14.♗f4 h5 15.♗g5 ♗e7 16.♗e4 g5 17.♗e2

♙g8 18.b3 ♗e6 19.♗a3 ♖g6 20. ♗xe7 ♚xe7 21.♗f6 (As a rule, whenever White's knight reaches that square White's advantage becomes decisive and that game is no exception.) 21...♖h8 22.♗d3 g4 23.♗f4 ♖g5 24.♗ad1 ♗c8 25.♗d7+! (This is an exquisite exchange sacrifice.) 25...♗xd7 26.♗xd7+ ♚f8 27.e6 ♖g7 28. ♗4xh5 gxh3 29.♗xg7 ♚xg7 30. ♗xf7+ ♚g6 31.♗e4 ♗d4 32.f4 1-0 Kokarev – Driamin, Moscow 2001;

After the enterprising 12...g5 White must react with the aggressive 13.g4! ♗g7 14.♗fd4 f6 (14...h5 15.f3 hxg4 16.hxg4 f6 17.exf6 ♗xf6 18.♗e3±) 15.exf6 ♗xf6 16.♗g3 ♚f7 17.♗e4 ♗e7 18.♗e3 ♖e8 19.f3 ♚g6 20.♗d2 ♗b4 21.c3 ♗f8 22.♖e1 ♗e6 23.h4 ♚xh4 24.♗f5 h3 25.♚h2 b6 26. ♚xh3 ♗a6 27.♚g3 ♗c4 28.♖h2 ♗g5 29.♗xg5 hxg5 30.♖h5 ♗xa2 31.♗xg5+ ♚f7 32.♖h1 ♚e6 33. ♖h7 ♗d5 34.♗d4# Gadjily – Haznedaroglu, Batumi 1999.

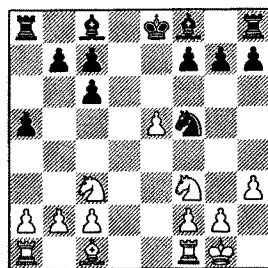
13.♗xh4 ♗xh4 14.♗e3 ♗f5



15.♗d4± ♗h7 (The commentators recommended 15...♗c8!? 16.♚g2± after the game.) 16.g4

♗e7 17.♚g2 h5 18.♗f5 ♗f8 19.♚f3 ♗g6 20.♗d2 hxg4+ 21. hxg4 ♖h3+ 22.♚g2 ♖h7 23.♚g3 f6 24.♗f4 ♗xf5 25.gxf5 ♗xe5 26.♖e1 ♗d6 27.♗xe5 ♚d7 28.c4 c5 29.♗xd6 cxd6 30.♖e6 ♖ah8 31.♖exd6+ The rook endgame is winning for White. We intend to follow this game to the end as a tribute to the two superb GMs that created it. 31...♚c8 32.♗d5 ♖h3+ 33.♚g2 ♖h2+ 34.♚f3 ♖2h3+ 35.♚e4 b6 36.♖c6+ ♚b8 37.♗d7 ♖h2 38.♚e3 ♖f8 39.♖cc7 ♖xf5 40.♖b7+ ♚c8 41.♖dc7+ ♚d8 42.♖xg7 ♚c8 1-0 J.Polgar – Kasparov, Moscow 2002.

c) 10...a5



This is another possibility for Black that is gaining in popularity. Black is waiting for White to clarify his plans.

11.♗f4!

The white bishop on f4 is usually placed quite well. It is not hindering the mobility of the other pieces, it can not be attacked there and it can support successfully the kingside pawn onslaught (for example g2-g4, ♗g3, then the white knight re-

treats from f3 with f2-f4 to follow. This plan might seem to you rather slow, but it is often quite effective). Black has also the possibility of e5-e6 and ♗xc7 to think about.

11...♗e6

11...♗e7 12.♗ad1 h6?! (Black was desperately trying to equalize and he overlooked a simple, but rather effective tactical strike. Black's situation is on the verge of disaster after that. 12...♗e6 13.a3!±) 13.e6! ♗xe6 14.♗xc7 ♗b4 15.♗a4 ♗c4 (15...♖c8 16.♗e5 ♗c4 17.g4 f6 18.♗h2 ♗e7 19.a3± and it turns out quite unexpectedly that the black bishop is trapped!) 16.♗b6 ♗xf1 17.♚xf1 ♚e7 18.g4! (White traps this time the knight instead of the bishop! Both times White was successful due to beautiful geometrical motives!) 18...♖ac8 19.♗d7+ ♚e8 20.♗e5 ♖xc7 21. ♖xc7 ♗d6 22.♗d3 ♗d2 23.c4+- Nijboer – Erenburg, Istanbul 2003;

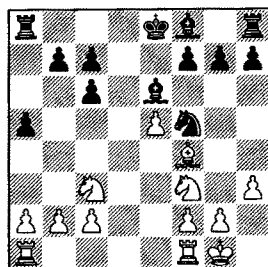
11...a4 12.a3! ♗e7 13.♗ad1 ♗h4 14.♗d4 ♗f5 (The black knight has nothing to do on h4, so Black is retreating it back to f5. Meanwhile Black is testing White about his determination to play for a win..) 15.♗de2! h5 (This is preventing the possible g2-g4, but is not solving the problems.) 16.♗e4 h4 17.♗d2 ♗e6 18.♖fd1 ♖h5 19.♗h2 ♖h6 20.♗f4 ♗c4 (White can not repel that bishop safely with a pawn on a3, so GM Bologan is improving his

position patiently.) 21.♗d3 b6 22.♗e1 ♖g6 (Black's main problem is the lack of active plan. White is a bit restricted by the pawns on a4 and h4 indeed, but Black has a lot less useful things to do! White has a substantial space advantage after all...) 23.♗f4! (Black's rook attempted to be really active, but now it can not go back safely to h6 at all.) 23...b5 24.c3 ♗d5 25.f3 ♗b3 26.♗c2 ♗d8 27.♖xd8+ ♗xd8 28.♗d2 ♗d5 29.♚f2 ♗e7 (after the more natural move 29...♗e7 White can exploit the weaknesses on the queenside with 30.♗b4 ♗xb4 31.cxb4 ♗xe4 32. fxe4 ♗g3 33.♚f3±) 30.♗e3 ♗xe4 31.fxe4 ♗c8 32.♚f3 ♗b6 33.c4 ♗g5 34.cxb5 cxb5 35.♖c2 ♗xf4 36.♚xf4 ♚d7 37.♗f5 ♗c4 38. ♗xh4+- Bologan – Aleksandrov, Kishinev 1998. White finally captured this pawn and that not only consolidated his great advantage, but also crowned his opening strategy. This proves once again that White can break even the most stubborn defence with a purposeful play with a surgical precision;

11...♗b4 (This move was suggested by GM V.Korchnoi and created concrete problems to White. Black had a very difficult position in the only game in which it was played, but managed to save it after a mistake by his opponent.) 12.♗e4 ♗e6 13. c3 ♗f8 (13...♗d5 14.♖fe1 ♗e7 15. g4 ♗h4 16.♗f6+ gxf6 17.♗xh4

♜d7 18.♞f5±) 14.♞fe1 h5 (14...h6 15.g4 ♞e7 16.♞d4±) 15.♞eg5 ♙d5 (Black can not be happy with 15...♙e7 16.♞xe6 fxe6 17.g3±) 16.e6! (This tactical possibility is often successful for White in various lines of the Berlin endgame. To take or not to take that pawn?) 16...f6 (GM V.Korchnoi preferred this move. After 16...fxe6 White's task is very easy: 17.♞xe6 ♙xe6 18.♞xe6+ ♚f7 19.♞g5+ ♚g8 20.♙xc7+; 18...♚d7 19.♞g6±) 17.♞f7! ♞h7 18.♙xc7 a4! (18...♙xe6? 19.♞d8!+-) 19.♞d4! (White played imprecisely here and missed his chance 19.♞d2?! Lutz – Korchnoi, Dresden 1998) 19...♞xd4 20.cxd4 (The piece placement of White is a bit awkward, so Black has some chances of survival, but White is still clearly better. 20...♙b4 (20...a3 21.b3 ♙b4 22.♞e2 ♚e7 23.♙b6! ♞e8 24.♞ae1!±; 20...g5 21.♞d6+ ♚e7?? 22.♞f5+ ♚e8 23.e7 ♙xe7 24.♙d6+-; 21...♙xd6 22.♙xd6±) 21.♞e2 ♚e7 (Black loses the exchange after 21...♙xe6? 22.♞d8!+-) 22.a3 ♙a5 (22...♙c4 23.♞e4 ♙d5 24.♞e3 ♙a5 25.♙d6+ ♚e8 26.♙c5 ♙xe6 27.♞xe6+ ♚xf7 28.♞e7+ ♚g6 29.♞xb7+-) 23.♙d6+ ♚e8 24.♙c5 ♙c7 25.♞c1 g5 26.♞d6+ ♙xd6 27.♙xd6 ♞d8 28.♙b4 b6 29.♞ec2 ♙e4 (29...♙xe6 30.♞xc6+-) 30.♞xc6 ♙xc6 31.♞xc6 ♞xd4 32.♙d6 ♞d1+ (32...♞d7 33.exd7+ ♚xd7 34.♞xb6 ♞xd6 35.♞xd6+-) 33.♚h2 ♞d7 34.exd7+ ♚xd7 35.♞xb6

♞xd6 36.♞b4! (White could have even lost after the exchange of the rooks.) 36...♞d2 37.♚g3±.



12.a3!

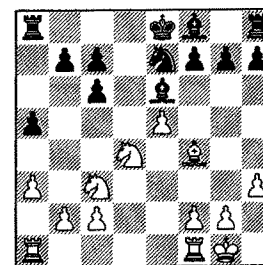
This is preventing the move ♙b4, and that does not seem so dangerous for Black, but the point is that after the disappearance of the knight on c3 the other black bishop might occupy the d5-square, so White is preventing this once and for all. Look at an example about the necessity of this prophylactics: 12.g4 ♞e7 13.♞d4 ♞d5 14.♞xe6 fxe6 15.♙d2 ♙b4= Galkin – Aleksandrov, Russia 1997.

12...♙c5

12...♞d8 13.♞fd1 (What was Black threatening? Naturally ♞d4 and Black could take the initiative outright!) 13...h6 (preventing ♞g5) 14.g4! ♞e7 15.♞d4 (This is more or less typical for the development of White's initiative – all his pieces are on very comfortable squares.) 15...♞d5 16.♞xe6 fxe6 17.♞e2! (This is an important move, because Black will be reluctant to exchange on f4, therefore the knight will have to retreat from d5 after c2-c4.)

17...♙c5 18.♙g3 ♚e7 19.♚g2±.

12...♞e7. This idea is quite possible and not bad at all. White should attack the bishop on e6 immediately. 13.♞d4!



1) 13...♞d5 14.♞xe6 fxe6, Zarnicki – Flores, Argentine 2001, 15.♞e2± ♙c5 16.g4! (This move might seem risky, but it is quite useful for White both for the imminent pawn expansion on the kingside, as well as for the White's piece coordination. The white king can be comfortably placed later on g2. Black in his stead can hardly utilize the f-file for anything real.) 16...♞f8 17.♙g3 ♞d8 18.♞ad1 ♞d7 19.c4 ♞b6 20.♞xd7 ♚xd7 (20...♞xd7 21.♚g2 ♞b6 22.♞c1±) 21.♚g2 ♞xc4 (21...a4 22.♞c1 g5 23.♞c3 ♚e7 24.f4 gx f4 25.♙xf4) 22.♞c1 b5 23.b3 ♙xa3 24.♞d1±;

2) 13...♞g6 14.♞xe6 fxe6 15.♙g3 ♙c5 16.♞ad1 ♞d8 17.♞xd8+ ♚xd8 18.♞e4±. These types of positions are rather favourable for White. White is having an extra pawn on the kingside. Black's bishop is placed without good prospects. The white king might be redeployed

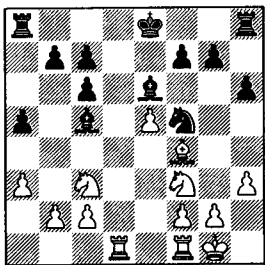
to e2 in the future and then Black's bishop will be an even more miserable sight;

3) 13...♙c4 14.♞fe1 (White will be permanently threatening now e5-e6. Well, that move will not necessarily be catastrophic for Black, but it will give him food for thought.) 14...♞d5 (Black's most solid method of defence is to reduce the effect of e5-e6 with exchanges. The other possibility is weakening Black's position a lot: 14...c5? 15.♞db5+-; 14...♞c8 is not to be recommended either 15.e6 f6 16.♞ad1±) 15.♞xd5 ♙xd5 16.e6 (White can not attack the king effectively, but his initiative is not diminishing after the exchanges.) 16...♙d6 (Weaker is 16...fxe6 17.♞xe6 ♙xe6 18.♞xe6+ ♚f7 (18...♚d7 19.♞ae1 ♙c5 20.♞6e4 a4 21.♙e5+-) 19.♞ae1 ♞c8 20.g4±) 17.♙xd6! (White should not overemphasize the importance of Black's doubled pawns. He should be ready to change the pawn structure at some opportune moment, if necessary.) 17...cxd6 18.♞ad1! fxe6 19.♞xe6 ♚d7 20.♞f4 ♙a2! (It is a super rare occurrence to see a black bishop on a2 in any other opening, while its appearance there in the Berlin defence endgame is not regular, but rather frequent. Now the concrete calculation shows that ♙a2 is a must. After the seemingly natural 20...♙f7? Black is beyond salvation: 21.♞d3! ♞he8 22.♞e5+ ♚e7 23.

♗xc6+ ♚f8 24.♗d4+-) 21.a4 ♖c4 22.b3 ♜f8 23.♗h5 ♙e6 24.♗xg7 ♙xh3 25.♞d3 ♞f7 26.♞xh3 ♞xg7 27.♞h5±. White's edge is much more substantial than it seems at first sight. The white pawns are placed comfortably, while Black has three perceptible weaknesses – a5, d6 and h7.

13.♞ad1 h6

If Black's bishop is placed on c5, the manoeuvre with the knight via e7 is bad for Black – 13...♗e7?! 14.♗e4 ♙b6 15.♞fe1 ♙d5?! (15...♗d5 16.♙c1±) 16.♗f6+! (Notice this check with the knight. It is often the key to White's big advantage.) 16...♚f8 17.♗xd5 cxd5, J.Moreno – Mitkov, Mondariz 1999. White had to exploit his tremendous edge in piece activity and act in a flash: 18.e6! fxe6 (18...f6 19.c4 c6 20.♙d6 ♞d8 21.c5 ♙a7 22.♗d4 g6 23.♗b3 a4 24.♗a5+-) 19.♗g5 c6 20.♗xe6+ ♚f7 (20...♚g8 21.♙c7+-) 21.♗g5+ (White could have taken on g7, but the retreat with the knight is stronger.) 21...♚e8 22.♙d6 ♗d7 23.♞xe7+ ♗xd6 24.♞de1+-.



14.g4! ♗e7 15.♗d4

Black is naturally reluctant to allow the capture on e6, since it will lead to a long and painful defence of a worse endgame.

15...♙xd4

15...♗d5 16.♗xe6 fxe6 17.♗e2!±.

16.♞xd4

This is an interesting position with some edge for White.

16...c5

Some commentators suggested 16...h5!?. Let's analyse it in details: 17.f3 ♗d5 18.♗e2! (White should avoid here an exchange of the knights, because it leads to a quick draw.) 18...c5 19.♞dd1 ♞d8 20.♙g5 ♞d7 21.♗g3 (White forces his opponent to clarify his intentions about the h-pawn. This will be rather helpful to White later in the game.) 21...hxg4 (Advancing the pawn will turn it into a permanent weakness 21...h4?! 22.♗e4 and the rook on h8 will have to defend it. 22...b6 23.♚f2 ♗e7 24.f4 ♗c6 25.f5 ♞xd1 26.♞xd1 ♙c8 27.♗c3 g6 28.♗b5 gxf5 29.♗a7!+-; if 28...♚f8 White plays the same beautiful move 29.♗a7! ♙b7 30.♞d7+-) 22.hxg4 b6 23.♗h5 ♞h7 24.♚g2 ♗e7 (24...c4 25.c3 ♙f5 26.♞h1! ♙c2 27.♗xg7+ ♚f8 28.♗f5!+-; 25...♚f8 26.♚g3±) 25.♚g3 ♗c6 26.♞h1 ♞d5 27.♞xd5 ♙xd5 28.♙f6!! (White obtains a decisive advantage in a really exquisite way.) 28...♞xh5 29.gxh5 gxf6 30.h6 ♗e7 31.h7 ♗g6 32.♚f2! (This is the simplest –

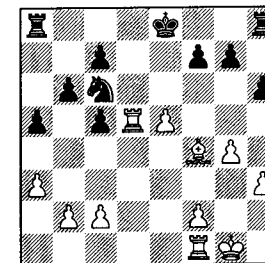
White wins the queen, instead of only the exchange.) 32...♗h8 (32...♚f8 33.exf6+-) 33.♞g1+-.

17.♞d2 ♗c6 18.♗d5 ♙xd5

The tentative move 18...♞c8 has also been tried, but White has a lasting advantage as you can see after the following lines: 19.♗e3 ♚e7 (19...♗d4 20.f3 h5 21.c3 ♗b3 22.♞dd1 hxg4 23.hxg4 ♞d8 24.♙g5 ♞d7 25.♞xd7 ♚xd7 26.♞d1+ ♚c6 27.f4 b5 28.f5 ♙c8 29.♗d5 ♙b7 30.♗f4 ♚b6 31.♞d7 ♞h1+ 32.♚f2 ♞h2+ 33.♚g3 ♞xb2. The game became sharper, plenty of pawns were exchanged, but all these developments were in favour of White. His pawns are faster and his pieces are poised aggressively. 34.♞xf7 ♗d2 35.♙d8 ♗e4+ 36.♚h3 ♞c2 37.♞xc7 ♞xc3+ 38.♚h4 ♞xa3 39.♞xg7+ ♚c6 40.f6 ♞f3 41.♞c7+ ♚b6 42.♗e6 ♞f1 43.♚h5+-) 20.♙g3 ♞c8 21.♞fd1 ♞xd2 22.♞xd2 ♗d4 23.♚g2 h5 24.f4 hxg4 25.hxg4 g6 26.c3 ♗b3 27.♞d1 f5 28.exf6+ ♚xf6 29.♞d8 ♞xd8 30.♙h4+ ♚f7 31.♙xd8 c6 32.f5 gxf5 33.gxf5±. This quite non-standard endgame is not easy to evaluate, but only White can play for a win.

19.♞xd5 b6

19...♗d4? is clearly weak. The black knight might easily get lost. 20.♙e3! ♗xc2 (20...c6 21.♞d6 ♗f3+ 22.♚g2 ♗xe5 23.♞e1 f6 24.f4 ♗g6 25.♙xc5+ ♚f7 26.♞d7+ ♚g8 27.♙d6 ♚h7 28.f5 ♗f8 29.♞xb7+-) 21.♙xc5 b6 22.♞c1+-.



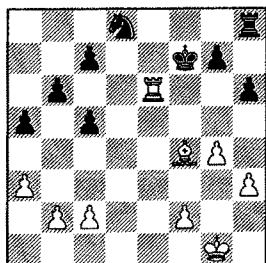
20.e6!

White sacrifices a pawn temporarily and breaks the pawn structure of the opponent irrevocably. Black will manage to build an impenetrable line of defence after the other not so resolute moves.

20...fxe6 21.♞e1

GM A.Shirov demonstrates a profound understanding of the fine points of the endgame and excellent calculations. See the main line that he foresaw during the game: 21...♗d4 22.♚g2! c6 (22...♞d8 23.♞xd8+ ♗xd8 24.c3 ♗c6 25.♞xe6 ♗d7 26.♞e4 ♗d8 27.♙e5 ♞e8 28.f4 ♗f7 29.♚f3 g6 30.♙g7 ♞xe4 31.♚xe4±) 23.♞d6 ♞f8 (23...♗xc2 24.♞dxe6+ ♚f7 25.♞e7+ ♚f8 26.♞1e4±; 23...♞d8 24.♞xd8+ ♗xd8 25.c3+-) 24.♙g3! ♚e7 25.♞d1!! This is a quite dynamic beautiful idea! Black is losing material now. White had to find plenty of difficult quiet moves in order to reach this position! 25...♞fd8 (25...♞f3 26.♙e5 ♞af8 27.♞d2+-) 26.♞xd8 ♞xd8 27.♙c7 ♞d5 28.♙xb6! ♗xc2 29.♞c1 ♗d4 30.♞xc5±. White is winning at least a pawn with excellent winning chances.

21...♗d8 22.♙xe6+ ♚f7 23. ♙xd8 ♗xd8



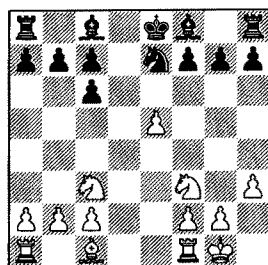
24.♙e3!!

This move needs a profound understanding too, because White must evaluate correctly the consequences of the possible minor pieces endgame. 24...♗e6 25.♙e5! h5! (After the attractive move 25...♗d8, White should try to exchange rooks with 26.♗d3 ♗xd3 27.cxd3 g5 28.♚g2+-. A world class player should be able to evaluate such a position effortlessly many moves in advance. All black pawns are weak and the white pieces will capture them with ease.) 26.♗d3 hxg4 27.hxg4 c4 28.♗d1! ♚e7 (28... ♗e8 29.♗d7+ ♗e7 30.♗xe7+ ♚xe7 31.f4 g6 32.♚f2+--) 29.♚g2 ♗f8 30.♚g3 g5 31.f3 ♗f7, Shirov – I.Sokolov, Sarajevo 1999. GM A.Shirov considers 32.♗h1!± to be the best move in this position.

d) 10...♗e7

This position has been one of the most interesting and fashionable in the Berlin endgame for many years. This is a clever move, because in fact the knight

on f5 is not quite comfortable and its prospects there are not very bright. It is going to be redeployed to g6 or d5 with good scopes for the future. If White plays too schematically Black might obtain an excellent position, so White needs to be superbly prepared.



The move has naturally some drawback too. Black is delaying the development of the other pieces and White can try to make a good use out of it. Sometimes the game might become very sharp, so both sides need to be extremely inventive tactically.

11.♙e1!

White is placing the rook against the enemy king and that x-ray impact might perform an important role in the future fight.

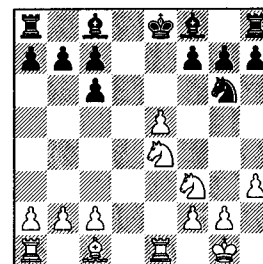
11...♗g6

White needs to know how to punish the quite unsatisfactory for this position move 11...a5?! 12.♗e4 ♗g6 13.♗d4! a4 14.♙d2 h6 15.♗ad1 ♙d7 16.c4 ♗d8 17. ♙a5 b6 18.♙c3 (White is totally dominating in the centre and is going to win material soon.)

18...♗f4 (18...♙e7 19.♗f6+--; 18...c5 19.♗f6+ gxf6 20.exf6+ ♙e6 21.♗xe6 fxe6 22.f7+ ♚e7 23.♗xd8 ♚xd8 24.♗xe6+--) 19. ♗f6+! gxf6 (19...♚e7 20.e6+--) 20.exf6+ ♙e6 (20...♗e6 21.♗xe6 ♙xe6 22.♗xe6+ fxe6 23.f7+ ♚xf7 24.♗xd8 ♗g8 (24...♗h7 25.♙e5) 25.♗d7+--) 21.♗xe6 ♗xd1 22. ♗xc7+ ♚d7 23.♗xd1+ ♚c8 24. ♙e5+-- Nisipeanu – Kosashvili, Elista 1998.

12.♗e4

That position was reached many times with transposition of moves 11 and 12. White's knight on e4 is very powerful – it is controlling the c5, d6 and f6-squares. It might not be quite clear yet, what exactly White has achieved, so we should better have a look at some games.



12...c5

This is Black's most popular defensive move. His idea is original and really brave – taking the king to safety to the c6-square!

The overly calm move 12...♙e7?! is just playing onto White's hands. 13.♗d6+! cxd6 14.exd6 f6 15.dxe7 ♗xe7 16.b3 (This position is very unpleasant for Black.

It looks like White is not threatening anything in particular, but Black is doomed to suffer painfully for long without any hopes of taking the initiative.) 16...♚f7 17.♙a3 ♗e8 (17...♗f5? 18.g4 ♗h6 19.♗e7+ ♚g6 20.♗h4+ ♚g5 21. ♗g2+--) 18.♗d2 ♙f5 19.♗c4 ♗c8 20.♗xe8 ♚xe8 21.♗e1+ ♚f7 22. ♗a5 ♗b8 23.♙c1 g5 (23...♗b6 24. c4 ♗e8 25.♗xe8 ♚xe8 26.♗xb7 ♙b1 27.a4±) 24.g4 ♙xc2 25.f4 h6 26.fxg5 hxg5 27.♗f1 ♚g6 28.♙b2 f5 29.♙e5 ♗a8 30.♗xb7± Nisipeanu – Grabarczyk, Kossalin 1998. It is not easy to offer any good advice to Black. Maybe he should better avoid the exchange combination starting with the check on d6.

12...h6 13.♗d4 c5 14.♗b5 ♚d7 15.f4 ♚c6 16.a4 ♙e7 17.♙e3! ♙f5 (Black can also try to repel the knight: 17...a6 18.♗bc3 f5 19. exf6 gxf6 20.♗ad1 f5 21.♗d2 ♙h4 22.♗e2 ♗d8 23.♚h2±; 18...h5 19.♗ad1 ♙e6 20.b4! This is a very promising pawn sacrifice and it is quite topical with a black king on c6 at every moment. White should have in mind that if Black manages to defend successfully, White might even lose. The retreat of the rook seems inconclusive 20.♗f1 ♗h4 and the game was unclear, Pinski – Marcelin, Erevan 1999. 20...cxb4 – This is more principled than 20...b6 21.bxc5 bxc5 22.♗f1± – 21.♗e2 b6? 22.f5 ♙d5 23.fxg6 ♙xe4 24.gxf7+--; 21...♙d5 22.♗d4+ ♚b6? 23.♗b3+ ♚c6 24.♗a5+--;

22...♖d7 23.♗b3 c6 24.c4 bxc3 25. ♗xc3 ♖c7 26.♗xd5+ cxd5 27. ♗xd5 ♗ad8 28.♗c1+ ♖b8 29. ♗cd1 ♗xd5 30.♗d5 ♗d8 31. ♗xd8+ ♗xd8 32.♖f2±) 18.♗g3 ♗xc2 (This is a brave challenging decision, because the black king is on the same file! It is a good move, though. White has a stable edge after the too tentative 18... ♗d7 19.♗ed1 a6 20.♗c3 ♗hd8 21. ♗d3 b5 22.axb5+ axb5 23.♗ad1 ♗h4 24.♖h2±) 19.♗ec1 ♗xa4 (This is courageous, but futile, since that bishop might be necessary as a defender too. Black had decent drawing chances after 19...♗d3! 20.b4 a6 21.♗a3 ♗ad8 22.♗xc5±) 20.♗d4+ ♖d7 21.♗xa4 cxd4 22.♗xd4+ ♖c8 23.♗f5 a5 (23...♗g8 24.♗d3 a5 25.♗b6 ♗d8 26.♗xd8+ ♖xd8 27.♗xc7 ♗a6 28.♗xb7+ ♗xb6 29.♗xb6 ♖c7 30.♗a6 ♗xf4 31. ♗xa5±) 24.♗xg7± Brodsky – Van den Doel, Wijk aan Zee 1999.

12...♗e6 (This move of experimental nature was invented by GM Kaminski, but failed to find supporters. You will now see why!) 13.♗d4 ♗d5 14.b3! (There is no better square than b2 for the White's bishop in a situation like that. White can now play c2-c4 at some opportune moment forcing the exchange of the powerful ♗d5.) 14...♗d8 (14...♗b4 15.c3 ♗a5 16.b4 ♗b6 17.♗f5 ♗g8 18.a4! a5 – after 18...a6 19.a5 ♗a7 20.♗c5 ♗xc5 21.bxc5 ♖d7 22.f4 ♗ae8 23.♗d4 h5 24.♗a4 ♗h4 25.g3 ♗f3+ 26.♗xf3 ♗xf3

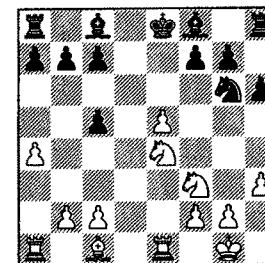
27.f5 g5 28.♖f2 g4 29.♗f4 ♗d5 30.h4+-. The centralized and well supported black bishop on d5 is strikingly helpless and that ensures White's decisive advantage – 19.♗c5 ♗xc5 20.bxc5±. Black's pieces are not active at all and perform purely defensive functions. The pawns on g7 and b7 must be permanently watched.) 15...♗b2 c5 (The commentators labeled that move as a mistake. Is that true? Our opinion is that Black is already clearly worse anyway, so his only choice lies between one bad position and another. 15...♗b4 This move was suggested by GM Wedberg. White can rely on a substantial edge after: 16.c3 ♗e7 17.♗f6+ ♖f8. Black should refrain from taking on f6 after which his position is simply destroyed. 18.♗xd5 cxd5 19.♗ad1 c5 20.♗f5 ♗f4 21.g3 ♗xh3+ 22.♖g2 ♗g5 23.♗e3 d4 24.cxd4 cxd4 25.♗xd4 ♗e6 26.♗xd8+ ♗xd8 27.f4 g6 28.f5 gxf5 29. ♗xf5±; 18...♗xd5 19.♗f3! ♗f4 20.c4 ♗d3 21.♗ed1! This is the right rook to offer an exchange with! 21...♗xh3+ 22.gxh3 ♗xf3 23.♗d7 ♗h4 24.♗xc7+-; 21...♖e8 22.♖f1±. The position was simplified considerably, but Black's situation did not become any better. There is an evident difference between the activities of the pieces. Black's king position is far from safe too. White can try 16.c3 and if 16...♗a5 17.e6! ♗xe6. Black must capture this pawn

outright to avoid the worst. 18.♗ad1 ♗b6 19.c4 ♗f4 20.♗g5 ♗g8 21.♗dxe6 ♗xe6 22.♗xd8+ ♖xd8 23.♗xf7+ ♖e7? 24.♗g5+-; 23...♖d7 24.♗e5±. The same pawn now becomes much more dangerous after 17...♗f4 18.e7! ♖xe7 19.♗c5+ ♖f6 20.b4 b6 21.c4 ♖g6 22.cxd5 bxc5 23.♗xc6 ♗xb4 24.♗e4+-; 18...♗d7 19.♗f5 ♗e6 20.♗xg7+ ♖xe7 21.b4 ♗b6 22. ♗c1 ♗d3 23.♗g5+ ♖f8 24.♗h6 ♖e7 25.♗e2+-) 16.♗f5 ♗e6 17. ♗e3 ♗e7 18.g3!! (This is a magnificent pawn sacrifice and we believe not every GM would dare to undertake it. White creates in return the simple, but deadly threat f4-f5-f6!) 18...♗xh3 19.f4 (Black is totally helpless, which is a quite rare situation so early in the Berlin endgame!) 19...♗f8 (The “total” retreat of the black pieces is equally hopeless: 19... ♗c8 20.f5 ♗f8 21.f6 gxf6 22.exf6 ♗d6 23.♗f5 ♗e6 24.♗ad1 ♗g8 25.♗exd6+ cxd6 26.♗xd6+ ♖f8 27.♗f5+-) 20.f5 ♗e7 21.f6 ♗f5 22.e6! (This attack is very beautiful!) 22...♗d4 (22...fxe6 23. ♗xf5+-) 23.e7 ♗xe7 24.fxe7 ♖xe7 25.♖f2 b6 26.b4 ♗e6 (26... cxb4 27.♗g5+-) 27.bxc5 f5 (27... bxc5 28.♗a3+-) 28.♗c3 ♗d2+ 29.♗e2 ♗xe2+ 30.♗xe2 bxc5 31.♗f4+- Bologan – Kaminski, Koszalin 1999.

13.a4!

It will become evident soon that the rook on a1 takes a major part in the action from its initial square.

d1) 13...h6



This prophylactic move is not enjoying a good reputation. 13...a5 is analysed in the line d2.

14.a5!

This is an important contemporary theoretical position. Black has not found the right path to equality yet.

14...♗f5

14...♗d7 15.♗e3 ♗c6 16.♗xc5 ♗xf3 17.gxf3 ♗h4 (17...♗xc5?! 18.♗xc5 ♗f4 19.♖h2±) 18.♗e2 ♗xf3+ 19.♖g2 ♗xc5 20.♗xc5 ♗h4+ 21.♖g3 ♗f5+ (21...♗g6 22.f4 ♗e7 23.♗d2 ♗c6 24.♗ad1 a6 25.♗d7 ♗d8 26.♗xd8+ ♗xd8 27.f5 g6 28.f6 h5 29.b4 g5 30.c4 ♗e6 31.♗e7 ♗g8 32.b5+-. The black king is in a mating net.) 22.♖g4 g6 23.♗d2 h5+ 24.♖f3 ♗d8 (Should Black refrain from giving the a7-pawn, the end would be spectacular: 24...a6 25.♗ad1 ♗c8 26.♖e4 ♗h7 27.b4 b6 28.axb6 cxb6 29.♗xb6 ♗c4+ 30.♖d5 ♗xb4 31.♖c6 ♗e7+ 32. ♖b7 f5 33.♗d8+ ♖f7 34.♗1d6 ♗e4 35.♗d4 a5 36.f3 ♗e2 37.♖c7 ♗xc2+ 38.♖d7+-) 25.♗xd8 ♖xd8 26.♗xa7±.

14...♖d7?! (This is a dubious

move, because the black king will not succeed to find a safe haven like that.) 15.♖a3! b6 (The usual hiding place for the king, the c6-square is taboo this time: 15...♘c6? 16.♖c3 b6 17.b4!+- and Black's position is in ruins.) 16.axb6 cxb6 17.♖d3+! (The black king will be in trouble all over the board. 17.e6+?! was clearly worse, giving away needlessly a strong pawn Balcerak – Grabarczyk, Polanica Zdroj 2000) 17...♘c7 18.♝d6 ♖e6 19.b4! cxb4 20.c3! b3 (20...♝xe5? 21.♝b5+-; 20...a5 21.cxb4 axb4 22.♖d2 b3 23.♝d4+-) 21.♝d4±.

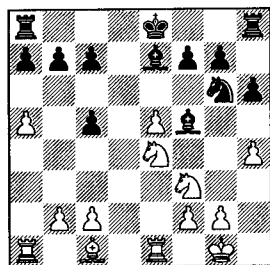
15.h4!

White intends to chase the black knight.

15...♖e7

15...h5 16.♖g5! Black has solved one of the problems – the knight is safe. There appeared another problem, though – the white bishop now became too powerful and Black's development is seriously hampered. 16...♖g4 (16...♖b8 17.a6 b6 18.♝c3 c6 19.♝e4 ♖e6 20.♖ad1 ♖d5 21.♖e3 c4 22.♝d4 ♖b4 23.♝b5±) 17.♝fd2. Black can now choose between a lot of moves, and none of them satisfactory: 1) 17...b6 18.axb6 cxb6 19.♝c4 ♖e6 20.♝xb6 ♖b8 21.♝a4+-; 2) 17...♝xe5? 18.♝c4 f6 (18...♝xc4?? 19.♝f6+ ♘d8 20.♖e8#) 19.♝xf6+ gxf6 20.♖xf6 ♖g8 21.♝xe5+-; 3) 17...♘d7 18.f4 ♘c6 19.♖e3 ♖e8 20.♖c3 ♘d5 21.b4. The black king is quite uncomfortable in the

very middle of the board. In fact its march to d5 was a logical consequence of what happened until now in the opening stage. 21...f6 22.♖d3+ ♘c6 23.exf6 ♖f5 24.b5+ ♘xb5 25.♖e1 ♘c6 26.f7 ♖e6 27.c4 ♖d6 28.♝xd6 ♖xd3 29.♝c8 a6 30.♖e6+ ♘d7 (30...♖d6 31.♝e7+ ♝xe7 32.♖xe7 ♖f5 33.♖xd6+ cxd6 34.f8♗ ♖xf8 35.♖xf8+-) 31.♖e8 ♖f5 32.♝f3 b6 33.axb6 cxb6 34.♝xb6+ ♘c6 35.♝d5 a5 36.♝e3 ♖d7 37.f5+-.

**16.♝d6+!± cxd6 17.exd6 ♖e6**

White did not win any material as a result of his combination. His positional achievements are not strikingly obvious either. The essence of White's deep and effective idea is the quite unstable and vulnerable position of the black king. It will have to survive an imminent severe onslaught. Or 17...♖xc2 18.dxe7 ♝xe7 19.♖e3 ♝c6 20.♖ac1! ♖g6 21.a6 bxa6 22.♖xc5 ♝d8 23.♖d4+ ♝e6 24.♖xg7 ♖h7 25.♖f6+-; 23...♘f8 24.h5±.

18.dxe7 ♝xe7 19.♝e5 ♝f5

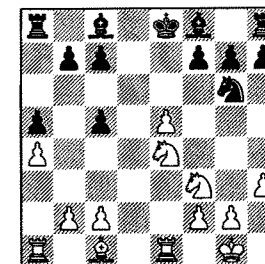
19...♖d8 20.♖e3 ♖d5 21.♝d3 b6 22.axb6 axb6 23.b4 cxb4

24.♖xb6+-.

20.♖a4!

This is another non-standard development of the rook! The Berlin endgame is abundant with plenty of beautiful original ideas of attack and defence.

20...♘e7 21.♖f4 ♖ac8 22.b4! b6 23.bxc5 bxc5 24.♖a3 g5 25.♖fe4 ♝xh4 26.♝xf7 ♘xf7 27.♖xe6 ♖he8 28.♖xe8 ♖xe8 29.♖xe8 ♘xe8



held the advantage in some of the games! The most recent example is Korneev – Sandipan, Senden 2002.

14.♖a3!

We suggest this energetic move that hasn't been tested in practice yet.

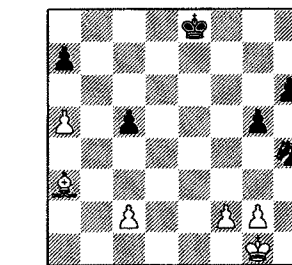
14...h6

Or 14...♖d7 15.♝eg5 c4 (15...h6 16.e6 fxe6 17.♝xe6±) 16.e6! fxe6 17.♝xe6! ♖xa3 (17...♖xe6 18.♖ae3±) 18.♝xc7±.

Black creates irreparable weaknesses with 14...c4?! 15.♖a1! (The rook retreats calmly to its initial square and the knight on f3 will soon head for the wonderful d4-outpost.) 15...♖b4 (15...♖f5 16.♝d4±) 16.c3 ♖f8 17.♝d4±.

14...♖a6 15.♖d3 ♖f5 16.g4 ♖xe4 17.♖xe4 ♖e6 18.♖f4 h5 19.♖g3 hxg4 20.hxg4 ♖e7 21.♝d2 ♖h4 22.f4 ♖xg3 23.♖xg3± This is a quite standard situation. White achieved a big advantage with his kingside pawn advance.

14...b6 15.♖d3 ♖f5 (After 15...♖b7 White attacks with the already familiar motive: 16.♝f6+ gxf6. There is no other move: –

**30.a6!+-**

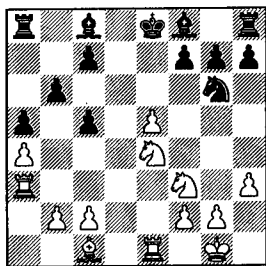
This is practically decisive. The endgame now is an easy win for White. 30...♘d7 (30...c4 31.♖c5+-) 31.♖xc5 ♘c6 32.♖xa7 ♘b5 33.♖c5! ♘xa6 34.♖f8 g4 (34...h5 35.♖e7+-) 35.♖xh6+- Adams – Almasi, Las Vegas 1999. This important game is something like a huge milestone in the theory of the Berlin endgame.

d2) 13...a5

(diagram)

This contemporary position was played five times recently and amazingly White didn't win it even once. As a rule White played some good moves and

16...♖e7?? 17.♞d7+ ♖e6 18.♜g5+ ♖f5 19.g4# – 17.exf6+ ♖e7 18.♜e5 ♜f8 19.fxe7 ♜e6 20.♜g4 ♖xe7 21.♖g5+ ♖e8 22.f4 h5 23.♜e5 ♖f8 24.♜xf7+-) 16.g4 ♖e6 17.♜eg5 ♖e7 18.♜xe6 fxe6 19.♖g2 ♞d8 (19...h5 20.♜g5±) 20.♞xd8+ ♖xd8 21.♖g3 ♖d7 22.♞d1+ ♖c6 23.♖g5 h6 (23...♖xg5 24.♜xg5 ♜xe5 25.♜xe6 ♜c4 26.b3 ♜d6 27.♜xg7+-) 24.♖xe7 ♜xe7 25.h4±.



15.♞d3!±

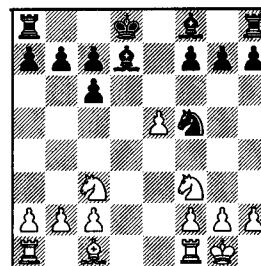
Black has certain problem to complete his development, for example: 15...♞a6 (Black is trying to imitate White developing his rook in this original fashion, but it is not enough to equalize.) 16.♖e3 ♖f5 17.♜fd2 ♞b6 18.b3

♞c6 (18...♜xe5?! 19.♖f4 ♞e6 (19...f6 20.♖xe5 fxe5 21.♞d5±; 19...♜xd3?? 20.♜f6+ ♖d8 21.♞e8#) 20.♖xe5 ♞xe5 21.♞d5 f6 (21...♞xd5?? 22.♜f6+ ♖d8 23.♞e8#) 22.♜xf6+ gxf6 23.♞dx5+ fxe5 24.♞xe5+-) 19.♞c3 b6 20.f4 ♖e7 21.♞d1 ♜h4 22.g4 ♜f3+ 23.♜xf3 ♖xe4 24.♜d2 ♖d5 25.f5 c4 26.bxc4 h5 27.g5+- or 15...♖d7 16.c4! (White is often sacrificing a pawn to create an attack against the enemy king in this line and the lack of queens on the board seems to be immaterial. White has to be cautious nevertheless; otherwise he is risking a lot.) 16...♖xa4 (16...♞a6 17.♞ed1! ♖xa4 18.b3 ♖c6 19.♞d8+ ♖e7 20.♜xc5 ♞b6 21.♖a3+-) 17.♜f6+ gxf6 18.exf6+ ♖e7 19.♜e5 ♞h7 20.b3! ♖c6 21.♜xc6 bxc6 22.♖a3 ♞d8 23.♞xd8+ ♖xd8 24.fxe7 ♜xe7 25.♖xc5+-). We have to point out that the line with 10...♜e7 is in the process of development. Both sides have plenty of resources at their disposal and only the future GM practice will help clarify the issue.

Chapter 29

1.e4 e5 2.♜f3 ♜c6 3.♖b5 ♜f6 4.0-0 ♜xe4 5.d4 ♜d6 6.♖xc6 dxc6 7.dxe5 ♜f5 8.♞xd8+ ♖xd8 9.♜c3 ♖d7

Berlin Endgame



This natural developing move was played for the first time in this position in 1996 according to the database. It looks quite amazing to understand why Black never tried it before? The move became popular quickly and now comprises one of the intensely analysed and frequently played lines of the Berlin endgame.

10.♞d1 ♖c8

The king must go to c8. The e8-square is “reserved” for the bishop! In case Black really plays 10...♖e8, White can follow with the simple 11.b3.

11.♜g5 ♖e8 12.b3!

White used to hesitate for a long time about what the best disposition of forces was. Nowadays it has been proved that the fianchettoing of the bishop is the

right decision.

12...b6

Black has tried some other moves here:

Black can repel the knight immediately: 12...h6 13.♜ge4 ♖d7 ♜e7 14.♖b2 ♜g6 15.♜e2 ♖d7 16.f3±;

After 12...c5 White should better play 13.♖b2 h6 14.♜ge4 ♖c6 15.♜d5. As you can see White’s knight has occupied that wonderful outpost and that emphasizes the drawbacks of Black’s move (12...c5). Black’s position is still defensible, though 15...b6 16.c4 ♖b7 17.♞d3±;

12...a5 13.♖b2 b6 14.♞d3 ♖e7 15.♜ge4 ♖d7 16.a4 ♞d8 17.♞ad1 ♜h4 18.♜e2 ♖f5 19.♞xd8+ ♖xd8 20.♜2g3 ♖g6 21.f3 (This idea is quite possible. White is not in a hurry to start his kingside pawn advance, but solidifies the knight on e4 first. This can be very effective whenever Black has no active ideas at his disposal.) 21...♜f5 22.♜xf5 ♖xf5 23.e6! (We have already seen this idea of exchanging pawns. After the loss of the g7-pawn, Black’s pawn structure on the kingside is con-

siderably weakened.) 23...♙e6 24.♙xg7 ♙e7 (24...f5 25.♘f2±) 25.♙f6 ♙c5+ 26.♘xc5 bxc5 27.c4 ♙f5 28.g4 ♙c2 29.♞d8+ ♜b7 30.♞d2! ♙b1 31.♞b2 ♙g6 32.f4 ♙e4 33.♜f2 ♞e8 34.f5 (White's kingside pawn advance wins here as usual.) 34...h5 35.♞e2 ♜c8 36.gxh5 ♜d7 37.♞xe4! 1–0 Sutovsky – Grabarczyk, Ohrid 2001. It becomes obvious that White will have an extra bishop at the end. Black will have to give a whole rook for the h-pawn. 37...♞xe4 38.♜f3 and then 39.h6, and the pawn proceeds to h8;

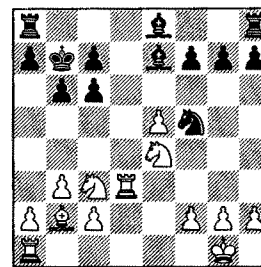
12...♙e7 is a quite popular line too. 13.♘ge4 b6 (This is a fashionable position.) 14.h3 (14.♞d3 ♜b7 15.♙b2 leads to the main line by transposition. The move 14.h3 was played by the renowned expert of the Berlin endgame for White – GM V.Bologan and helped him to beat a very strong opponent, so we decided to show you his game in order to acquaint you better with the fine points of this position. The theory of this line is in the process of formation, so no one can tell what line will be considered as best for White in the near future.) 14...♜b7 15.♙b2 h5 (15...♞d8 16.♞xd8 ♙xd8 17.♞d1 ♙e7 18.f3 c5 19.♘d5 ♙c6 20.♘xe7 ♙xe4 21.fxe4 ♘xe7 22.e6 f6 23.♞d7 ♞e8 24.g4 h6 25.♜f2 g5 26.♙xf6 ♘g8 27.♙e5 ♞xe6 28.♞xc7+ ♜a6 29.♙g7 ♞xe4 30.♞c8 ♘e7 31.♞h8+; 18...h5 19.♜f2 h4 20.♙c1 c5 21.♘d5 ♙c6 22.♘xe7 ♘xe7 23.

♘g5 ♞f8 24.c4± The weakness of the f7 and h4-pawns is perceptible.) 16.g3 c5 (16...♞d8 17.♞xd8 ♙xd8 18.♞d1 ♜c8, Teran Alvarez – Rizouk, Coria del Rio 2003, 19.f3 ♙d7 20.♞d3 ♘h6 21.g4 hxg4 22.hxg4 ♙e7 23.♜g2±) 17.♘d5 (Black surrenders the d5-outpost in order to acquire some more space for his pieces. White keeps a strong initiative with an energetic play.) 17...♙c6 18.c4 ♞ad8 19.♞d2! ♞he8 (White should have in mind Black's 19...♘d4, which can be met with 20.♙xd4 cxd4 – 20...♙xd5? 21.cxd5 cxd4 22.♞xd4± – 21.♞xd4 ♙a3 22.♞e1 h4 23.g4 ♙b2 24.♞d3 ♙xe5 25.♘g5 ♞d7 26.♞xe5 f6 27.♞e6 fxg5? 28.♞xc6 ♜xc6 29.♘b4+ ♜c5 30.♞xd7 ♜xb4 31.♞xc7+; 27...♙xd5 28.♞xd5 ♞xd5 29.cxd5 fxg5 30.♞e5±) 20.♞ad1 ♞d7 (Black has better chances of survival after 20...♙f8 21.♘g5 ♞d7 22.♜h2 ♘d4 23.f4 ♙xd5 24.cxd5 f6 25.♙xd4 cxd4 26.♘f3 fxe5 27.fxe5 ♞xd5 – or 27...♙c5 28.b4 ♙xb4 29.♞xd4± – 28.♞xd4 ♞xd4 29.♞xd4 ♜c6 30.g4 hxg4 31.♞xg4 ♜d5 32.♜g3 c5 33.♜f4 ♞e7 34.♞g2 ♞f7+ 35.♜e3 ♙e7 36.h4±. Black's suffering continues. White is going to displace the black king from the centre with checks and then occupy the e4-square with his own king. Still that was Black's best choice.) 21.f4 ♙d8 (21...h4 22.g4 ♘g3 23.♘xg3 hxg3 24.g5 a5 25.♜g2±) 22.g4 hxg4 23.hxg4 ♘h6 24.g5! (White opts for such disposition of pawns on the kingside

often, but here Black fails to exploit the weakening of the f5 and g4-squares.) 24...♘f5 (24...♘g4 25.♞e1 ♞h8 26.f5 ♙xd5 27.cxd5 ♞h3 28.e6 fxe6 29.fxe6 ♞e7 30.d6 cxd6 31.♘xd6+ ♜c6 32.♘f5+–) 25.♞h2 ♙e7 (25...f6 26.gxf6 gxf6 27.♘exf6 ♙xf6 28.exf6±) 26.♜f2 ♞ed8 27.♘g3 ♘d4 (27...♘xg3 28.♜xg3 ♙xd5 29.cxd5 ♞xd5 30.♞xd5 ♞xd5 31.♞h7 ♙f8 32.♞h8 ♞d8 33.f5 ♜c6 34.♜g4 ♜d7 35.♜h5±) 28.♙xd4 ♙xd5 29.cxd5 ♞xd5 30.♘f5 ♙f8 31.♞h7. White finally managed to penetrate the enemy kingside and exploit the weaknesses there. The material is still equal, but Black's fate is sealed. 31...cxd4 32.♘xg7 ♞a5 33.a4 d3 34.♘f5 b5 35.♞xf7 bxa4 36.bxa4 ♞xa4 37.♜f3 d2 38.e6 ♙c5 39.e7 ♞d3+ 40.♜e2 1–0 Bologan – P.Nielsen, Bled 2002. This was an excellent win. We have to admit that GM V.Bologan has contributed a lot to the theory of the Berlin Endgame for White and had plenty of beautiful and instructive victories.

13.♙b2 ♙e7

Black can also play: 13...♜b7 14.♞d3 ♙e7 15.♘ge4



There are two basic possibilities now:

1) The line 15...f6 seems to be too risky. After 16.exf6 gxf6 17.♘e2 (We have already seen the same pawn structure in the game Leko – Kramnik, see the main line). Black's pieces are a bit more active indeed, but the weak pawns need additional protection and that is more relevant. 17...♞f8 18.♘f4 ♘d6 19.♘g3 ♙f7 20.♞e1 ♞fe8 21.♞de3 ♙d8 (21...♙f8 22.♙xf6 ♞xe3 23.fxe3±) 22.♞xe8 ♙xe8 23.c4 ♙f7 24.♘e6 f5 25.c5 White finally gained access to the enemy weaknesses. 25...♘e4 (25...♙e6 26.♞xe6 bxc5 27.♙e5 ♜c8 28.♙xd6 ♜d7 29.♞h6 cxd6 30.♘xf5 d5 31.g4 a5 32.h4 a4 33.♞xh7+ ♜e6 34.♞h6+ ♜e5 35.♞xc6 axb3 36.axb3 ♜f4 37.♞xc5 ♙b6 38.♞xd5 ♞a2 39.♘e3+–) 26.♘xe4 ♙xe6 27.♘d6+ cxd6 28.♞xe6 dxc5 29.♞h6 ♙c7 30.♞xh7 ♞d8 31.g4! This beautiful move is defending against the checkmate on the first rank and helps create a passed pawn. 31...fxg4 (31...♞d5 32.gxf5 ♞xf5 33.h4 b5 34.h5 c4 35.h6 cxb3 36.axb3 ♞h5 37.♞e7 ♞xh6 38.♙e5+–) 32.♙e5 ♞c8 33.f3 ♜b8 34.♞xc7 ♞xc7 35.♜f2 ♜c8 (35... gxf3 36.h4+–) 36.♙xc7 ♜xc7 37.fxg4+–;

2) 15...c5 16.♘d5 ♙c6 17.c4 ♞he8 18.♞f3! (GM A.Grischuk is forcing the black knight to occupy a quite unfavourable square with this rather original manoeuvre, instead of proceeding with the schematic pawn ad-

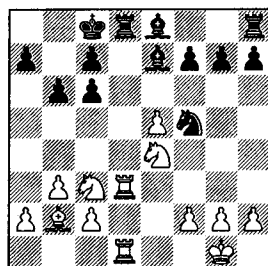
vance. It is quite often that the habitual “common sense” play is not the key to success in the Berlin endgame.) 18...♞h6 19.h3 ♞ad8 20.♞d1 g6 21.g4 (White’s pawn offensive is very effective now, while the black knight is in a helpless situation.) 21...♜h4 22.♞fd3 ♞g8 (22...f5 23.♞ef6 ♞e6 24.♞f4 ♞xd3 25.♞xd3 ♞e7 26.f3±) 23.f4 h6 (23...f5 24.♞ef6 ♞xf6 25.♞xf6 ♞xd3 26.♞xd3±) 24.♞d2 h5 (24...f5 25.♞f3 ♜e7 26.gxf5 gxf5 27.♚f2±. The threat of the white’s rooks penetrating down the open g-file, is forcing Black to additional concessions.) 25.♞f3 ♜e7 26.♚f2 hxg4 27.hxg4 ♞d7 28.♞h1 (Black managed to avoid the opening of the g-file, but the h-file spells disaster for Black as well.) 28...♜d8 29.♞h7 a5 30.♞d2 a4 31.f5 gxf5 32.gxf5 ♞e7 33.♞xe7 ♞exe7 34.f6 ♞xd2+ 35.♞xd2 ♞d7 36.♚e3 ♚c8 37.♞g7 ♚b7 38.♜c3 ♚a6 39.♞e4 a3 40.♞g5 1–0 Grischuk – Morozovich, Wijk aan Zee 2002. Black’s f7-pawn is lost and that ends the game.

14.♞ge4 ♚b7

14...h5 15.♞d3 ♜d7, Nyysti – Ferguson, Halkidiki 2002, 16. ♞ad1! ♜e6 (16...♞d8 17.g3! ♜e6 18.h4 ♚b7 19.♞e2 ♜d5 20.♞c4c3 ♜e6 21.♞f4 g5 22.♞xd8 ♞xd8 23. ♞xd8 ♜xd8 24.♞xe6 fxe6 25.hxg5 ♜xg5 26.♞e4±) 17.g3 g5 18.h3 ♚b7 19.♞e2 ♞ad8 20.♜c1 ♞xd3 21.♞xd3 ♞g8 22.f3 c5 23.♚f2 c4 24.♞d1 cxb3 25.axb3 c5 26.g4 hxg4 27.hxg4 ♞h4 28.c4 b5 29.

♜e3 ♚c6 30.cxb5+ ♚xb5 31.♞2c3 ♚b4 32.♞d5 ♜xd5 33.♞xd5 ♚xb3 34.♞d7 ♞g6 35.♞xa7±; 15...♚b7 16.♞ad1 ♞h6 17.♞e2 c5 18.c4 ♜c6 19.♞4g3 ♞xg3 20.♞xg3± I.Herrera – Rizouk, Spain 2002.

15.♞d3 ♞d8 16.♞ad1



16...♞xd3

We suggest you answered 16...♚c8 with 17.♞e2! (This is an idea of GM A.Bezgodov. Its essence can be summarized in short like that: the move h2-h3 is not always favourable for White. The plan g2-g3, h2-h4 and ♞e2-f4 is also possible and interesting. White’s other tries did not produce too much until now, for example: 17.h3?! h5 18.♜c1 ♞xd3 19.♞xd3 h4 20.♜g5 ♞h5 21.♞f3 ♞d4 22.♜xe7 ♞xf3+ 23.gxf3 ♞xe5= Rowson – Miles, Scarborough 2001; 19...♜d7 20.♞e2 ♞e8 21.♜b2 a5 22.g4 hxg4 23. hxg4 ♞h4 24.f3 ♞g6; 22.g3 c5= Bakre – Aleksandrov, Calcutta 2002) 17...♞xd3 (17...h5 18.g3 c5 19.♞f4 ♞xd3 20.♞xd3 ♜c6 21.f3 g5 22. ♞d5±) 18.♞xd3 ♜d7 19.g3 h5 20. ♞f4 ♞h6 21.h4 c5 22.c4 ♜c6 23.f3 a5 24.a4±.

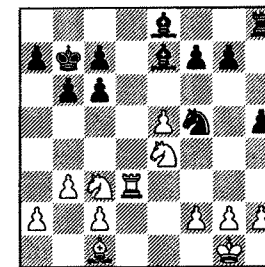
17.♞xd3 h5

17...c5 (This is a logical move, but it has not been tested in practice, so here is our analysis.) 18.♞d5 ♜c6 19.c4 ♞e8 20.g4! ♞h6 (Black must surely feel reluctant to play so passively, but here this move is the least of evils. The pawn sacrifice: 20... ♞d4 might seem attractive with the idea to activate the bishops. 21.♜xd4 cxd4 22.♞xd4 ♜a3. White in his stead can keep and even increase his advantage with a pawn sacrifice of his own: 23.f4 ♜b2 24.♞d3 f6 25.♞exf6! Capturing with the other knight is just the same. 25...gxf6 26.♞xf6 ♞e7 27.♚f2 ♜c1 28.♚g3 ♚c8 29.g5 ♜d7 30.♞xd7 ♞xd7 31.♞xd7 ♚xd7 32.♚f3 ♚e6 33.♚e4+-) 21.f3 a5 22.a4. Black’s eventual counterplay on the queenside was stopped in its tracks and now White can improve his position at ease, for example: 22... ♞g8 23.♚g2 h6 24.♚g3 ♜f8 25.♞f4 ♞e7 26.e6 f6 27.♞d5 ♚c8 28.f4 ♞xd5 29.cxd5 ♜b7 30.♚f3 ♜a6 31.♞d1 c4 32.f5 cxb3 33.d6 cxd6 34.♞xd6+ ♜xd6 35.♞xd6 ♜b7+ 36.♚f4 b5 37.♞d7 bxa4 38.♞xg7 ♞d8 39.♜xf6 a3 40.♜xd8 b2 41.♞g8 ♜c6 42.♜f6+ ♚b7 43.♜e5 ♚a7 44.♞b8 a2 45.♜xb2 ♚xb8 46.f6+-.

18.♜c1±

(diagram)

White is better, because he can play actively both in the centre and on the kingside. He can rely to create a dangerous passed pawn on the kingside, while



Black is in fact reduced to only defending. His basic hope is to exploit the strength of the two bishops with time.

18...♚c8!?

Black is simply developing his light-squared bishop once again ensuring the d7-square for it. White hasn’t proved his advantage in that position yet.

Black is slightly worse after 18...c5 19.♞d5 ♜c6 20.c4 ♞e8 21.♜b2 a5 22.a4 h4 23.f3±.

18...f6 This is a risky move. Black’s pawns on the kingside become very weak and the hopes for counterplay are futile. 19.exf6 gxf6 20.♞e2 c5 21.♜b2 ♞f8 22. ♞f4 ♜c6 23.f3 ♞h4 24.♞d5 f5 25. ♞ef6 ♜d6 26.g3 ♞g6 27.♞xh5 White’s position is so strong that he can afford to win a pawn in numerous ways. 27...♞e8 28.♚f2 ♞e5 29.♜xe5 ♜xe5 30.♞hf4 ♜d4+ 31.♚f1 a5 32.c3 ♜g7 33.c4 ♜d4 34.a4 ♞h8 35.h4± Leko – Kramnik, Budapest 2001.

19.g3!

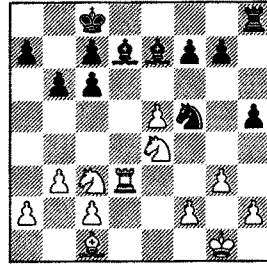
This is another idea of GM A.Bezgodov, which promises White excellent prospects. 19.g3 is a multi-purpose move with which White’s pawn struc-

ture on the kingside becomes more flexible and mobile. White is not afraid now of the blocking h5-h4 pawn move, because of the simple g3-g4 and the change of the pawn formation on the kingside is definitely in favour of White. The white king steps on g2 and becomes an active piece supporting White's pawn offence effectively. White can counter Black's eventual threats along the a8-h1 diagonal with the solid f2-f3. The line 19.♔g5 provokes simplifications favourable only for Black – 19...♙d7 20.h3 ♖e8 21.♙xe7 ♗xe7 22.♗g5 ♗g6 23.♗xf7 ½ Svidler – P.Nielsen, Bremen 2002, and Black's counterplay proved to be enough for a draw.

19...♙d7

This is a logical and solid move. The other possibility is advantageous for White 19...h4?! 20.g4 ♗h6 21.h3 f5 (Black will have no counterplay without this move. The same applies to 21...f6) 22.exf6 gxf6 23.♖f3 ♙g6 24.♗xf6 ♙xc2 25.♗fe4 ♗d7 26.g5 ♗g8 (26...♖g8 27.♗f1+–) 27.♖e3±; 19...c5 20.♗d5 ♙c6 21.c4 ♖d8 22.♙b2 a5 23.a4. Black can not organize any counterplay. See an example line in which White's road to success is paved with a pawn sacrifice: 23...♙f8 24.♗g5! ♖d7 25.e6 fxe6 26.♗xe6 ♙d6 27.h3 g6 28.f4 ♙xd5 29.cxd5 ♖f7 30.g4 hxg4 31.hxg4 ♗h6 32.f5 gxf5 33.g5 ♗g8 (after the pseudo-active 33...♗g4? 34.g6

♖e7 35.♖h3+–. Black will have to give a whole rook for the passed pawn) 34.g6 ♖e7 35.♖h3 ♖e8 36.♖h8 ♗d7 37.♗f2 ♖c8 38.♖h7+ ♗e7 39.♙f6 ♖g8 40.♗f3 c6 41.♗f4+–.



20.♗g2!±

1) 20...h4 21.g4 h3+ (21...♗h6 22.f3±) 22.♗f3 ♗h4+ 23.♗g3 ♗g6 24.f4 ♙h4+ 25.♗f3 (Black fails to harm White's king in any way.) 25...c5 26.♗d5 ♙c6 27.c4 ♖d8 28.♙b2 ♗e7 29.♗ec3 ♗xd5 30.♗xd5 ♙d7 31.f5±;

2) 20...♙e6 21.♗e2 ♖d8 22.♗f4 ♖xd3 (22...♙d5 23.f3 g6 24.♗c3 ♙e6 25.♖xd8+ ♗xd8 26.♗xe6+ fxe6 27.♗e4 a5 28.c3 b5 29.g4 hxg4 30.fxg4 ♗g7 31.♗g3±; 23...h4 24.♗xd5 cxd5 25.♗g5 hxg3 26.hxg3 ♗h6 27.e6±) 23.cxd3 g6 24.♗xe6 fxe6 25.♙b2 c5 26.h3 a5 27.g4 hxg4 28.hxg4 ♗h6 29.♗g3 ♗f7 30.f4 ♗d8 31.♗f3 ♗c6 32.a3±. The endgame is definitely in White's favour. His king marches to e4 and he pushes f4-f5 at some appropriate moment. The possible check creates additional problems only for Black. 32...♗d4+ 33.♙xd4 cxd4 34.a4 ♗d7 (34...c5

35.♗f6 ♗c7 36.♗e4 ♗c6 37.f5 exf5+ 38.gxf5 gxf5+ 39.♗xf5 ♙d8 40.♗e6+–) 35.♗f6+ ♗c6 36.♗e4 ♗c5 37.♗e8 c6 38.♗c7+–;

3) 20...♖e8 21.♙b2 ♙d8 22.f4 c5 (22...h4 23.g4 ♗h6 24.h3 f5 25.exf6 gxf6 26.♗d2 ♙e7 27.♗f3 ♙d6 28.♙c1 ♖g8 29.♗e4 ♙e7 30.♗f2 ♙f5 31.♖d2 ♙d6 32.♖e2+–) 23.♗d5 h4 (23...c6 24.♗e3 ♗xe3+

25.♖xe3 ♙c7 26.♗g5 f6 27.♗f3 ♙f5 28.c4 ♙b1 29.a4 ♗d7 30.♗f2 ♖e6 31.♗h4 fxe5 32.♙xe5 ♙xe5 33.fxe5 g5 34.♗f3 g4 35.♗e1 ♖e8 36.♗g2 ♖f8+ 37.♗f4 h4 38.♖e2 ♗e7 39.♖d2±) 24.g4 ♗d4 25.♙xd4 cxd4 26.♗f3± White's king became a dominant piece and that brought immediate results – Black is losing a pawn.

Conclusion about the Berlin Endgame

This is one of the ancient methods of defence in the Ruy Lopez, which became quite popular nowadays. Black exchanges queens early, but this is not ending his problems. He has to consider the following:

1. *Black's king is deprived from castling and becomes a target for an attack quite often.*

2. *Black has difficulties with the completion of his development, because of his problems with the king. The hardship of connecting the rooks makes only matters worse.*

3. *The knight on f5 is rather unstable. Black often loses additional time to redeploy it to better squares. The attempt to defend against the threat g2-g4 with the prophylactic move h7-h5 creates more weaknesses on the kingside.*

4. *White's pawn majority on the kingside is the last, but not the least factor in this position.*

The exchanges are usually in favour of White in most of the cases, because the importance of the future passed pawn on the kingside increases. Black's position has also some merits that White should not underestimate, if he wants to achieve a positive result. It is very solid and Black's chances to turn the tables after even a minute imprecision by White are considerable. White should not be content with the achievement of certain small advantages. He must keep his concentration and intensity till the successful end.

What are White's plans to press his indisputable opening advantage home?

1. *White usually has his hands free to exploit his pawn majority on the kingside and create a winning passed pawn there if Black*

defends primitively in some old-fashioned way. White usually needs then to exchange some pieces first. The easiest endgames to win are the knight endgame and naturally the king and pawn endgame. It is something like the exchange variation of the Ruy Lopez, but even more favourable for White.

2. White can also activate his pawn majority on the kingside in positions with many pieces on the board. The move h2-h3 is tremendously crucial then and most of the games and analyses that we have provided are based on it.

3. White also has another method of playing which is the most enjoyable for many players – the direct attack. We have given you plenty of examples and there is an abundance of methods for attack too.

It is not quite easy to say how Black should play to create most problems for White. We believe that the players that have studied our work thoroughly should not fear anything with White.

Index of Variations

Part 1. Rare System; Latvian Gambit; Philidor's Defence ... 9

Chapter 1 1.e4 e5 2.♘f3

a) 2... f6	10
b) 2... ♗c5	13
c) 2... ♗d6	14
d) 2... d5	15
e) 2... ♖e7	18

Chapter 2 1.e4 e5 2.♘f3 f5 3.♘e5

3... ♖e7; 3... ♘c6	20
3... ♗f6 4.♘c4 fe 5.♘c3 c6; 5... ♘e7; 5... ♖e6; 5... ♗g6. ...	21
3... ♗f6 4.♘c4 fe 5.♘c3 ♗f7 6.♘e3	22

Chapter 3 1.e4 e5 2.♘f3 d6 3.d4

a) 3... ♗g4	24
b) 3... f5 4.♘c3	25
b1) 4.♘c3 ed	25
b2) 4.♘c3 ♘f6	26
b3) 4.♘c3 fe	27
c) 3... ♘d7	28

Chapter 4 1.e4 e5 2.♘f3 d6 3.d4 ed 4.♘d4

a) 4... g6 5.♘c3 ♗g7 6.♗e3 ♘e7	30
a1) 6.♗e3 ♘f6 7.♖d2 0-0 8.0-0-0 ♘c6 ...	31
a2) 6.♗e3 ♘f6 7.♖d2 0-0 8.0-0-0 ♗e8 ...	33
b) 4... ♘f6 5.♘c3 ♗e7 6.♗f4 0-0 7.♖d2	34
b1) 7.♖d2 d5	34
b2) 7.♖d2 a6	37
b3) 7.♖d2 c6	38
b4) 7.♖d2 ♘c6	39

Chapter 5 1.e4 e5 2.♘f3 d6 3.d4 ♘f6 4.de ♘e4 5.♙d5

5... f5 41

a) 5... ♘c5 6.♗g5 ♗e7..... 41

b) 5... ♘c5 6.♗g5 ♙d7..... 44

Part 2. Petroff Defence 47

Chapter 6 1.e4 e5 2.♘f3 ♘f6 3.♘e5

3... ♘e4; 3... ♙e7..... 48

3... d6 4.♘f3 ♘e4 5.d4 ♗e7 6.♗d3..... 49

Chapter 7 1.e4 e5 2.♘f3 ♘f6 3.♘e5 d6 4.♘f3 ♘e4 5.d4 d5 6.♗d3

6... ♘c6 7.0-0 ♗g4 8.c4 ♗f3..... 51

a) 6... ♘c6 7.0-0 ♗g4 8.c4 ♘f6 9.♘c3 ♗e7..... 52

b) 6... ♘c6 7.0-0 ♗g4 8.c4 ♘f6 9.♘c3 ♗f3..... 53

Chapter 8 1.e4 e5 2.♘f3 ♘f6 3.♘e5 d6 4.♘f3 ♘e4 5.d4 d5 6.♗d3
♗d6 7.0-0 0-0 8.c4

8... ♗g4; 8... ♘f6; 8... ♗e6 56

8... c6 9.♙c2 ♘f6; 9... f5..... 57

8... c6 9.♙c2 ♗e8 10.♘c3..... 58

Chapter 9 1.e4 e5 2.♘f3 ♘f6 3.♘e5 d6 4.♘f3 ♘e4 5.d4 d5 6.♗d3
♗d6 7.0-0 0-0 8.c4 c6 9.♙c2 ♘a6 10.a3

a) 10... f5 59

b) 10... ♗e8 60

c) 10... ♗g4..... 61

Chapter 10 1.e4 e5 2.♘f3 ♘f6 3.♘e5 d6 4.♘f3 ♘e4 5.d4 d5 6.♗d3
♗e7 7.0-0

7... ♘d6; 7... ♘f6; 7... ♗g4..... 64

a) 7... 0-0..... 64

b) 7... ♗f5..... 65

Chapter 11 1.e4 e5 2.♘f3 ♘f6 3.♘e5 d6 4.♘f3 ♘e4 5.d4 d5 6.♗d3
♗e7 7.0-0 ♘c6 8.c4

8... ♗e6; 8... 0-0..... 67

8... ♗g4..... 68

a) 8... ♘f6 9.h3 ♘b4; 9... ♗e6..... 69

a1) 9.h3 0-0 10.♘c3 dc..... 69

a2) 9.h3 0-0 10.♘c3 ♘b4..... 71

b) 8... ♘b4 9.♗e2 ♗e6..... 73

b1) 9.♗e2 dc..... 73

b2) 9.♗e2 0-0 10.♘c3 without 10... ♗f5; 10... ♗e6..... 74

Chapter 12 1.e4 e5 2.♘f3 ♘f6 3.♘e5 d6 4.♘f3 ♘e4 5.d4 d5 6.♗d3
♗e7 7.0-0 ♘c6 8.c4 ♘b4 9.♗e2 0-0 10.♘c3 ♗f5 11.a3
♘c3 12.bc ♘c6 13.♗e1

a) 13... dc..... 76

b) 13... ♗e8..... 77

c) 13... ♗e6..... 78

d) 13... ♗f6 14.♗f4 ♘e7..... 79

d1) 14.♗f4 ♗c8..... 79

d2) 14.♗f4 dc..... 79

d3) 14.♗f4 ♘a5..... 80

Chapter 13 1.e4 e5 2.♘f3 ♘f6 3.♘e5 d6 4.♘f3 ♘e4 5.d4 d5 6.♗d3
♗e7 7.0-0 ♘c6 8.c4 ♘b4 9.♗e2 0-0 10.♘c3 ♗e6 11.♘e5

11... ♘c3; 11... ♗d6..... 82

a) 11... c5 12.♘e4 de 13.d5..... 82

a1) 13.d5 ♗d6..... 83

a2) 13.d5 ♙c7..... 84

a3) 13.d5 ♗c8..... 85

b) 11... f6 12.♘f3 ♘c3; 12... ♗c8; 12... f5; 12... ♙d7..... 86

b1) 12.♘f3 c5..... 87

b2) 12.♘f3 ♗e8..... 87

b3) 12.♘f3 ♘h8..... 88

Part 3. Ruy Lopez without 3...a6. 90

Chapter 14 1.e4 e5 2.♟f3 ♘c6 3.♙b5	
3... g5; 3... ♙d6	91
3... ♗f6	92
a) 3... ♙b4	92
b) 3... ♘e7	93
c) 3... f6	95
Chapter 15 1.e4 e5 2.♟f3 ♘c6 3.♙b5 g6 4.d4	
4... ♙g7; 4... ♘d4	98
4... ed 5.c3	99
Chapter 16 1.e4 e5 2.♟f3 ♘c6 3.♙b5 ♘d4 4.♘d4 ed 5.0-0	
5... g6	103
5... ♘e7; 5... h5	104
a) 5... ♙c5	104
b) 5... c6	105
Chapter 17 1.e4 e5 2.♟f3 ♘c6 3.♙b5 d6 4.d4 ♙d7 5.♘c3	
5... ♘ge7	108
a) 5... ♘f6	108
b) 5... ed	110
Chapter 18 1.e4 e5 2.♟f3 ♘c6 3.♙b5 ♙c5 4.c3	
4... d6; 4... d5	112
4... ♗f6; 4... ♙b6; 4... a6	113
4... ♗e7	114
a) 4... f5	115
b) 4... ♘ge7	116
Chapter 19 1.e4 e5 2.♟f3 ♘c6 3.♙b5 f5 4.♘c3	
4... d6; 4... a6; 4... ♙c5	119
a) 4... ♙b4	119

b) 4... ♘d4 5.ef	121
b1) 5.ef ♘b5	121
b2) 5.ef c6	123
c) 4... ♘f6	124
Chapter 20 1.e4 e5 2.♟f3 ♘c6 3.♙b5 f5 4.♘c3 fe 5.♘e4	
5... a6; 5... ♙e7	128
5... ♘f6 6.♘f6 gf	129
5... ♘f6 6.♘f6 ♗f6 7.♗e2	131
Chapter 21 1.e4 e5 2.♟f3 ♘c6 3.♙b5 f5 4.♘c3 fe 5.♘e4 d5 6.♘e5 de 7.♘c6	
7... bc	138
7... ♗d5 8.c4	139
Chapter 22 1.e4 e5 2.♟f3 ♘c6 3.♙b5 f5 4.♘c3 fe 5.♘e4 d5 6.♘e5 de 7.♘c6 ♗g5 8.♗e2	
8... ♗g2; 8... ♙f5	144
8... ♘f6 9.f4 ♗h5; 9... ♗c5	145
a) 8... ♘f6 9.f4 ♗h4	145
b) 8... ♘f6 9.f4 ♗f4	148
Chapter 23 1.e4 e5 2.♟f3 ♘c6 3.♙b5 ♘f6 4.0-0	
4 th Black's Moves without 4... ♙c5; 4... ♘e4	153
4... ♙c5 5.c3	156
Chapter 24 1.e4 e5 2.♟f3 ♘c6 3.♙b5 ♘f6 4.0-0 ♘e4 5.d4	
5 th Black's Moves without 5... ♙e7; 5... ♘d6	166
5... ♙e7 6.♗e2	168
Chapter 25 1.e4 e5 2.♟f3 ♘c6 3.♙b5 ♘f6 4.0-0 ♘e4 5.d4 ♘d6 6.♙c6	
6... bc	178
6... dc 7.de ♘e4	179

Index of Variations

Chapter 26 1.e4 e5 2.♟f3 ♘c6 3.♙b5 ♘f6 4.0-0 ♚e4 5.d4 ♘d6
6.♙c6 dc 7.de ♘f5 8.♙d8 ♘d8 9.♘c3

9... ♙b4; 9... h5184

a) 9... ♙e7184

b) 9... a5186

c) 9... ♘e7189

Chapter 27 1.e4 e5 2.♟f3 ♘c6 3.♙b5 ♘f6 4.0-0 ♚e4 5.d4 ♘d6
6.♙c6 dc 7.de ♘f5 8.♙d8 ♘d8 9.♘c3 ♙e6 10.♞d1

a) 10... ♘e8192

b) 10... ♘c8194

Chapter 28 1.e4 e5 2.♟f3 ♘c6 3.♙b5 ♘f6 4.0-0 ♚e4 5.d4 ♘d6
6.♙c6 dc 7.de ♘f5 8.♙d8 ♘d8 9.♘c3 ♘e8 10.h3

10... ♙c5; 10... h5200

10... b6; 10... ♙e6201

10... ♙b4202

a) 10... ♙e7204

b) 10... h6205

c) 10... a5208

d) 10... ♘e7214

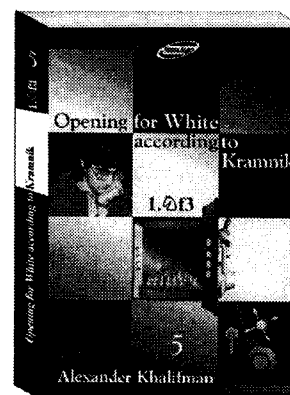
Chapter 29 1.e4 e5 2.♟f3 ♘c6 3.♙b5 ♘f6 4.0-0 ♚e4 5.d4 ♘d6
6.♙c6 dc 7.de ♘f5 8.♙d8 ♘d8 9.♘c3 ♙d7 10.♞d1
♙c8 11.♘g5 ♙e8 12.b3

12... h6; 12... c5; 12... a5221

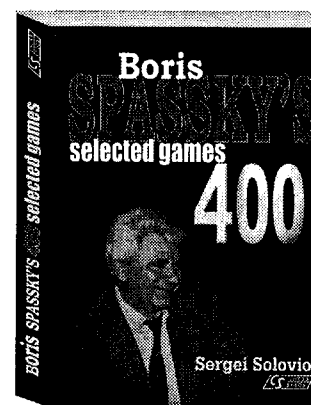
12... ♙e7222

12... b6 13.♙b2223

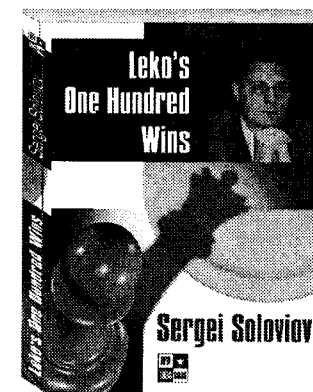
New Books from CHESS STARS



**OPENING FOR WHITE
ACCORDING TO KRAMNIK**
Vol. 5: 272 pages
Queen's Gambit Declined

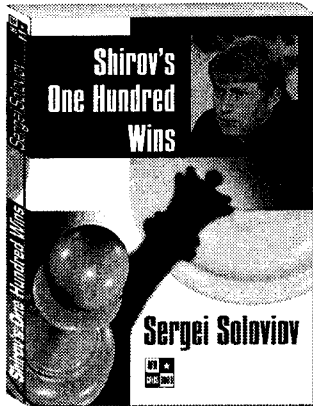


**BORIS SPASSKY'S 400
SELECTED GAMES**
by S. Soloviov
556 pages + photographs
cross tables, tournament results



LEKO'S ONE HUNDRED WINS
by S. Soloviov
340 pages, biography,
colour and b/w photos
paperback or hardcover

New Books from CHESS STARS

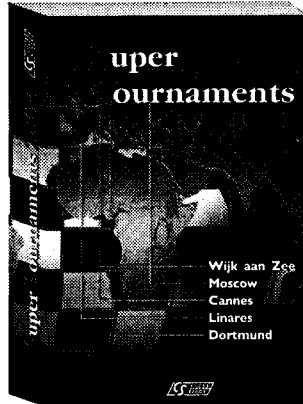


SHIROV'S ONE HUNDRED WINS

by S. Soloviov

316 pages, interviews, biography,
colour and b/w photos

paperback or hardcover



SUPER TOURNAMENTS 2002

556 pages + 16 pages with
colour photos

224 extensively commented
games by

Khalifman, Sakaev, Shipov etc.

For contacts:

Sergei Soloviov

E-mail: chesstars@softhome.net; semkom@yahoo.com

Published by **CHESS STARS** Ltd.

Printed in Bulgaria